



(19)

(11)

EP 2 649 052 B1

(12)

EUROPEAN PATENT SPECIFICATION

(45) Date of publication and mention
of the grant of the patent:

22.10.2014 Bulletin 2014/43

(21) Application number: **11796671.3**

(22) Date of filing: **09.12.2011**

(51) Int Cl.:

**C07D 235/30 (2006.01)
C07D 401/04 (2006.01)
C07D 401/12 (2006.01)
C07D 401/14 (2006.01)
C07D 403/04 (2006.01)
C07D 403/12 (2006.01)
C07D 405/12 (2006.01)
C07D 409/14 (2006.01)
C07D 413/12 (2006.01)
C07D 417/12 (2006.01)
A61K 31/4184 (2006.01)
A61P 29/00 (2006.01)**

(86) International application number:

PCT/EP2011/072256

(87) International publication number:

WO 2012/076672 (14.06.2012 Gazette 2012/24)

(54) 2-AMINOBENZIMIDAZOLE DERIVATIVES USEFUL IN THE TREATMENT OF INFLAMMATION

2-AMINOBENZIMIDAZOLEDERIVATE ZUR BEHANDLUNG VON ENTZÜNDUNGEN

DÉRIVÉS DE 2-AMINO-BENZIMIDAZOLE UTILES DANS LE TRAITEMENT D'INFLAMMATION

(84) Designated Contracting States:

**AL AT BE BG CH CY CZ DE DK EE ES FI FR GB
GR HR HU IE IS IT LI LT LU LV MC MK MT NL NO
PL PT RO RS SE SI SK SM TR**

(30) Priority: **10.12.2010 EP 10194456**

(43) Date of publication of application:
16.10.2013 Bulletin 2013/42

(73) Proprietor: **Boehringer Ingelheim International GmbH
55216 Ingelheim am Rhein (DE)**

(72) Inventors:

- **PRIEPKE, Henning
55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE)**
- **KUELZER, Raimund
55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE)**
- **MACK, Juergen
55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE)**

- **PFAU, Roland**

55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE)

- **STENKAMP, Dirk**

55216 Ingelheim Am Rhein (DE)

- **PELCMAN, Benjamin**

S-751 05 Uppsala (SE)

- **ROENN, Robert**

S-751 05 Uppsala (SE)

- **LUBRIKS, Dimitrijs**

LV-1006 Riga (LV)

- **SUNA, Edgars**

LV-1006 Riga (LV)

(74) Representative: **Heiner, Thomas**

Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH

Corporate Patents

Binger Strasse 173

55216 Ingelheim am Rhein (DE)

(56) References cited:

WO-A1-2010/100249

Note: Within nine months of the publication of the mention of the grant of the European patent in the European Patent Bulletin, any person may give notice to the European Patent Office of opposition to that patent, in accordance with the Implementing Regulations. Notice of opposition shall not be deemed to have been filed until the opposition fee has been paid. (Art. 99(1) European Patent Convention).

Description**Field of the Invention**

5 [0001] This invention relates to novel compounds, which are inhibitors of the microsomal prostaglandin E₂ synthase-1 (mPGES-1), pharmaceutical compositions containing them, and said compounds for use as medicaments for the treatment and/or prevention of inflammatory diseases and associated conditions such as inflammatory/nociceptive pain.

Background of the Invention

10 [0002] There are many acute and chronic diseases/disorders that are inflammatory in their nature including but not limited to rheumatoid diseases e.g. rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, diseases of the visceral system e.g. inflammatory bowel syndrome, autoimmune diseases, e.g. lupus erythematoses, lung diseases like asthma and COPD. Current treatment with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and cyclooxygenase (COX)-2 inhibitors are efficacious, 15 but show a prevalence for gastrointestinal and cardiovascular side effects. There is a high need for new treatment options showing equivalent efficacy with an improved side effect profile.

[0003] mPGES inhibitors may show such an improved side effect profile because they block the generation of PGE₂ in a more specific manner as described below.

20 [0004] NSAIDs and COX-2 inhibitors reduce inflammation and pain through inhibition of one or both isoforms of COX enzymes. The cyclooxygenase (COX) enzyme exists in two forms, one that is constitutively expressed in many cells and tissues (COX-1), and one that in most cells and tissues is induced by pro-inflammatory stimuli, such as cytokines, during an inflammatory response (COX-2). COXs metabolise arachidonic acid to the unstable intermediate prostaglandin H₂ (PGH₂). PGH₂ is further metabolized to other prostaglandins including PGE₂, PGF_{2 α} , PGD₂, prostacyclin and thromboxane A₂. These arachidonic acid metabolites are known to have pronounced physiological and pathophysiological 25 activity including pro-inflammatory effects. PGE₂ in particular is known to be a strong pro-inflammatory mediator, and is also known to induce fever, inflammation and pain. Consequently, numerous drugs were developed with a view to inhibiting the formation of PGE₂, including "NSAIDs" (non-steroidal antiinflammatory drugs) and "coxibs" (selective COX-2 inhibitors). These drugs act predominantly by inhibition of COX-1 and/or COX-2, thereby reducing the formation of PGE₂.

30 [0005] However, the inhibition of COXs has the disadvantage that it results in the reduction of the formation of all metabolites downstream of PGH₂, some of which are known to have beneficial properties. In view of this, drugs which act by inhibition of COXs are therefore known/suspected to cause adverse biological effects.

[0006] For example, the non-selective inhibition of COXs by NSAIDs may give rise to gastrointestinal side-effects and affect platelet and renal function. Even the selective inhibition of COX-2 by coxibs, whilst reducing such gastrointestinal side-effects, is believed to give rise to cardiovascular problems.

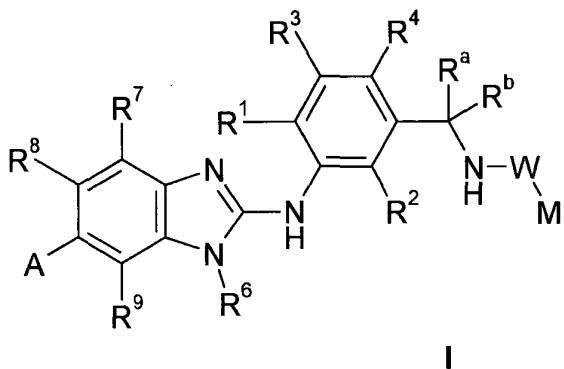
35 [0007] An alternative treatment of inflammatory diseases that does not give rise to the above-mentioned side effects would thus be of real benefit in the clinic. In particular, a drug that preferably inhibits the transformation of PGH₂ to the pro-inflammatory mediator PGE₂ selectively might be expected to reduce the inflammatory response in the absence of a corresponding reduction of the formation of other, beneficial arachidonic acid metabolites. Such inhibition would accordingly be expected to alleviate the undesirable side-effects mentioned above.

40 [0008] PGH₂ may be transformed to PGE₂ by prostaglandin E synthases (PGES). Two microsomal prostaglandin E synthases (mPGES-1 and mPGES-2), and one cytosolic prostaglandin E synthase (cPGES) have been described. mPGES-1 is proposed to be closely linked to COX-2 and both enzyme's are upregulated during e.g. inflammation. Thus agents that are capable of inhibiting the action of mPGES-1 and thereby reducing the formation of PGE₂ are likely to be of benefit for the treatment of inflammation and more general acute and chronic pain conditions

45 [0009] Benzimidazole and imidazopyridine derivatives with mPGES-1 inhibitory activity are disclosed in WO 2010/034796, WO 2010/034797, WO 2010/034798, WO 2010/034799. WO2010/100249 describes a broad class of different 2-arylamino benzimidazoles in which the aryl group bears a particular side chain.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

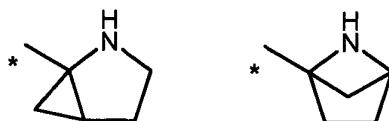
50 [0010] The present invention provides a compound of formula I,



15 in which

- R¹** represents halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₂₋₆ alkynyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, =O, -OH, -OCH₃, -OCF₃;
- 20 **R², R³ and R⁴** independently represent hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, =O, -OH, -OCH₃, -OCF₃;
- 25 **R^a and R^b** independently represent hydrogen, C₁₋₃ alkyl which is optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms, or both together with the carbon atom which they are bound to, form a C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl ring, or a 4-6 membered heterocycloalkyl ring which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms;
- 30 **W** represents -C(O)-, -S(O)-, -S(O)₂-, -C(O)O-, -C(O)NR^d- which groups are bound to the nitrogen of the -NH- moiety via carbon or sulfur atom;
- 35 **R^d** represents hydrogen, C₁₋₃ alkyl;
- 40 **M** represents C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₂₋₈ alkynyl, C₃₋₈ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₄ alkyl-, 4-10 membered heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₄ alkyl- which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, =O, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂, azetidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, [which latter seven alkyl groups can be substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -OH, -CN, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl (which latter alkyl group is optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)], aryl, heteroaryl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl (which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)], or aryl, heteroaryl which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, aryl, heteroaryl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl (which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)],
- 45 C₁₋₇ alkyl, C₂₋₇ alkynyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, 4-7 membered heterocycloalkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, -O-C₀₋₂alkyl-aryl, -SC₁₋₃ alkyl, (which latter alkyl, alkynyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl or cycloalkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, =O, -NH₂, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂, -OH, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl)];
- 50 **R⁶** represents hydrogen, C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₆ alkynyl, 4-7 membered heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl or C₃₋₇cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂alkyl (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, =O, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OH, -NH₂, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂);
- 55 **R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹** independently represent hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl-, C₁₋₅ alkyl-O-, C₃₋₅cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂alkyl-O- (in which latter four groups the alkyl and cycloalkyl fragments are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, -OH, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl or by one or more C₁₋₃ alkyl groups which are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms);

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| A | represents -NHR ¹⁰ , -NR ¹⁰ R ¹¹ , or a
4-10-membered heterocycloalkyl group which is bound to the benzimidazole through a nitrogen atom, and which is optionally substituted by one or more substituents R ¹² ; |
| R ¹⁰ and R ¹¹ | independently represent C ₁₋₇ alkyl, C ₃₋₇ cycloalkyl-C ₀₋₄ alkyl- or C ₄₋₇ heterocycloalkyl-C ₀₋₄ alkyl- [which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, NH ₂ , -CN, C ₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C ₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C ₁₋₃ alkyl) ₂ , -OC ₁₋₅ alkyl, -OC ₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, -OC ₄₋₆ heterocycloalkyl (which latter six groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CF ₃ , -CHF ₂ , -CH ₂ F, -CH ₃)],
or
aryl-C ₀₋₄ alkyl-, heteroaryl-C ₀₋₄ alkyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, - OH, -CN, C ₁₋₃ alkyl, C ₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, C ₁₋₃ alkyl-O-, C ₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-O- (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)]; |
| each R ¹² | independently represents halo, -OH, -NH ₂ , =O, -CN, C ₁₋₄ alkyl, C ₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-C ₀₋₂ alkyl-, C ₄₋₅ heterocycloalkyl-C ₀₋₂ alkyl-, C ₁₋₄ alkyl-O-, C ₁₋₃ alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C ₁₋₃ alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C ₁₋₃ alkyl) ₂ [which latter six groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, oxo, -NH ₂ , -CN, C ₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C ₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C ₁₋₃ alkyl) ₂ , -OC ₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC ₃₋₅ cycloalkyl [which latter five groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CF ₃ , -CHF ₂ , -CH ₂ F]],
or
aryl-C ₀₋₄ alkyl- " heteroaryl-C ₀₋₄ alkyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, - OH, -CN, C ₁₋₃ alkyl, C ₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, C ₁₋₃ alkyl-O-, C ₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-O- (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)]; |
| R ¹ | or a salt thereof, particularly a physiologically acceptable salt thereof. |
| [0011] | In a second embodiment, in the general formula I, A, M, W, R ² , R ³ , R ⁴ , R ⁶ , R ⁷ , R ⁸ , R ⁹ , R ^a , R ^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and |
| R ¹ | represents halo, C ₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC ₁₋₃ alkyl which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms. |
| [0012] | In another embodiment, in the general formula I, A, M, W, R ¹ , R ³ , R ⁴ , R ⁶ , R ⁷ , R ⁸ , R ⁹ , R ^a , R ^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and |
| R ² | represents hydrogen, halo, C ₁₋₃ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms. |
| [0013] | In another embodiment, in the general formula I, A, M, W, R ¹ , R ² , R ⁶ , R ⁷ , R ⁸ , R ⁹ , R ^a , R ^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and |
| R ³ and R ⁴ | independently represent hydrogen, halo. |
| [0014] | In another embodiment, in the general formula I, A, M, W, R ¹ , R ² , R ³ , R ⁴ , R ⁶ , R ⁷ , R ⁸ , R ⁹ have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and R ^a , R ^b independently represent hydrogen. |
| [0015] | In another embodiment, in the general formula I, A, M, R ¹ , R ² , R ³ , R ⁴ , R ⁶ , R ⁷ , R ⁸ , R ⁹ , R ^a , R ^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and |
| W | represents -C(O)-, -S(O) ₂ -, -C(O)O- which groups are bound to the nitrogen of the -NH- moiety via carbon or sulfur atom. |
| [0016] | In another embodiment, in the general formula I, A, W, R ¹ , R ² , R ³ , R ⁴ , R ⁶ , R ⁷ , R ⁸ , R ⁹ , R ^a , R ^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and |
| M | represents C ₁₋₆ alkyl, C ₂₋₆ alkynyl, C ₃₋₈ cycloalkyl-C ₀₋₁ alkyl-, oxetanyl-, tetrahydrofuranyl-, azetidinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-, piperidinyl- or one of the following heterocyclic groups |



5

all of which groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl [which latter four alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro],

10 phenyl, imidazolyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₂ alkyl, OC₁₋₂alkyl (which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)], or

phenyl, naphthyl, furanyl, thieryl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, quinolynyl which latter twelve groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from

15 halo, aryl, heteroaryl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃],

C₁₋₂ alkyl, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms], C₂₋₃ alkynyl, -O-C₀₋₂alkyl-phenyl [in which latter group the phenyl is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from from halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃].

20

[0017] In another embodiment, in the general formula I, A, M, W, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, R^a, R^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and

R⁶ represents hydrogen, C₁₋₅ alkyl or C₃₋₇cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂].

[0018] In another embodiment, in the general formula I, A, M, W, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁶, R⁸, R^a, R^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and

30 R⁷ and R⁹ independently represent hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms.

[0019] In another embodiment, in the general formula I, A, M, W, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R^a, R^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and

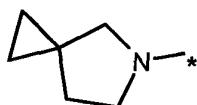
35

R⁸ represents hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl- (in which latter two groups the alkyl and cycloalkyl fragments are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms, or by one or more C₁₋₃ alkyl groups which are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms).

40 **[0020]** In another embodiment, in the general formula I, M, W, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, R^a, R^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and

45 A represents -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹, or azetidinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-, piperidinyl-, morpholinyl-, piperazinyl- or

50



all of which heterocyclic groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents R¹² and optionally annulated to a phenyl or a 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, while the above mentioned groups are bonded to the benzimidazole core through a nitrogen atom;

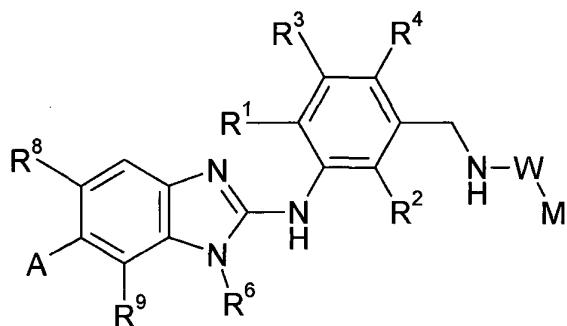
55 R¹⁰ and R¹¹ independently represent C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁ alkyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, C₁₋₃ alkyl], or aryl-C₀₋₁ alkyl- optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃

alkyl, C₁₋₃ alkyl-O- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms];

each R¹² independently represents halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₄ alkyl, C₁₋₂ alkyl-O-, C₁₋₂ alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂ [which latter five groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, CF₃, CHF₂ or CH₂F)], or phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo or C₁₋₃ alkyl which is optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms.

10

[0021] A further embodiment of the present invention comprises compounds of formula Ia



25

in which

R¹ represents halo, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms;

R² represents hydrogen, halo, C₁₋₃ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms;

R³ and R⁴ independently represent hydrogen, halo;

W represents -C(O)-, -S(O)₂-, -C(O)O- which groups are bound to the nitrogen of the -NH- moiety via carbon or sulfur atom;

M represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₂₋₆ alkynyl, C₃₋₈ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁ alkyl-, oxetanyl-, tetrahydrofuranyl-, azetidinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-, piperidinyl- or one of the following heterocyclic groups

40



45

all of which groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl, [which latter four alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms], phenyl, imidazolyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₂ alkyl, OC₁₋₂ alkyl (which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)], or phenyl, naphthyl, furanyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, quinolynyl which latter twelve groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, aryl, heteroaryl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃], C₁₋₂ alkyl, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms], C₂₋₃ alkynyl, -O-C₀₋₂ alkyl-phenyl [in which latter group the phenyl is optionally substituted by one or more

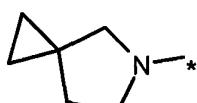
substituents selected from halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃];

5 R⁶ represents hydrogen, C₁₋₅ alkyl or C₃₋₇cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂];

10 R⁸ represents hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl- (in which latter two groups the alkyl and cycloalkyl fragments are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms, or by one or more C₁₋₃ alkyl groups which are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms).

15 R⁹ represents hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluorine atoms;

15 A represents -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹, or azetidinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-, piperidinyl-, morpholinyl-, piperazinyl- or



20 all of which heterocyclic groups can optionally be substituted by one or more substituents R¹² and optionally annulated to a phenyl or a 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, whereby the above mentioned groups are bonded to the benzimidazole core through a nitrogen atom;

25 R¹⁰ and R¹¹ independently represent C₁₋₅ alkyl or C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁ alkyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from: fluoro, -OH, C₁₋₃ alkyl],
or

30 aryl-C₀₋₁ alkyl- which can be substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₁₋₃ alkyl-O- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms];

35 each R¹² independently represents halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₄ alkyl, C₁₋₂ alkyl-O-, C₁₋₂ alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂ [which latter five groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl, (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, CF₃, CHF₂ or CH₂F)],
or

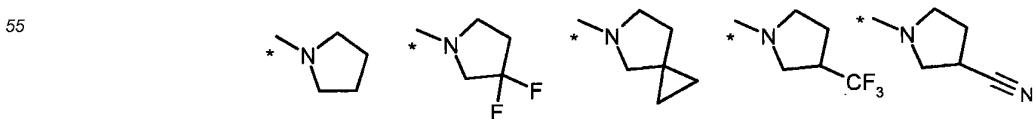
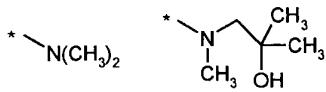
35 phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo or C₁₋₃ alkyl which is optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms.

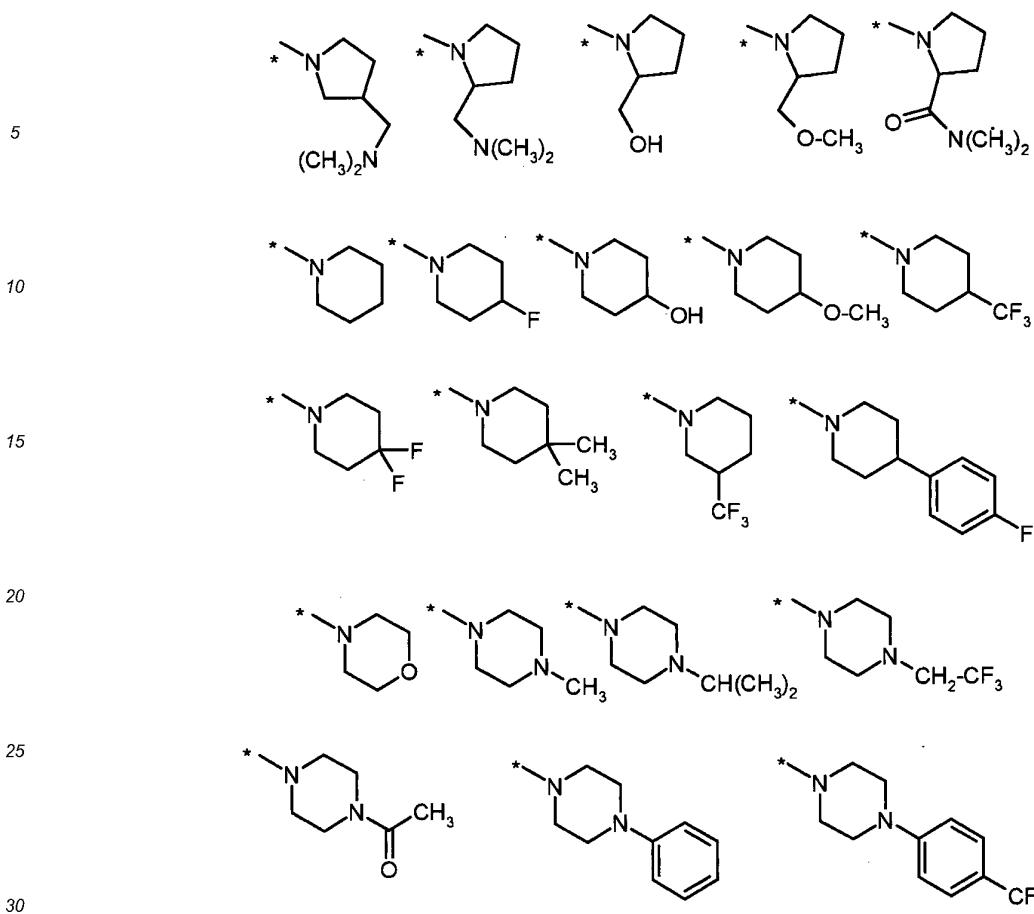
[0022] In another embodiment, in the general formula I or Ia, A, M, W, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R^a, R^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and

R⁸ represents hydrogen, fluoro, chloro, CF₃, -CN.

[0023] In another embodiment, in the general formula I or Ia, M, W, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R^a, R^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and

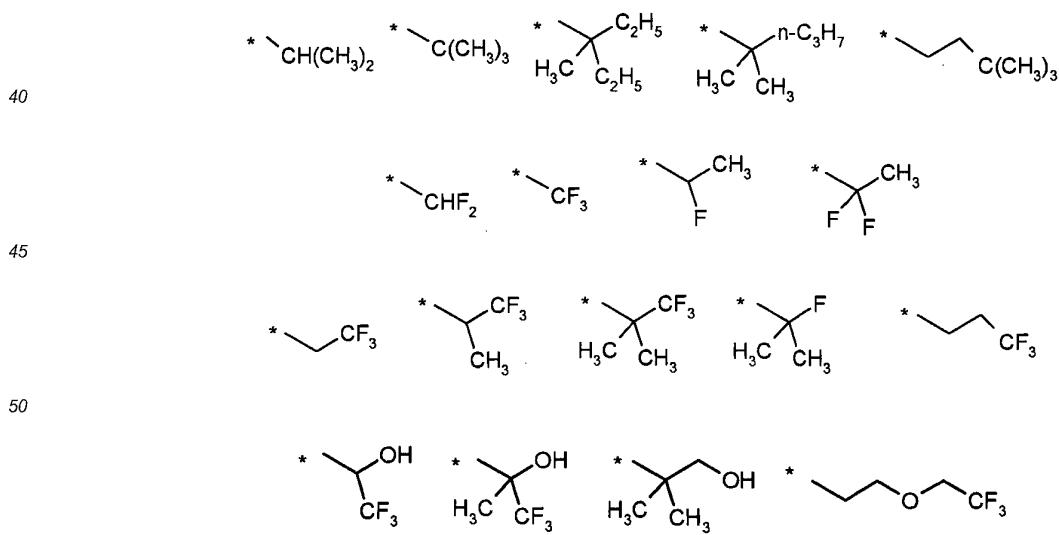
A represents a group selected from

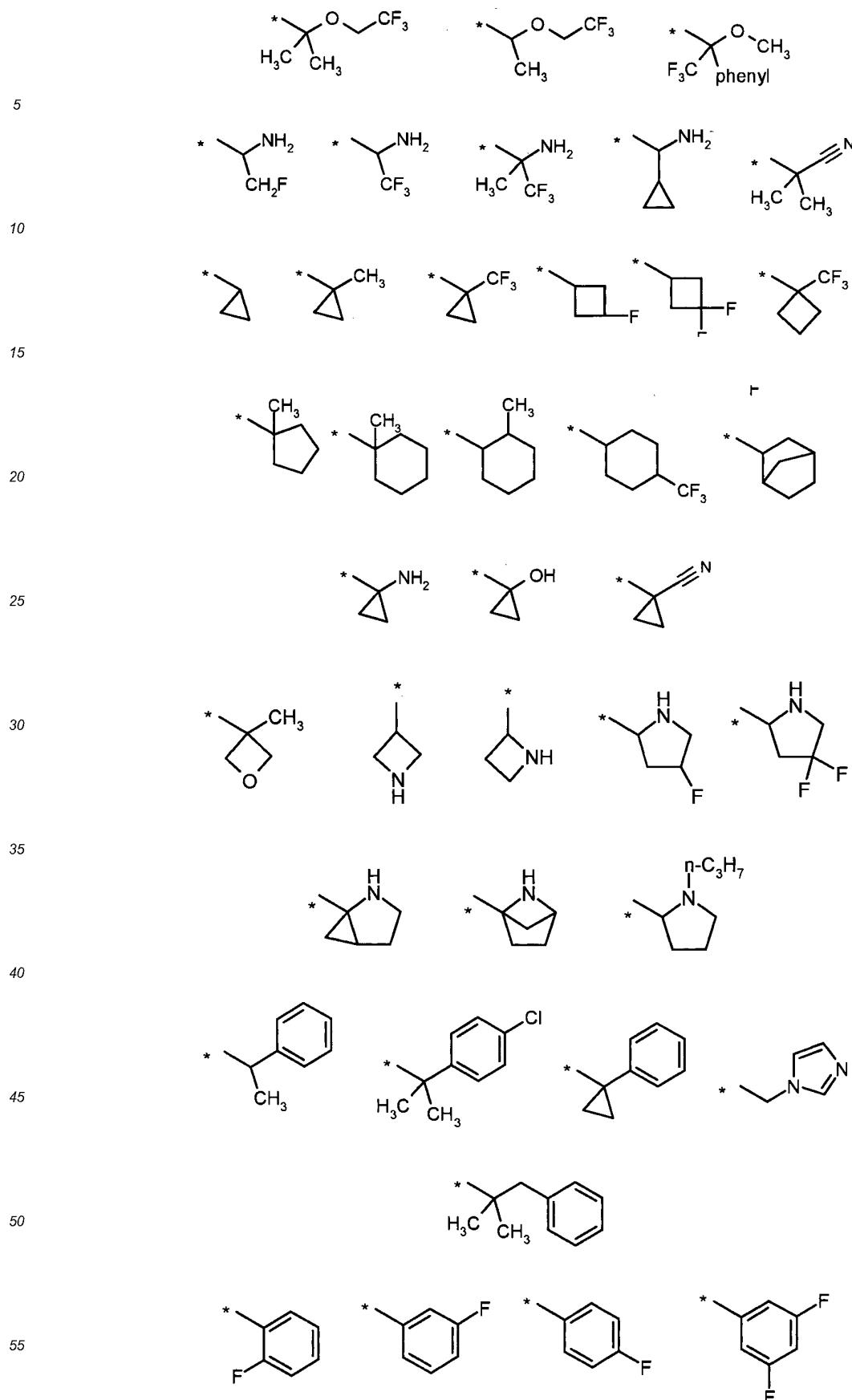


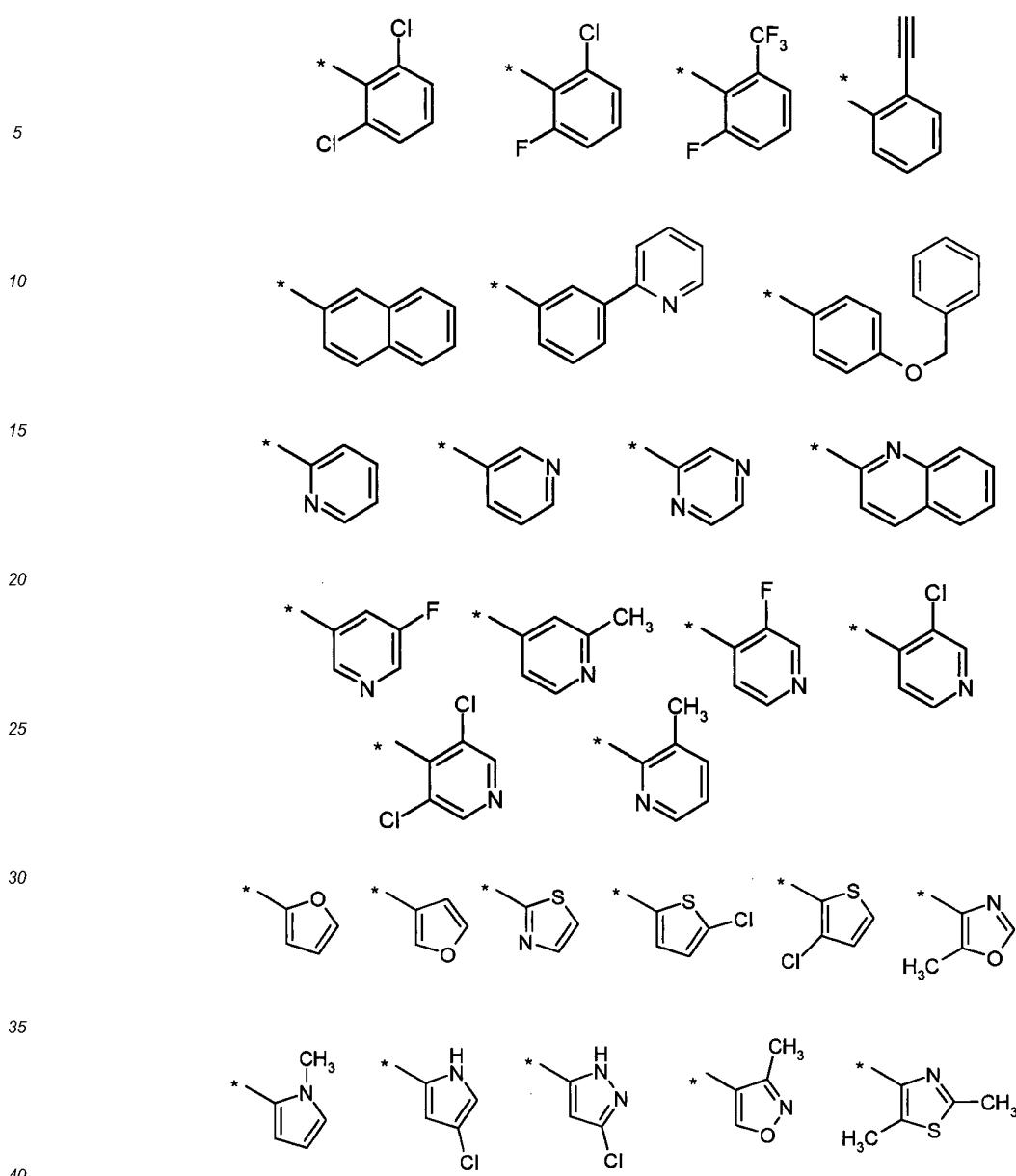


[0024] In another embodiment, in the general formula I or Ia, A, W, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, R^a, R^b have the same meaning as defined in any of the preceding embodiments, and

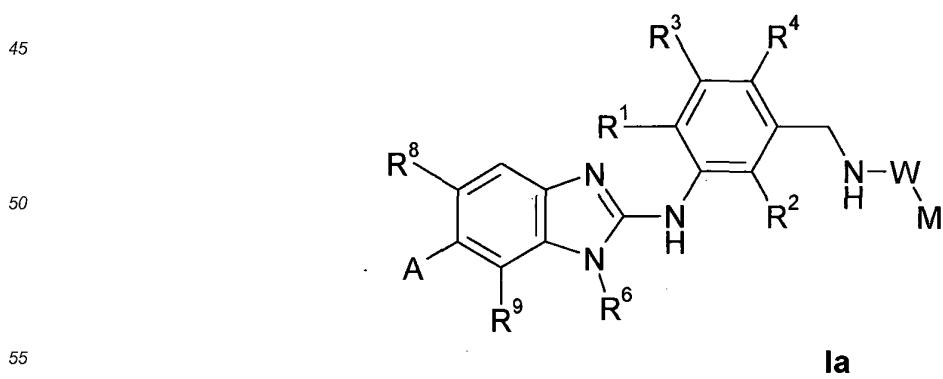
35 M represents a group selected from







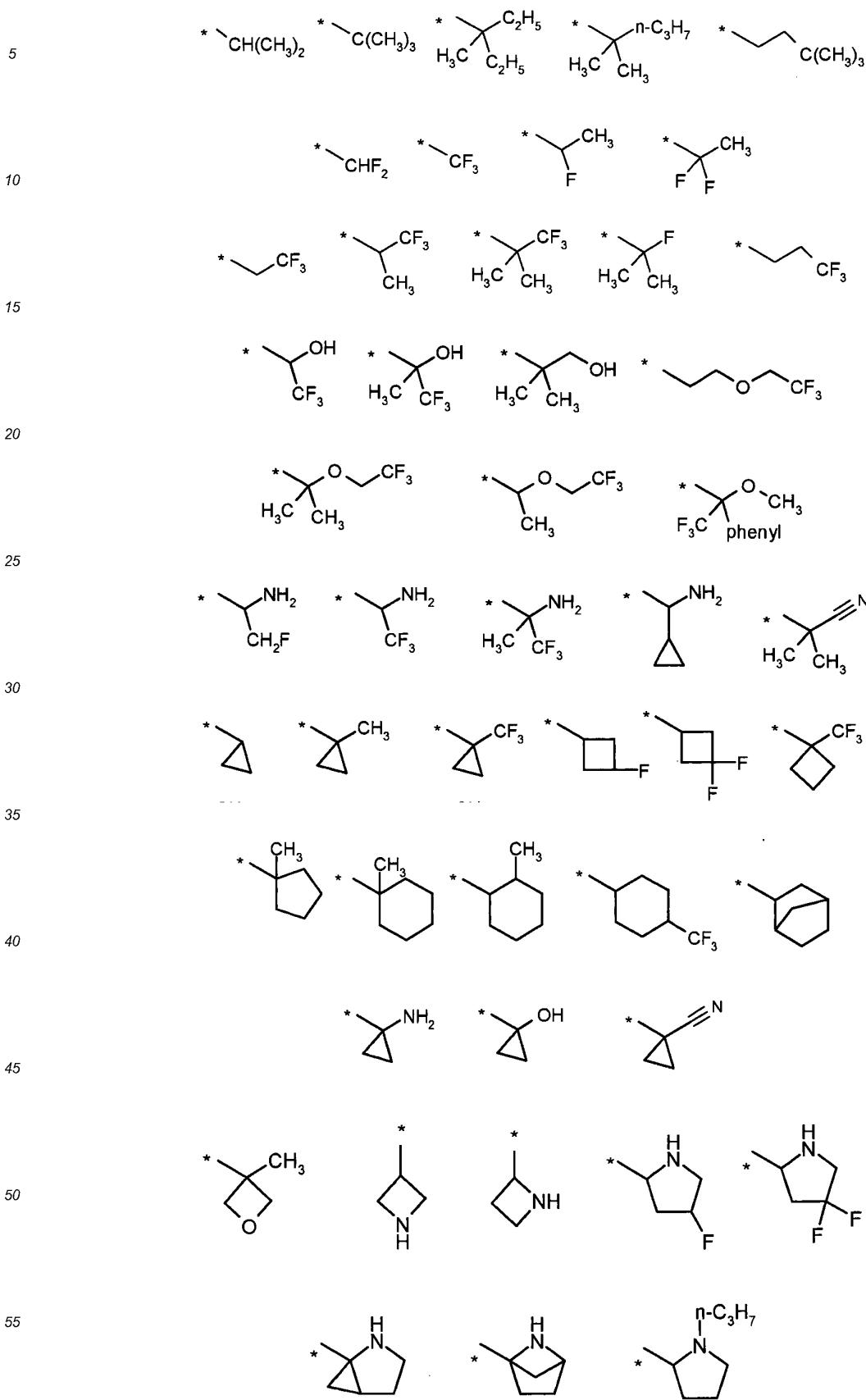
[0025] A further embodiment of the present invention comprises compounds of formula Ia

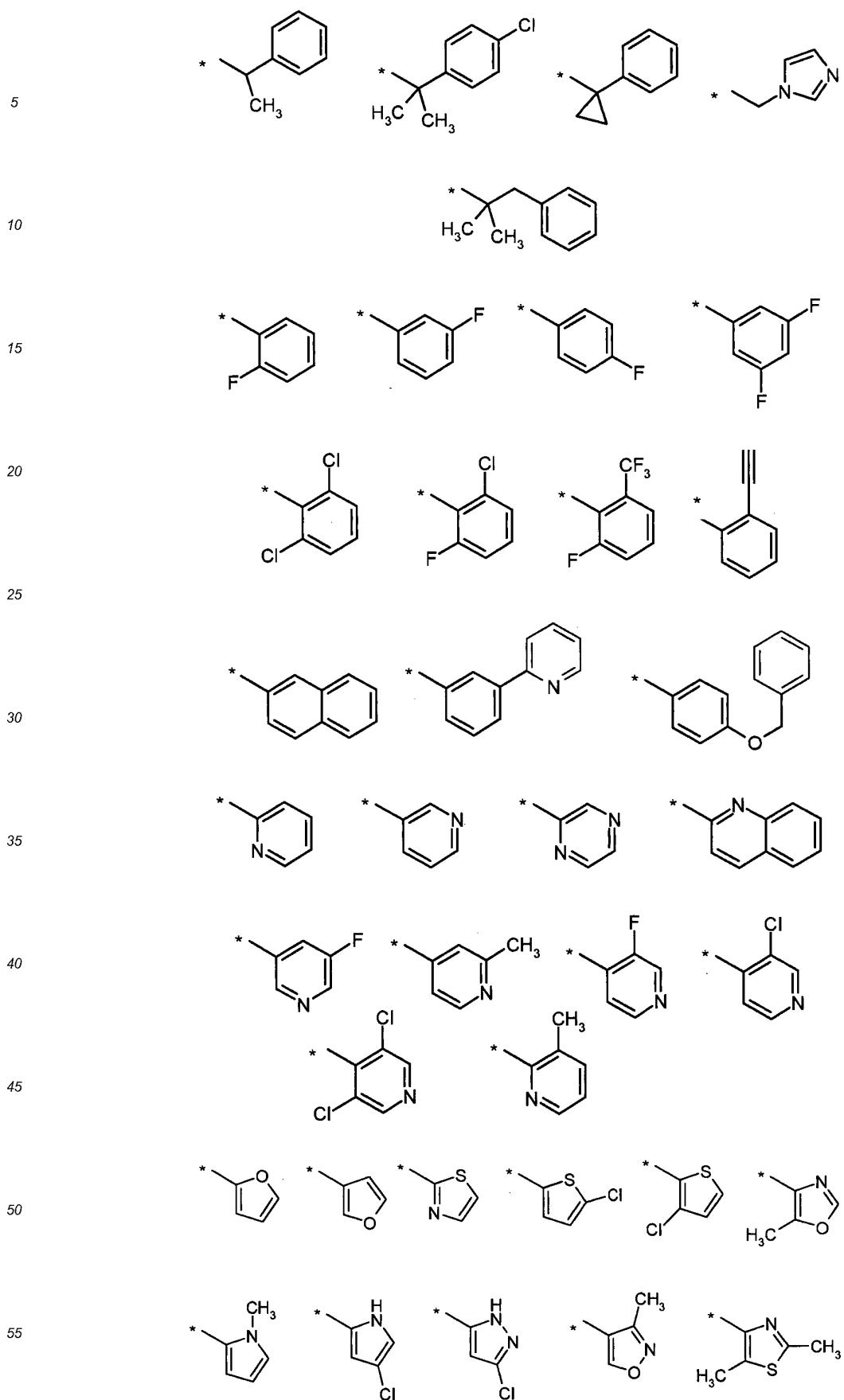


in which

M

represents a group selected from

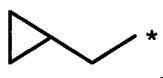




TERMS AND DEFINITIONS USED

General definitions:

- 5 [0026] Terms not specifically defined herein should be given the meanings that would be given to them by one of skill in the art in light of the disclosure and the context. As used in the specification, however, unless specified to the contrary, the following terms have the meaning indicated and the following conventions are adhered to.
- 10 [0027] In the groups, radicals, or moieties defined below, the number of carbon atoms is often specified preceding the group, for example, C₁₋₆-alkyl means an alkyl group or radical having 1 to 6 carbon atoms. In general, for groups comprising two or more subgroups, the last named subgroup is the radical attachment point, for example, the substituent "aryl-C₁₋₃-alkyl-" means an aryl group which is bound to a C₁₋₃-alkyl-group, the latter of which is bound to the core or to the group to which the substituent is attached.
- [0028] In case a compound of the present invention is depicted in form of a chemical name and as a formula in case of any discrepancy the formula shall prevail.
- 15 [0029] An asterisk is may be used in sub-formulas to indicate the bond which is connected to the core molecule as defined, for example a cyclopropylmethyl- group would be represented by the following drawing:



20

Tautomers/stereochemistry/solvates/hydrates:

- 25 [0030] Unless specifically indicated, throughout the specification and the appended claims, a given chemical formula or name shall encompass tautomers (e.g. 1*H*-benzimidazole may be considered to be identical to a corresponding compound containing a 3*H*-benzimidazole) and all stereo, optical and geometrical isomers (e.g. enantiomers, diastereomers, E/Z isomers etc.) and racemates thereof as well as mixtures in different proportions of the separate enantiomers, mixtures of diastereomers, or mixtures of any of the foregoing forms where such isomers and enantiomers exist, as well as salts, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof and solvates thereof such as for instance hydrates including solvates of the free compounds or solvates of a salt of the compound.

Salts:

- 35 [0031] The phrase "pharmaceutically acceptable" is employed herein to refer to those compounds, materials, compositions, and/or dosage forms which are, within the scope of sound medical judgment, suitable for use in contact with the tissues of human beings and animals without excessive toxicity, irritation, allergic response, or other problem or complication, and commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio.
- 40 [0032] As used herein, "pharmaceutically acceptable salts" refer to derivatives of the disclosed compounds wherein the parent compound is modified by making acid or base salts thereof. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts include, but are not limited to, mineral or organic acid salts of basic residues such as amines; alkali or organic salts of acidic residues such as carboxylic acids; and the like. For example, such salts include salts from ammonia, L-arginine, betaine, benethamine, benzathine, calcium hydroxide, choline, deanol, diethanolamine (2,2'-iminobis(ethanol)), diethylamine, 2-(diethylamino)-ethanol, 2-aminoethanol, ethylenediamine, N-ethyl-glucamine, hydrabamine, 1 H-imidazole, lysine, magnesium hydroxide, 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-morpholine, piperazine, potassium hydroxide, 1-(2-hydroxy-ethyl)-pyrrolidine, sodium hydroxide, triethanolamine (2,2',2"-nitrilotri(ethanol)), tromethamine, zinc hydroxide, acetic acid, 2,2-dichloro-acetic acid, adipic acid, alginic acid, ascorbic acid, L-aspartic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, benzoic acid, 2,5-dihydroxybenzoic acid, 4-acetamido-benzoic acid, (+)-camphoric acid, (+)-camphor-10-sulfonic acid, carbonic acid, cinnamic acid, citric acid, cyclamic acid, decanoic acid, dodecylsulfuric acid, ethane-1,2-disulfonic acid, ethanesulfonic acid, 2-hydroxy-ethanesulfonic acid, ethylenediamonetraacetic acid, formic acid, fumaric acid, galacaric acid, gentisic acid, D-glucoheptonic acid, D-gluconic acid, D-glucuronic acid, glutamic acid, glutantic acid, glutaric acid, 2-oxo-glutaric acid, glycero-phosphoric acid, glycine, glycolic acid, hexanoic acid, hippuric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydrochloric acid isobutyric acid, DL-lactic acid, lactobionic acid, lauric acid, lysine, maleic acid, (-)-L-malic acid, malonic acid, DL-mandelic acid, methanesulfonic acid, galactaric acid, naphthalene-1,5-disulfonic acid, naphthalene-2-sulfonic acid, 1-hydroxy-2-naphthoic acid, nicotinic acid, nitric acid, octanoic acid, oleic acid, orotic acid, oxalic acid, palmitic acid, pamoic acid (embonic acid), phosphoric acid, propionic acid, (-)-L-pyroglutamic acid, salicylic acid, 4-amino-salicylic acid, sebacic acid, stearic acid, succinic acid, sulfuric acid, tannic acid, (+)-L-tartaric acid, thiocyanic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid and undecylenic acid. Further pharmaceutically acceptable salts can be formed with cations from metals like aluminium, calcium, lithium, magnesium, potassium, sodium, zinc and the like. (also see Pharmaceutical salts, Berge, S.M. et al.,

J. Pharm. Sci., (1977), 66, 1-19).

[0033] The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the present invention can be synthesized from the parent compound which contains a basic or acidic moiety by conventional chemical methods. Generally, such salts can be prepared by reacting the free acid or base forms of these compounds with a sufficient amount of the appropriate base or acid in water or in an organic diluent like ether, ethyl acetate, ethanol, isopropanol, or acetonitrile, or a mixture thereof.

[0034] Salts of other acids than those mentioned above which for example are useful for purifying or isolating the compounds of the present invention (e.g. trifluoro acetate salts) also comprise a part of the invention.

Halogen:

[0035] The term halogen generally denotes fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

Alkyl:

[0036] The term "C_{1-n}-alkyl", wherein n is an integer from 2 to n, either alone or in combination with another radical denotes an acyclic, saturated, branched or linear hydrocarbon radical with 1 to n C atoms. For example the term C₁₋₅-alkyl embraces the radicals H₃C-, H₃C-CH₂-, H₃C-CH₂-CH₂-, H₃C-CH(CH₃)-, H₃C-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-, H₃C-CH₂-CH(CH₃)-, H₃C-CH(CH₃)-CH₂-, H₃C-C(CH₃)₂-, H₃C-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-, H₃C-CH₂-CH₂-CH(CH₃)-, H₃C-CH₂-CH(CH₃)-CH₂-, H₃C-CH(CH₃)-CH₂-CH₂-, H₃C-CH₂-C(CH₃)₂-, H₃C-C(CH₃)₂-CH₂-, H₃C-CH(CH₃)-CH(CH₃)- and H₃C-CH₂-CH(CH₂CH₃)-.

Alkynyl:

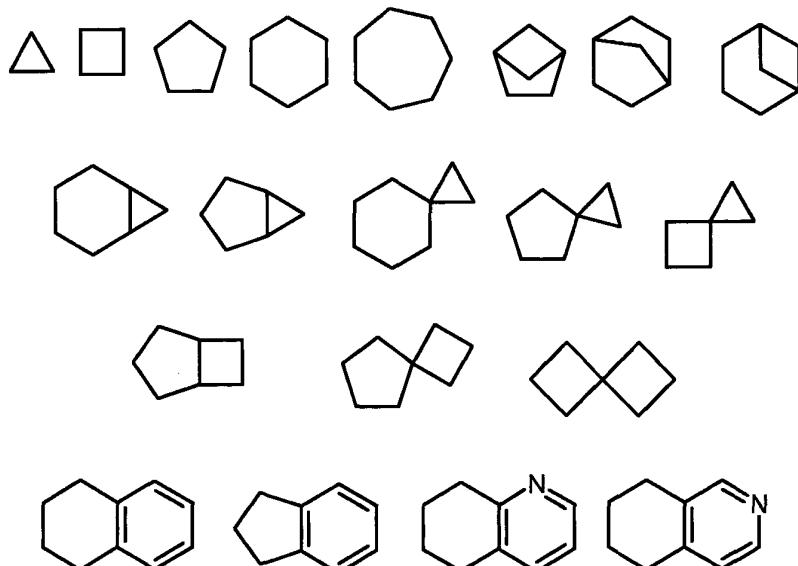
[0037] The term "C_{2-n}-alkynyl", wherein n is an integer from 3 to n, is used for a group as defined in the definition for "C_{1-n}-alkyl" with at least two carbon atoms, if at least two of those carbon atoms of said group are bonded to each other by a triple bond.

Cycloalkyl:

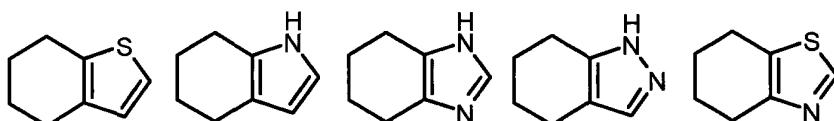
[0038] The term "C_{3-n}-cycloalkyl", wherein n is an integer > 3, either alone or in combination with another radical denotes a mono-, bi-, tri- or tetracyclic, saturated, hydrocarbon radical with 3 to n C atoms. For example the term C₃₋₇-cycloalkyl includes cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl.

[0039] The term "cycloalkyl" encompasses fused, bridged and spirocyclic systems. The cycloalkyl radical may further be fused to a phenyl ring or to a 5-6-membered heteroaryl ring, e.g. a thienyl-, pyrrolyl-, thiazolyl-, oxazolyl-, isoxazolyl-, imidazolyl-, pyrazolyl-, triazolyl-, tetrazolyl-, pyridinyl-, pyrimidinyl-, pyrazinyl- or pyridazinyl-ring.

[0040] Furthermore, the term "cycloalkyl" includes the following exemplary structures, which are not depicted as radicals as they may be attached through a covalent bond to any atom of the cycloalkyl ring fragment but not to an atom of the aryl or heteroaryl fragment:



5

**Heterocycloalkyl:**

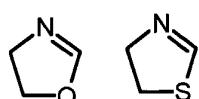
[0041] The term "4-n-membered heterocycloalkyl", wherein n is an integer >4, means a saturated or partially unsaturated mono- or polycyclic ring system containing one or more heteroatoms selected from N, O or S(O)_r, wherein r = 0, 1 or 2, consisting of 4 to n ring atoms. The heterocycloalkyl ring system may further be fused to a phenyl- or 5-6-membered heteroaryl ring such as a thienyl-, pyrrolyl-, thiazolyl-, oxazolyl-, isoxazolyl-, imidazolyl-, pyrazolyl-, triazolyl-, tetrazolyl-, pyridinyl-, pyrimidinyl-, pyrazinyl- or pyridazinyl-ring. The term "heterocycloalkyl" is intended to include all the possible isomeric forms.

[0042] The term "heterocycloalkyl" includes the following exemplary structures, which are not depicted as radicals as they may be attached through a covalent bond to any atom of the heterocycloalkyl or cycloalkyl ring fragment but not to an atom of the aryl or heteroaryl fragment:

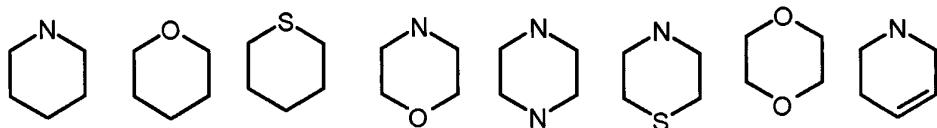
20



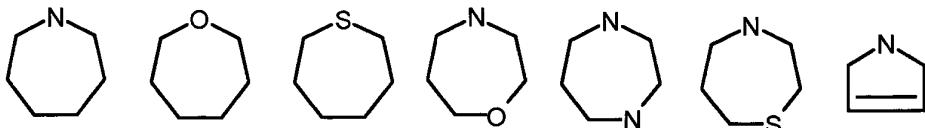
25



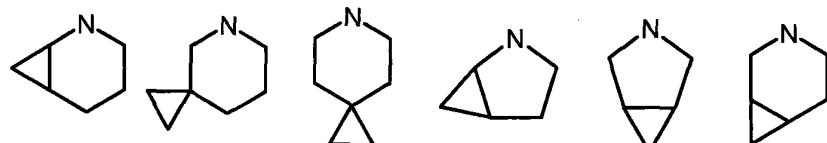
30



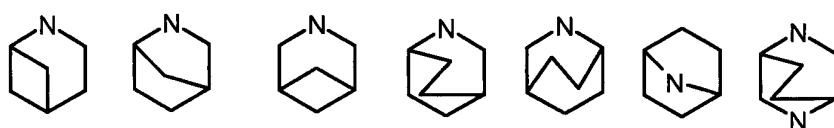
35



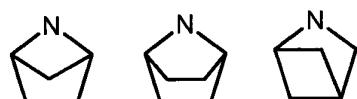
40



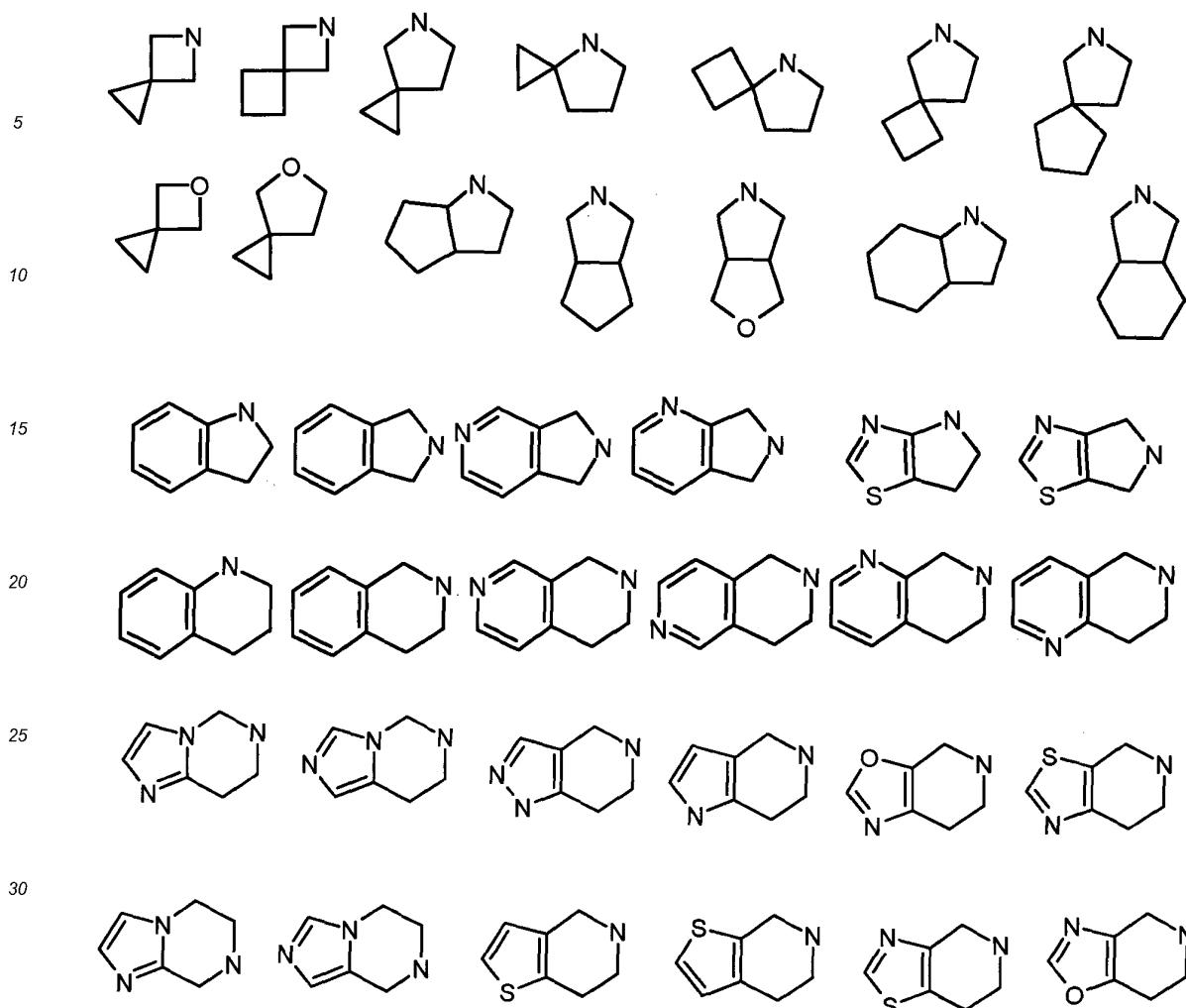
45



50



55

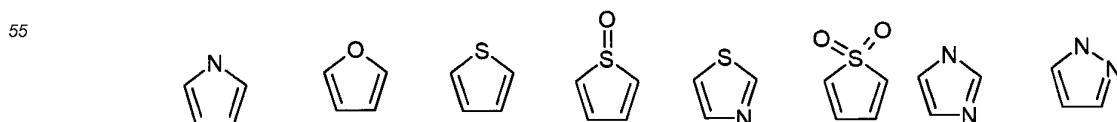


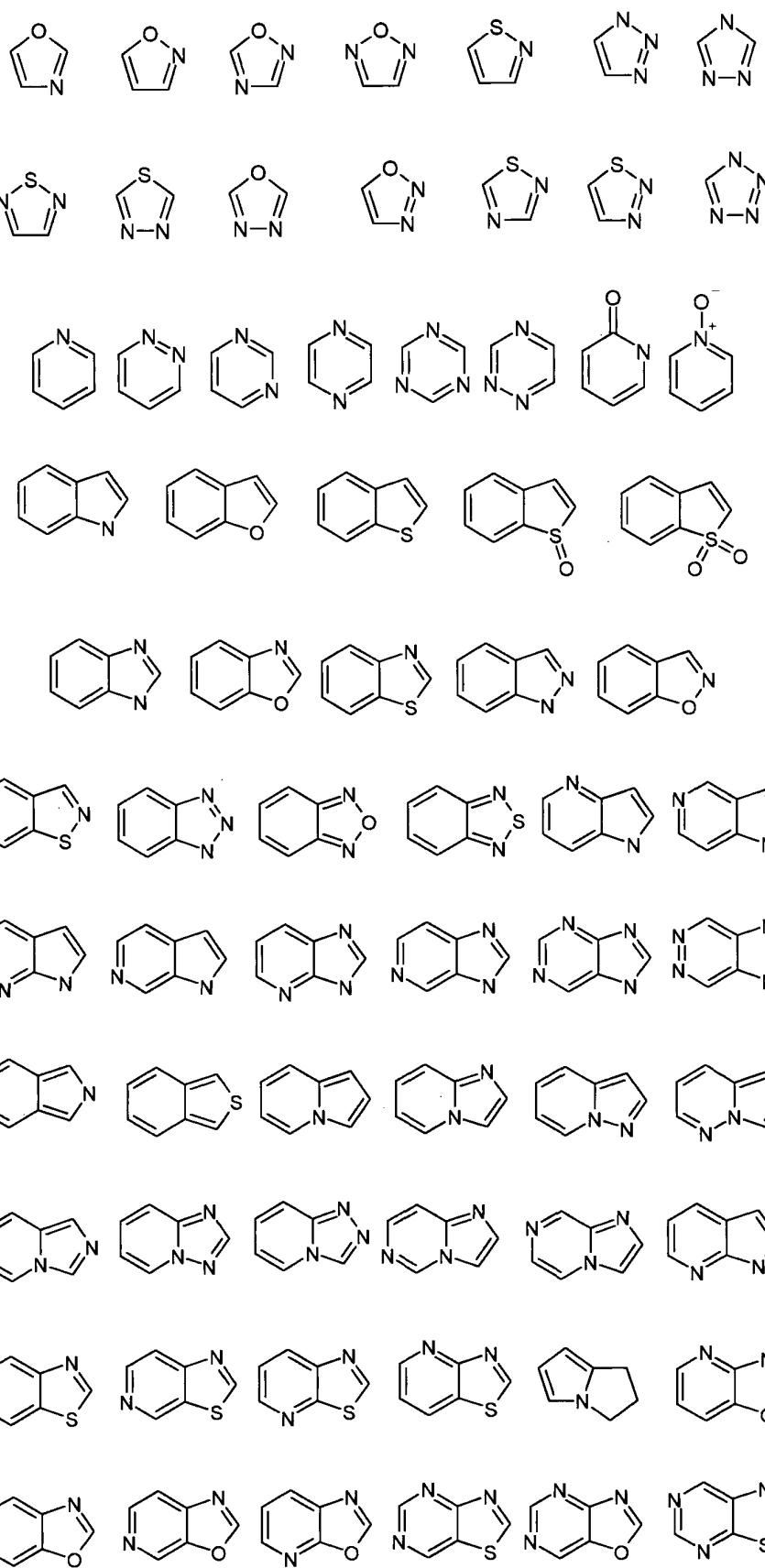
[0043] The term "aryl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, denotes a carbocyclic aromatic monocyclic group containing 6 carbon atoms which may further be fused to a second 5- or 6-membered aromatic, saturated or unsaturated carbocyclic group. The term "aryl" includes phenyl, indanyl, indenyl, naphthyl, anthracenyl, phenanthrenyl, tetrahydronaphthyl and dihydronaphthyl which may be attached through a covalent bond to any atom of the aromatic fragment.

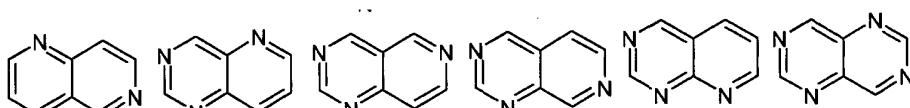
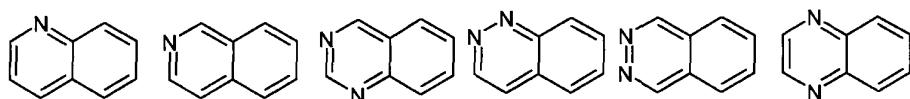
Heteroaryl:

[0044] The term "heteroaryl" means a mono- or polycyclic ring system containing one or more heteroatoms selected from N, O or S(O)_r, wherein r = 0, 1 or 2, consisting of 5 to 14 ring atoms wherein at least one of the heteroatoms is part of the aromatic ring which may further be fused to a second 5- or 7-membered aromatic, saturated or unsaturated cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl group. The term "heteroaryl" is intended to include all the possible isomeric forms.

[0045] The term "heteroaryl" includes the following exemplary structures, which are not depicted as radicals as they may be attached through a covalent bond to any atom of the mono or bicyclic heteroaryl ring but not to an atom of the cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl fragment:



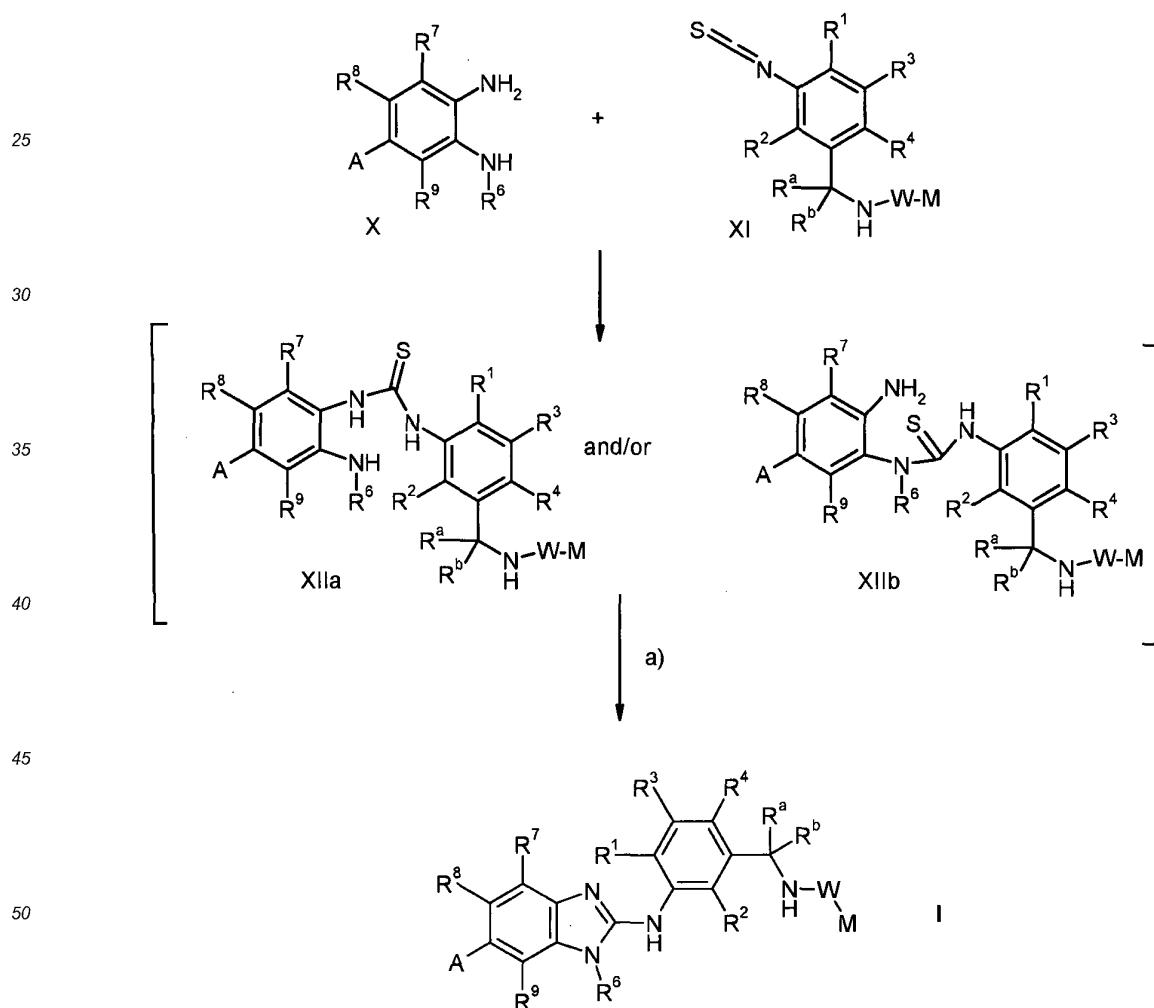




METHODS OF PREPARATION

[0046] Compounds of the present invention can be prepared in accordance with techniques that are well known to those skilled in the art, for example as described hereinafter and in the experimental section or in analogy to methods described in WO2010/034796 and WO2010/100249. According to a further aspect of the invention there is provided a process for the preparation of a compound of formula I, which process can be performed for example according to the following schemes A-B.

20 **Scheme A (all variable groups are as defined in claim 1):**

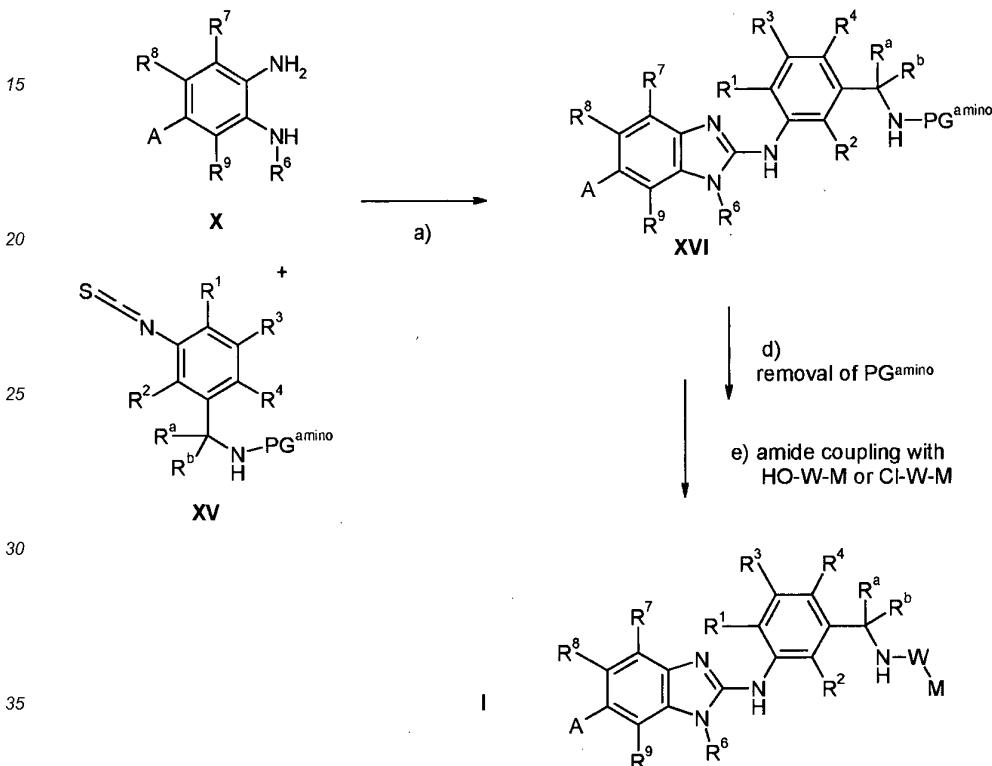


[0047] The reaction between phenylenediamine **X** and the thioisocyanate **XI** (Step a) can be performed under standard conditions known to those skilled in the art - for example in analogy to the process described in WO2010/034796 and WO2010/100249 - in presence of a suitable solvent such as diethyl ether (Et_2O), dimethylformamide (DMF), dichloromethane (DCM), acetonitrile (MeCN) and/or tetrahydrofuran (THF). The reaction is preferably performed in the pres-

ence of a suitable reagent which enhances the cyclisation step as for instance CH₃-I or a carbodiimide based compound such as N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide (EDCI, or its salt, e.g. hydrochloride) or N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide (DIC) or in presence of an amine base e.g. triethylamine (TEA) or diisopropyl ethyl amine (DIPEA). The reaction may proceed at any suitable temperature between 0°C to 200°C, preferably between room temperature and 100°C. **Step a** can be performed in a step-wise reaction including isolation of the thiourea intermediates **XIIa** and/or **XIIb** or in a one-pot procedure.

[0048] Alternatively, the compounds of formula I can be synthesized according to scheme B.

10 Scheme B (all variable groups are as defined in claim 1 and PG^{amino} is a protecting group of the benzylic amino group):



[0049] The protecting group PG^{amino} in **XV** is a literature known protecting group of an amino group well known to those skilled in the art as for example described in "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis", 3rd edition, T.W. Greene & P.G.M. Wutz, Wiley-Interscience (1999), for example a tert-butoxycarbonyl-, benzyloxycarbonyl-, ethoxycarbonyl-, methoxycarbonyl-, allyloxycarbonyl- or trifluoromethylcarbonyl group.

[0050] **Step a)** can be performed as described in Scheme 1..

[0051] **Step d)** PG^{amino} in **XVI** can be removed in accordance with techniques that are well known to those skilled in the art and which are exemplified hereinafter. For example **XVI** can be deprotected using an appropriate agent (depending on the protecting group) such as for example trifluoro acetic acid, HCl or H₂SO₄ solutions, KOH; Ba(OH)₂; Pd on carbon (Pd/C), trimethylsilyl iodide or other conditions as described in "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis", 3rd edition, T.W. Greene & P.G.M. Wutz, Wiley-Interscience (1999). Appropriate co-solvent for this step is for example DCM, THF, MeCN, DMF, DMA, NMP or mixtures of the above mentioned solvents at any suitable temperature between 0°C to 100°C.

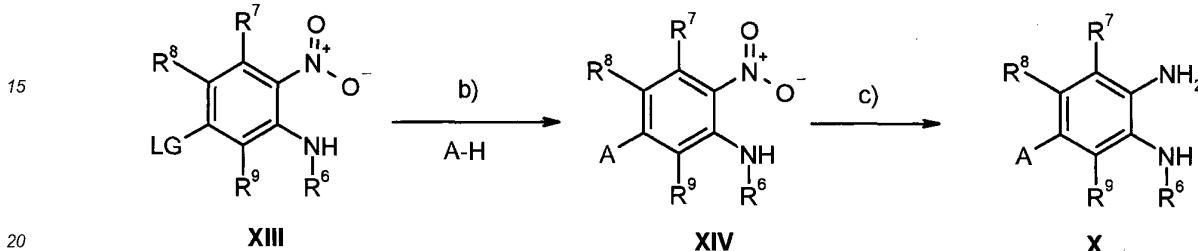
[0052] The amide formation in step e) can be performed with the acids **HO-W-M** and an additional in-situ activating agent like 1-propylphosphonic acid cyclic anhydride (PPA), O-(benzo-triazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetra-methyl-uronium tetrafluoroborate (TBTU), O-(benzo-triazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-uronium-hexafluorophosphate (HBTU), O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-uronium-hexafluorophosphate (HATU), DCC, EDCI, carbonyl-di-imidazole (CDI), carbonylditriazole (CDT), 1-chloro-2-methyl-propenyl-dimethylamine, oxalyl chloride or other activating agents of the state of the art. Alternatively, the amide formation can be performed directly with the corresponding acid chloride **Cl-W-M** under analogous conditions without an additional in situ activating agent.

[0053] The coupling reaction is preferably performed in the presence of a base such as NaOH, KOH, NaHCO₃, TEA, DIPEA, pyridine, N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP) or other appropriate bases of the state of the art and for example

described in Houben-Weyl, "Methods in Organic Synthesis", Vol. E22a, p 425ff. The coupling reactions are performed in an appropriate solvent for example DCM, dioxane, THF, MeCN, DMF, dimethylacetamide (DMA), N-methylpyrrolidone (NMP) or in mixtures of the above mentioned solvents at any suitable temperature between 0°C to 100°C.

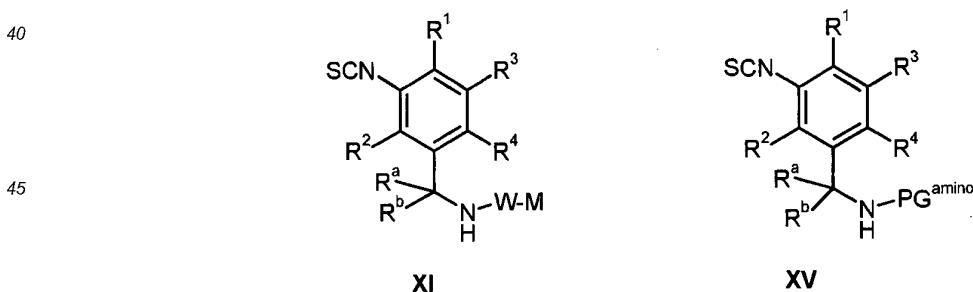
[0054] The synthesis of the building blocks **X** can be performed in a procedure described in scheme C - wherein all variable groups in **XIII** and **XIV** are as defined in claim 1 and LG is a leaving group on the aromatic ring (for example a fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo or trifluormethylsulfonyl group) - using standard reaction conditions known to those skilled in the art which are exemplified in the experimental part in detail.

Scheme C [all variable groups are as defined in claim 1 and LG is a leaving group as for example Fluoro, Chloro, Bromo, Iodo, or CF₃(SO₃)]



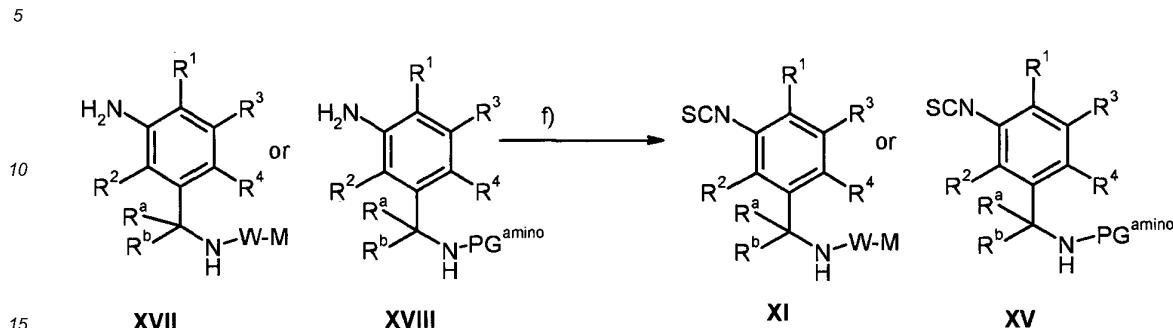
[0055] Step b can be performed by an aromatic substitution reaction of the building block **XIII** with the amine A-H or an appropriate salt thereof and using literature known reaction conditions. For example the reaction can be performed employing a building block **XIII** wherein LG is preferably a fluoro or chloro substituent in presence of a suitable base like K₂CO₃, Na₂CO₃, Cs₂CO₃, TEA, DIPEA in an appropriate solvent for example DMF, DMSO, DMA, NMP or mixtures of the above mentioned solvents at any suitable temperature between 0°C to 180°C. Alternatively the reaction can also be performed in presence of a Pd-catalyst, in this case the preferred groups LG are bromo, iodo or trifluormethylsulfonyl. For example Pd(PPh₃)₄ can be used in presence of a suitable base for example K₂CO₃, Na₂CO₃, Cs₂CO₃, TEA, DIPEA in an appropriate solvent for example THF, MeCN, DMF or mixtures of the mentioned solvents preferably at a temperature between 0°C to 120°C.

[0056] The nitro group in precursor **XIV** can be reduced to the amino group in step c) under literature known reduction conditions for example via hydrogenation (preferably at 1-5 bar) in presence of Pt/C, Pd/C or Raney-Nickel (Ra/Ni) in MeOH, EtOH or THF or mixtures thereof, optionally under acidic conditions in presence of HCl, or by using SnCl₂/HCl, Na₂S₂O₄, Zn/HCl, Fe/HCl, Fe-powder/aqueous NH₄Cl solution or according to procedures described in the literature for example R. Larock, Comprehensive Organic Transformations, VCH Verlagsgemeinschaft, Weinheim (1989). Appropriate solvent for this step is for example DCM, THF, MeCN, DMF, DMA, NMP, EtOH, MeOH or mixtures of the above mentioned solvents at any suitable temperature between 0°C to 100°C.



[0057] The synthesis of the building blocks **XI** and **XV** - wherein all variable groups are as defined in claim 1 and PG^{amino} is a protecting group of the benzylic amino group - is employing standard reaction conditions according to scheme D known to those skilled in the art which are exemplified in the experimental part in detail or in WO2010/100249.

Scheme D (all variable groups are as defined in claim 1 and PG^{amino} is a protecting group of the benzylic amino group):



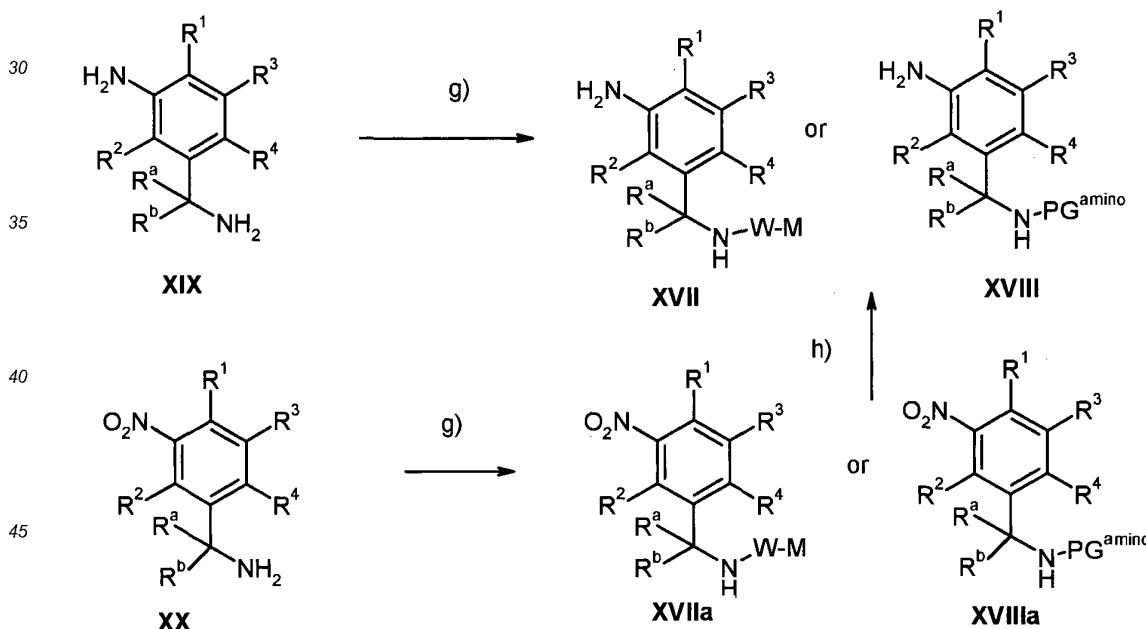
[0058] Step f) can be performed according to standard literature procedures for example with reagents such as 1,1'-thiocarbonyldi-2-pyridone, O,O'-di-2-pyridylthiocarbonate, 1,1'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole or with thiophosgene in a solvent as for example DCM, dioxane or DMF at temperatures between 0-150°C and optionally under addition of a base like DMAP or TEA.

[0059] The building blocks **XVII** and **XVIII** can be prepared according to scheme E:

20

25

Scheme E (all variable groups are as defined in claim 1 and PG^{amino} is a protecting group of the benzylic amino group):



50

55

[0060] The amide formation in step g) can be performed in analogy to step c) or step e) to synthesize compound **XVII** or by using common reagents for amino group protection for example di-tert-butyl-dicarbonate, methyl-, ethyl-, benzyl or allyl-chloroformate under standard reaction conditions as described in "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis", 3rd edition, T.W. Greene & P.G.M. Wutz, Wiley-Interscience (1999) to synthesize compounds **XVIII**.

[0061] The nitro group in precursor **XVIIa** or **XVIIIa** can be reduced to the amino group in step h) under literature known reduction conditions for example via hydrogenation (preferably at 1-5 bar) in presence of Pd/C, Pt/C or RaNi in MeOH, EtOH or THF optionally under acidic conditions in presence of HCl, or by using SnCl₂/HCl, Na₂S₂O₄, Zn/HCl, Fe/HCl, Fe-powder/aqueous NH₄Cl solution or according to procedures described in the literature for example R. Larock, Comprehensive Organic Transformations, VCH Verlagsgemeinschaft, Weinheim (1989). Appropriate solvent for this step is

for example DCM, THF, MeCN, DMF, DMA, NMP, EtOH, MeOH or mixtures of the above mentioned solvents at any suitable temperature between 0°C to 100°C.

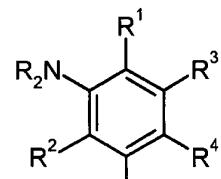
[0062] The building blocks **XIX** and **XX** can be prepared according to scheme F-H:

5

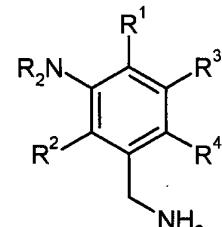
Scheme F (R^a and R^b are hydrogen atoms, all other variable groups are as defined in claim 1):

10

15

 $R_2N = H_2N \text{ or } O_2N$


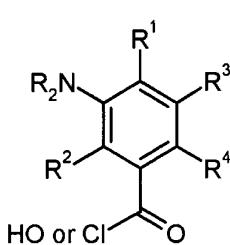
i)



XIX ($R_2N = H_2N$)

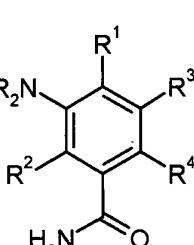
20

25



XXII

j)



XXIII

k)

XX ($R_2N = O_2N$)

30

[0063] Step i) can be performed via hydrogenation (1-5 bar) with a catalyst like Pd/C, PtO₂ or RaNi in a suitable solvent like MeOH or EtOH optionally using HCl or NH₃ as additive at temperatures between 0-60°C or via reduction with LiAlH₄ or BH₃-containing reagents in a suitable solvent like THF, MeOH or EtOH under literature-known conditions.

35

[0064] Step j) can be performed under the amide coupling conditions described for step e) and using NH₃ as coupling partner, for example 1-chloro-2-methyl-propenyl-dimethylamine in THF can be used as activating agent.

[0065] Step k) can be performed using LiAlH₄ or BH₃-containing reagents under literature known conditions as for example compiled in R.C.Larock, Comprehensive Organic Transformations, VCH, 1989, p.432-433, preferably with LiAlH₄ in THF at 0-80°C.

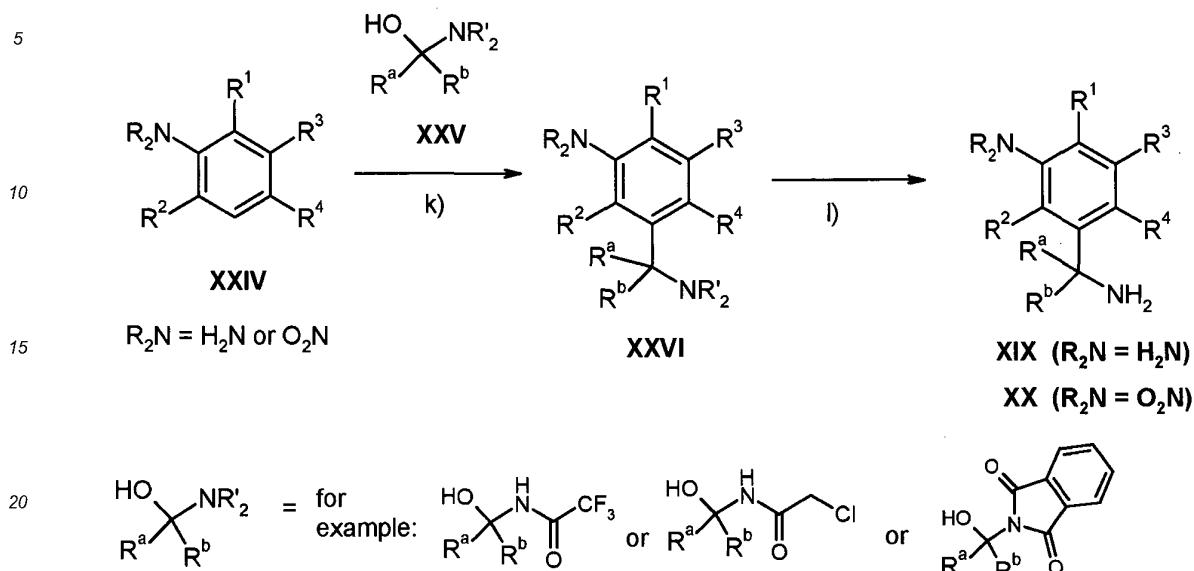
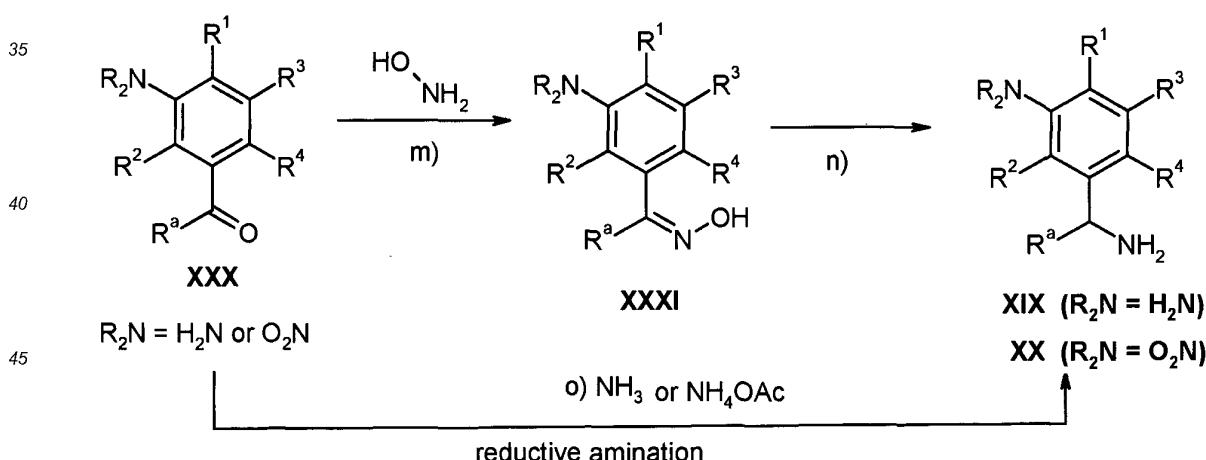
40

[0066] Alternatively compounds **XIX** and **XX** can be prepared as described in WO2010/100249 or according to scheme G

45

50

55

Scheme G (all variable groups are as defined in claim 1):**Scheme H** (R^b = H, all variable groups are as defined in claim 1):

in water, MeOH, EtOH, THF or mixtures thereof, under buffered conditions preferably at a pH between 5-9 or employing hydrogenations using Pd/C or Ra-Ni as catalysts in MeOH, EtOH or THF optionally using HCl or HOAc as cocatalyst or according to procedures described in the literature for example in WO2010/100249 or R. Larock, Comprehensive Organic Transformations, VCH Verlagsgemeinschaft, Weinheim (1989).

5

Biological Assays

[0073] The aim of this assay is to determine the affinity of a test compound for the mPGES-1 enzyme.

[0074] Similar assays to measure inhibition of mPGES-1 have previously been described in the literature [1, 2].

10

Literature references:

[0075]

15

1. Riendeau, D., R. Aspiotis, D. Ethier, Y. Gareau, E. Grimm, J. Guay, S. Guiral, H. Juteau, J. Mancini, N. Methot, J. Rubin, and R. Friesen, Inhibitors of the inducible microsomal prostaglandin E2 synthase (mPGES-1) derived from MK-886. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett*, 2005. 15(14): p. 3352-3355.
2. Cote, B., L. Boulet, C. Brideau, D. Claveau, D. Ethier, R. Frenette, M. Gagnon, A. Giroux, J. Guay, S. Guiral, J. Mancini, E. Martins, F. Masse, N. Methot, D. Riendeau, J. Rubin, D. Xu, H. Yu, Y. Ducharme, and R. Friesen, Substituted phenanthrene imidazoles as potent, selective, and orally active mPGES-1 inhibitors. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett*, 2007. 17(24): p. 6816-6820.

20

Assay A: mPGES-1 enzyme assay

25

List of reagents used:

[0076]

30

- Glutathione (Sigma, G-4251)
- Freeze culture in Rosetta *E coli* expression strain.
- LB growth media with Ampicillin (Amp) final concentration in culture 50µg/mL
- Chloroamphenicol stock 34mg/mL (chloro) final concentration in culture 34µg/mL
- Sterile growth flasks for 500mL-1liter cultures
- 0.1 M KP_i buffer pH 7.4
- 9.25% HCl
- PGH₂ (0.25 mM)
- Fe (II) Cl₂ tetra hydrate, 99% (Sigma, 220229)
- 384-well plate with compounds
- 96-well plate, polypropylene (Thermo fast 96 skirted VWR)
- 384-well plate polypropylene PCR plate (Greiner 785201)
- Greiner 384-well plate pp (In vitro cat. no. 781280)
- Adhesive sealing film for 96-well plates (Sigma-Aldrich)
- Aluminium foil (PCR foil, 310-0030-127-471 from Labora)
- PBS (GIBCO 14040)
- Prostaglandin E₂ Assay (Cisbio,cat.no. 62P2APEC)
- Biomek FX robot (Beckman Coulter)
- Biomek NX robot (Beckman Coulter)
- Multidrop; micro or combi (ThermoLabsystems)
- Plate reader: Safire2 (Tecan)

45

[0077] Microsomes from Rosetta *E.coli* bacteria expressing recombinant human mPGES-1 can be derived as described below:

50

Inoculate 5mL LB with Amp and Chloro with bacteria from freeze culture. Incubate overnight at 37 °C with 200rpm. Thereafter, inoculate 500-800 mL LB containing Amp and Chloro with the 5 mL on culture and grow to OD640 of 0.6-0.8. Chill the culture to +4°C before induction. Induce the culture with IPTG at a final concentration of 400µM. Express the protein at room temp 18-23 °C with 200 rpm shaking overnight.

[0078] The following steps can be performed on the following day:

1. Spin down the cells in 250mL centrifuge flasks for 15min at 7000rpm
2. Dissolve the pellet from 250mL culture in 12.5 mL homogenization buffer
- 5 3. Disintegrate the cells by sonication, 4X10 seconds at 35% amplitude
4. Add 2.5mL MgCl₂ (100mM) and DNase 12.5µL (0.8mg/mL) and incubate on ice for 30 min
5. Spin down the bacteria debris and save the supernatant, 7000 rpm for 15 min
6. Isolate the protein containing membranes in the supernatant by ultracentrifugation 45000 x g for 1 hour.
- 10 7. Discard the supernatant and dissolve the pellet in 20mM KPi buffer and aliquot the enzyme and store aliquots at -80°C.

[0079] Before each experiment is performed an aliquot of the enzyme is thawed and it can then be dissolved in 0.1 M KP_i pH 7.4 buffer containing 2,5 mM GSH. 50 µL of this enzyme solution is subsequently dispensed in a 384-well plate at room temperature. 0.5 µL of the inhibitor dissolved in DMSO is thereafter added to each well and incubated for 15 minutes at room temperature. Subsequently, 2 µL of PGH₂ dissolved in an appropriate solvent is added to each well and after one minute at room temperature, the acidified stop solution containing FeCl₂ is added. 4 µL of the total volume is transferred to a separate plate and diluted 750-fold in two separate steps before quantification of PGE₂.

[0080] In order to quantitate the amount of PGE₂ that has been formed, a homogenous time resolved fluorescent (HTRF) detection of PGE₂ can be performed by the use of a commercially available kit from CisBio essentially according to the manufacturer's protocol. Briefly, 10 µL of the diluted sample is transferred to a white 384-well plate and the following steps can be performed in a sequential manner at room temperature or as indicated.

- 5 µL reconstitution buffer as supplied by the manufacturer is added to the negative control (NC) wells.
- The plate is covered with adhesive sealing film.
- 25 • The plate can now be centrifuged at 1200 rpm for 1 minute.
- The NC samples are covered with sealing film.
- 250µL d2 labeled PGE₂ (d2-PGE₂) can be diluted in 4750 µL reconstitution buffer as supplied by the manufacturer
- 250µL Eu3+-cryptate can be diluted in 4750µL reconstitution buffer as supplied by the manufacturer
- 30 • 5 µL d2-PGE₂ can now be added to rows 1 to 24, by using a multidrop. The sealing film is thereafter removed from the NC wells.
- 5µL Eu3+-cryptate labeled anti-PGE₂ can now be added to rows 1 to 24 by using a Multidrop.
- The plate can now be covered with sealing film.
- The plate can now be centrifuge at 1200 rpm for 1 minute and place at 4°C overnight.

[0081] After the overnight incubation the fluorescence is measured by the use of an appropriate microplate reader. The fluorescence of Eu3+-cryptate and d2-PGE₂ are measured using the following excitation and emission wavelength, europium cryptate: λ_{max}^{ex} = 307 nm, λ_{max}^{em} = 620 nm and d2: λ_{max}^{ex} = 620 nm, λ_{max}^{em} = 665 nm), respectively. The extent of the specific HTRF is measured as a ratio of the emission intensity at 665 nm vs. that at 620 nm. A standard curve using synthetic PGE₂ is used to quantify the amount of PGE₂ in unknown samples. The degree of inhibition can be calculated as percent inhibition by dividing the amount of PGE₂ formed in unknown samples by the amount of PGE₂ formed in control samples.

Assay B: mPGES-1 enzyme assay (modified)

45 mPGES protein production

[0082] Microsomes from Rosetta E.coli bacteria expressing recombinant human mPGES-1 can be derived as described below:

50 Inoculate 5mLB with Ampicilin (50 µg/ml) and Chloramphenicol (34 µg/ml) with bacteria from freeze culture. Incubate 8h at 37 °C with 200rpm. Thereafter, inoculate 500-1000 ml LB containing Ampicilin and Chloramphenicol with the 5 ml on culture and grow to OD640 of 0.8-1.0. Chill the culture to +4°C before induction. Induce the culture with IPTG at a final concentration of 400µM. Express the protein at room temp 18-23 °C with 200 rpm shaking overnight.

55 [0083] The following steps can be performed on the following day:

1. Spin down the cells in 250ml centrifuge flasks for 15min at 7000rpm (Beckmann Coulte Avanti J-E centrifuge)
2. Dissolve the pellet from 250ml culture in 12.5 ml homogenization buffer

3. (15mM Tris-HCL pH8, 1mM EDTA pH8, 0.25mM Sucrose, 2.5mM GSH, 1Tablet Protease inhibitor per 50ml buffer)
4. Disintegrate the cells by sonication, 5X10 seconds at 48% amplitude of a 750W sonifier
5. Add 2.5ml MgCl₂ (100mM) and DNase 12.5µl (0.8mg/ml) and incubate on ice for 30 min
6. Spin down the bacteria debris and save the supernatant, 7000 rpm for 15 min
- 5 7. Isolate the protein containing membranes in the supernatant by ultracentrifugation 120000 x g for 2hour at 4°C (Sorvall T880 rotor).
8. Discard the supernatant and dissolve the pellet in 20mM Potassium phosphate buffer pH7.4 (KH₂PO₄ and K₂HPO₄) buffer by sonication (5x10s, 30% of a 50W sonifier) and aliquot the enzyme and store aliquots at -80°C.

10 [0084] Before each experiment is performed an aliquot of the enzyme is thawed and it can then be dissolved in 0.1 M Potassium phosphate buffer pH7.4 (KH₂PO₄ and K₂HPO₄) buffer containing 2,5 mM GSH.

mPGES-1 enzyme assay

15 [0085] The aim of this assay is to determine the affinity of a test compound for the mPGES-1 enzyme.

[0086] 47µl of recombinant human mPGES-1 (~ 0.5 µg protein/well) containing microsomal suspension in a buffer containing GSH, (2.5 mmol/L L-Glutathione reduced, dissolved in 0.1mol/L Phosphat Buffer pH 7.4) is dispensed in a 384-well plate and thereafter 1 µl of the test compound(s) is/are added and incubated for 25 minutes at room temperature. The enzyme reaction is started by the addition of 2ul PGH2 (final conc. 2 µM) disolved in water-free Diglyme. After 60 20 seconds the reaction is terminated by addition of a stop solution containing FeCl₂ (10µL 0.074mol/l FeCl₂). The samples are diluted between 1:25 in PBS (Phosphate Buffered Saline). 10µl of the diluted samples are transferred to 384-well low volume plate. In order to quantify the amount of PGE₂ that has been formed, a homogenous time resolved fluorescent (HTRF) detecting of PGE₂ has been performed using a commercially available kit from Cisbio according to the manufacturers recommendation. This HTRF -based assay has been described in detail (see: Goedken et al., J Biomol Screen, 25 2008, 13(7), 619-625). Briefly, the diluted samples are mixed with 5µl PGE₂-d2 conjugate and 5µl anti-PGE₂ cryptate conjugate. After an incubation period of the plates overnight, the fluorescence is measured by the use of an appropriate microplate reader.

[0087] The fluorescence of Europium cryptate (maxex = 307 nm, maxem = 620 nm) and d2-PGE₂ (maxex = 620 nm, maxem = 665 nm) are measured.

30 [0088] The extent of the specific HTRF is measured as a ratio of the emission intensity at 665 nm vs. that at 620 nm at an excitation puls of 320 nm. The quantification plate contains also wells with different concentrations of PGE₂ as calibration curve for the calculation of the PGE₂ concentrations from the HTRF ratio values.

[0089] From all mPGES enzyme assay the background is subtracted and the IC₅₀ is calculated over a nonlinear regression with conventional software.

35

Table 1-A. mPGES-1 inhibitory effect (IC₅₀ values in nM) of compounds of the invention in the biological assays A

example	IC50 [nM]						
1	2.5	11	140	28	24	72	11
2	19	13	2.6	29	105	73	61
3	715	14	4.8	30	300	74	144
4	24	15	3	34	100	75	8.7
5	3.8	16	15	54	6.6	76	3.1
6	215	17	24	65	15	77	10
7	74	18	79	66	10	78	1.7
8	106	19	52	68	4	79	2.4
9	143	20	>100	69	9	80	54
10	31	21	30	71	2.5	81	6.7
82	1.7	83	1.3	84	7.3	85	20
86	7.1	87	14	88	5.3	89	6.1
90	2.2	91	3.6	93	17	94	3.5
95	2.1	96	4.1	99	4.0	100	7.7

(continued)

	example	IC50 [nM]						
5	101	2.8	102	2.4	103	2.0	104	2.4
	105	3.9	106	5.7	107	13	108	5.8
	109	5.2	110	1.5	111	19	112	22
	113	11	114	4.8	115	9.2	116	5.9
10	117	120	118	53	119	>100	120	266
	121	60	122	7.9	123	29	124	2.6
	125	32	126	6.7	127	26	128	172
	129	634	130	15	132	124	133	25

Table 1-B. mPGES-1 inhibitory effect (IC_{50} values in nM) of compounds of the invention in the biological assays B

	example	IC50 [nM]						
20	12	174	33	3	37	7.8	40	5.7
	48	9	51	23	52	2.2	53	3.5
	59	2	61	5	70	6.5	92	39
	97	3.1	98	6.5	131	5		

METHOD OF TREATMENT

30 **[0090]** The present invention relates to compounds of formula I which are useful in the prevention and/or treatment of a disease and/or condition in which the inhibition of prostaglandin E synthases, in particular that of the microsomal prostaglandin E₂ synthase-1 (mPGES-1) is of therapeutic benefit, including but not limited to the treatment and/or prevention of inflammatory diseases and/or associated conditions.

35 **[0091]** The term "inflammation" will be understood to include any inflammatory disease, disorder or condition *per se*, any condition that has an inflammatory component associated with it, and/or any condition characterised by inflammation as a symptom, including *inter alia* acute, chronic, ulcerative, specific, allergic and necrotic inflammation, and other forms of inflammation known to those skilled in the art. The term thus also includes, for the purposes of this invention, inflammatory pain, pain generally and/or fever.

40 **[0092]** Where a condition has an inflammatory component associated with it, or a condition characterised by inflammation as a symptom, the skilled person will appreciate that compounds of the invention may be useful in the treatment of the inflammatory symptoms and/or the inflammation associated with the condition.

45 **[0093]** Compounds of the invention may also have effects that are not linked to inflammatory mechanisms, such as in the reduction of bone loss in a subject. Such conditions include osteoporosis, osteoarthritis, Paget's disease and/or periodontal diseases.

50 **[0094]** A further aspect of the present invention relates to a compound of formula I as a medicament. Another aspect of the present invention is the compounds of formula I for use in the treatment and/or prevention of a disease and/or condition in which the inhibition of the mPGES-1 is of therapeutic benefit.

[0095] A further aspect of the present invention is the compound of formula I for use in the treatment and/or prevention of inflammatory diseases and/or associated conditions.

55 **[0096]** The present invention also relates to the compounds of formula I for use in the treatment and/or prevention of the following diseases and conditions:

1. Rheumatic diseases or autoimmune diseases or muscoskeletal diseases: all forms of rheumatic diseases including e.g. soft tissue rheumatism, rheumatoid arthritis, polymyalgia rheumatica, reactive arthritis, tenosynovitis, gout or metabolic arthritis, bursitis, tendonitis, juvenile arthritis, spondyloarthropathies like e.g. spondylitis, ankylosing spondylitis, psoriatic arthropathy; sarcoidosis, fibromyalgia, myositis, polymyositis, osteoarthritis, traumatic arthritis, collagenoses of any origin e.g. systemic lupus erythematosus, scleroderma, dermatomyositis, Still's Disease, Sjögren syndrome, Felty syndrome; rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease, diseases of blood vessels like vasculitis,

polyarthritis nodosa, Behcet's syndrome, giant cell arthritis, Wegener's granulomatosis, Henoch-Schönlein purpura; psoriatic arthritis, fungal arthritis, in particular including pain associated with any of the aforementioned conditions;

2. Headaches such as migraines with and without aura, tension-type headaches, cluster headaches and headaches with different origins;

5 3. Sympathetically maintained pain like complex regional pain syndrome Type I and II;

10 4. Neuropathic pain such as low back pain, hip pain, leg pain, non-herpetic neuralgia, post herpetic neuralgia, diabetic neuropathy, nerve injury-induced pain, acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) related neuropathic pain, head trauma, toxin and chemotherapy caused nerve injuries, phantom limb pain, multiple sclerosis, root avulsions, painful traumatic mononeuropathy, painful polyneuropathy, thalamic pain syndrome, post-stroke pain, central nervous system injury, post surgical pain, carpal tunnel syndrome, trigeminal neuralgia, post mastectomy syndrome, postthoracotomy syndrome, stump pain, repetitive motion pain, neuropathic pain associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, alcoholism and other drug-induced pain;

15 5. Cancer pain induced by or associated with tumors such as bone tumors, lymphatic leukemia; Hodgkin's disease, malignant lymphoma; lymphogranulomatosis; lymphosarcoma; solid malignant tumors; extensive metastases;

20 6. Visceral disorders such as chronic pelvic pain, pancreatitis, peptic ulcer, interstitial cystitis, cystitis, renal colic, angina, dysmenorrhoea, menstruation, gynaecological pain, irritable bowel disease (IBS), inflammatory bowel disease, Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis, nephritis, prostatitis, vulvodynia, non-ulcer dyspepsia, non-cardiac chest pain, myocardial ischemia;

25 7. Inflammation associated diseases of ear, nose, mouth and throat like influenza and viral/bacterial infections such as the common cold, allergic rhinitis (seasonal and perennial), pharyngitis, tonsillitis, gingivitis, laryngitis, sinusitis, and vasomotor rhinitis, fever, hay fever, thyroiditis, otitis, dental conditions like toothache, perioperative and post-operative conditions, trigeminal neuralgia, uveitis; iritis, allergic keratitis, conjunctivitis, blepharitis, neuritis nervi optici, choroiditis, glaucoma and sympathetic ophthalmia, as well as pain thereof;

30 8. Neurological diseases such as cerebral oedema and angioedema, cerebral dementia like e.g. Parkinson's and Alzheimers disease, senile dementia; multiple sclerosis, epilepsy, drug resistant epilepsy, stroke, myasthenia gravis, brain and meningeal infections like encephalomyelitis, meningitis, including HIV as well as schizophrenia, delusional disorders, autism, affective disorders and tic disorders;

35 9. Work-related diseases like pneumoconiosis, including aluminosis, anthracosis, asbestosis, chalcosis, ptilosis, siderosis, silicosis, tabacosis and byssinosis;

40 10. Lung diseases such as asthma including allergic asthma (atopic or non-atopic) as well as exercise-induced bronchoconstriction, occupational asthma, viral- or bacterial exacerbation of asthma, other non-allergic asthmas and "wheezy-infant syndrome", Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) including emphysema, adult respiratory distress syndrome, bronchitis, pneumonia, adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), pigeon fancier's disease, farmers lung;

45 11. Skin diseases such as psoriasis and eczema, dermatitis, sunburn, burns as well as aprains and strains and tissue trauma;

50 12. Vascular and heart diseases which are inflammation- related like arteriosclerosis including cardiac transplant atherosclerosis, panarteritis nodosa, periarteritis nodosa, arteritis temporalis, Wegener granulomatosis, giant cell arthritis, reperfusion injury and erythema nodosum, thrombosis (e.g. deep vein thrombosis, renal, hepatic, portal vein thrombosis); coronary artery disease, aneurysm, vascular rejection, myocardial infarction, embolism, stroke, thrombosis including venous thrombosis, angina including unstable angina, coronary plaque inflammation, bacterial-induced inflammation including Chlamydia-induced inflammation, viral induced inflammation, and inflammation associated with surgical procedures such as vascular grafting including coronary artery bypass surgery, revascularization procedures including angioplasty, stent placement, endarterectomy, or other invasive procedures involving arteries, veins and capillaries, artery restenosis;

55 13. Diabetes-associated symptoms such as diabetic vasculopathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic retinopathy, post

capillary resistance or diabetic symptoms associated with insulitis (e.g. hyperglycemia, diuresis, proteinuria and increased nitrite and kallikrein urinary excretion);

5 14. Benign and malignant tumors and neoplasia including cancer, such as colorectal cancer, brain cancer, bone cancer, epithelial cell-derived neoplasia (epithelial carcinoma) such as basal cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, gastrointestinal cancer such as lip cancer, mouth cancer, esophageal cancer, small bowel cancer, stomach cancer, colon cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, pancreas cancer, ovary cancer, cervical cancer, lung cancer, breast cancer, skin cancer such as squamous cell and basal cell cancers, prostate cancer, renal cell carcinoma, and other known cancers effecting epithelial cells throughout the body; neoplasias like gastrointestinal cancer, Barrett's esophagus, liver cancer, bladder cancer, pancreatic cancer, ovarian cancer, prostate cancer, cervical cancer, lung cancer, breast cancer and skin cancer; adenomatous polyps, including familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) as well preventing polyps from forming in patients at risk of FAP.

10 15. Various other disease states and conditions like epilepsy, septic shock e.g. as antihypovolemic and/or antihypotensive agents, sepsis, osteoporosis, benign prostatic hyperplasia and hyperactive bladder, nephritis, pruritis, vitiligo, disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, allergic skin reactions, mixed-vascular and non-vascular syndromes, septic shock associated with bacterial infections or with trauma, central nervous system injury, tissue damage and postoperative fever, syndromes associated with itching.

20 [0097] Preferred according to the present invention is the compound of formula I for use in the treatment and/or prevention of pain; in particular pain that is associated with any one of the diseases or conditions listed above.

DOSAGE

25 [0098] The dose range of the compounds of formula I applicable per day is usually from 0.01 to 5000 mg, preferably from 1 to 2000 mg, more preferably from 5 to 500 mg, most preferably 10 to 250 mg. Each dosage unit may conveniently contain from 2 to 500 mg, preferably 5 to 250 mg.

30 [0099] The actual pharmaceutically effective amount or therapeutic dosage will of course depend on factors known by those skilled in the art such as age and weight of the patient, route of administration and severity of disease. In any case the combination will be administered at dosages and in a manner which allows a pharmaceutically effective amount to be delivered based upon patient's unique condition.

PHARMACEUTICAL FORMULATIONS

35 [0100] Suitable preparations for administering the compounds of formula I will be apparent to those with ordinary skill in the art and include for example tablets, pills, capsules, suppositories, lozenges, troches, solutions, syrups, elixirs, sachets, injectables, inhalatives and powders etc. The content of the pharmaceutically active compound(s) should be in the range from 1 to 99 wt.-%, preferably 10 to 90 wt.-%, more preferably 20 to 70 wt.-%, of the composition as a whole.

40 [0101] Suitable tablets may be obtained, for example, by mixing one or more compounds according to formula I with known excipients, for example inert diluents, carriers, disintegrants, adjuvants, surfactants, binders and/or lubricants. The tablets may also consist of several layers. A further aspect of the invention is a pharmaceutical formulation including a compound of formula I in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable adjuvant, diluent or carrier.

COMBINATION THERAPY

45 [0102] The compounds according to the present invention can be combined with other treatment options known to be used in the art in connection with a treatment of any of the indications the treatment of which is in the focus of the present invention.

50 [0103] Among such treatment options that are considered suitable for combination with the treatment according to the present inventions are:

- non-steroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) including COX-2 inhibitors;
- opiate receptor agonists;
- Cannabinoid agonists or inhibitors of the endocannabinoid pathway
- Sodium channel blockers;
- N-type calcium channel blockers;
- serotonergic and noradrenergic modulators;

- corticosteroids;
 - histamine H1 receptor antagonists;
 - histamine H2 receptor antagonists;
 - proton pump inhibitors;
- 5 - leukotriene antagonists and 5-lipoxygenase inhibitors;
- local anesthetics;
 - VR1 agonists and antagonists;
 - Nicotinic acetylcholine receptor agonists;
 - P2X3 receptor antagonists;
- 10 - NGF agonists and antagonists or anti-NGF antibodies;
- NK1 and NK2 antagonists;
 - Bradykinin B1 antagonists
 - CCR2 antagonists
 - iNOS or nNOS or eNOS inhibitors
- 15 - NMDA antagonist;
- potassium channel modulators;
 - GABA modulators;
 - serotonergic and noradrenergic modulators;
 - anti-migraine drugs;
- 20 - neuropathic pain drugs such as pregabalin or duloxetine.

[0104] Said list is not considered to have a limiting character.

In the following representative examples of such treatment options shall be given.

- 25
- [0105]**
- Non-steroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) including COX-2 inhibitors: propionic acid derivatives (alminoprofen, benoxaprofen, bucloxic acid, carprofen, fenhufen, fenoprofen, flubiprofen, ibuprofen, indoprofen, ketoprofen, miroprofen, naproxen, oxaprozin, pirprofen, pranoprofen, suprofen, tiaprofenic acid, and tioxaprofen), acetic acid derivatives (indomethacin, acetaminophen, alclofenac, clidanac, diclofenac, fenclofenac, fencloxic acid, fentiazac, furofenac, ibufenac, isoxepac, oxpainac, sulindac, tiopinac, tolmetin, zidometacin, and zomepirac), fenamic acid derivatives (meclofenamic acid, mefenamic acid, and tolfenamic acid), biphenyl-carboxylic acid derivatives, oxicams (isoxicam, meloxicam, piroxicam, sodoxicam and tenoxicam), salicylates (acetyl salicylic acid, sulfasalazine) and the pyrazolones (apazone, bezipiperonyl, feprazone, mofebutazone, oxyphenbutazone, phenylbutazone), and the coxibs (celecoxib, valedoxib, rofecoxib and etoricoxib) and the like;
 - Antiviral drugs like acyclovir, tenovir, pleconaril, peramivir, pocosanol and the like.
 - Antibiotic drugs like gentamicin, streptomycin, geldanamycin, doripenem, cephalexin, cefaclor, ceftazidime, cefepime, erythromycin, vancomycin, aztreonam, amoxicillin, bacitracin, enoxacin, mafenide, doxycycline, chloramphenicol and the like;
 - Opiate receptor agonists: morphine, propoxyphene (Darvon), tramadol, buprenorphin and the like;
 - Glucocorticosteroids such as bethamethasone, budesonide, dexamethasone, hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, prednisolone, prednisone, triamcinolone and deflazacort; immunosuppressive, immunomodulatory, or cytostatic drugs including but not limited to hydroxychlorquine, D-penicillamine, sulfasalazine, auranofin, gold mercaptourine, tacrolimus, sirolimus, mycophenolate mofetil, cyclosporine, leflunomide, methotrexate, azathioprine, cyclophosphamide and glatiramer acetate and novantrone, fingolimod (FTY720), minocycline and thalidomide and the like;
 - anti-TNF antibodies or TNF-receptor antagonists such as but not limited to Etanercept, Infliximab, Adalimumab (D2E7), CDP 571, and Ro 45-2081 (Lenercept), or biologic agents directed against targets such as but not limited to CD-4, CTLA-4, LFA-1, IL-6, ICAM-1, C5 and Natalizumab and the like;
 - IL-1 receptor antagonists such as but not limited to Kineret;
 - Sodium channel blockers: carbamazepine, mexiletine, lamotrigine, tectin, lacosamide and the like.
 - N-type calcium channel blockers: Ziconotide and the like.
 - Serotonergic and noradrenergic modulators: paroxetine, duloxetine, clonidine, amitriptyline, citalopram;
 - Histamine H1 receptor antagonists: bromopheniramine, chlorpheniramine, dexchlorpheniramine, triprolidine, clemastine, diphenhydramine, diphenylpyraline, tripelennamine, hydroxyzine, methdilazine, promethazine, trimeprazine, azatadine, cyproheptadine, antazoline, pheniramine pyrilamine, astemizole, terfenadine, loratadine, cetirizine, desloratadine, fexofenadine and levocetirizine and the like;
 - Histamine H2 receptor antagonists: cimetidine, famotidine and ranitidine and the like;

- Proton pump inhibitors: omeprazole, pantoprazole and esomeprazole and the like;
 - Leukotriene antagonists and 5-lipoxygenase inhibitors: zafirlukast, montelukast, pranlukast and zileuton and the like;
 - Local anesthetics such as ambroxol, lidocaine and the like;
 - 5 • Potassium channel modulators: like retigabine;
 - GABA modulators: lacosamide, pregabalin, gabapentin and the like;
 - Anti-migraine drugs: sumatriptan, zolmitriptan, naratriptan, eletriptan, telcegeptan and the like;
 - NGF antibodies such as RI-724 and the like.
- 10 [0106] Combination therapy is also possible with new principles for the treatment of pain e.g. P2X3 antagonists, VR1 antagonists, NK1 and NK2 antagonists, NMDA antagonists, mGluR antagonists and the like.
- [0107] The combination of compounds is preferably a synergistic combination. Synergy, as described for example by Chou and Talalay, *Adv. Enzyme Regul.* 22:27-55 (1984), occurs when the effect of the compounds when administered in combination is greater than the additive effect of the compounds when administered alone as a single agent. In general, 15 a synergistic effect is most clearly demonstrated at suboptimal concentrations of the compounds. Synergy can be in terms of lower cytotoxicity, increased pharmacological effect, or some other beneficial effect of the combination compared with the individual components.

EXPERIMENTAL SECTION

20 Preparation of examples for compounds of the general formula I

- [0108] Unless otherwise stated, one or more tautomeric forms of compounds of the examples described hereinafter may be prepared *in situ* and/or isolated. All tautomeric forms of compounds of the examples described hereinafter should 25 be considered to be disclosed.
- [0109] The invention is illustrated by way of the following examples, in which the following abbreviations may be employed:

Abbreviations:

30	[0110]	
	AcOH	acetic acid
35	ALOX B	aluminium oxide
	aq	aqueous
	Boc	tert.-butoxycarbonyl
	CE	chromatography equipment
	CH	cyclohexane
	conc	concentrated
40	DCM	dichloromethane
	DIC	N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide
	DIPEA	N-ethyl diisopropylamine
	DMAP	N,N-dimethylaminopyridine
	DMSO	dimethylsulphoxide
45	DMF	N,N-dimethylformamide
	EDC	1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride
	eq.	equivalent
	EtOAc	ethyl acetate
	Et ₂ O	diethyl ether
50	EtOH	ethanol
	FA	formic acid
	HBTU	O-(benzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate
	HPLC	high performance liquid chromatography
	i-PrOH	isopropanol
55	MeCN	acetonitrile
	MeOH	methanol
	MS	mass spectrometry
	MTBE	methyl- <i>tert</i> -butyl ether

NMP	N-Methylpyrrolidinon
NMR	nuclear magnetic resonance
PE	petrol ether
PPA	1-propylphosphonic-acid cyclic anhydride
5 Pd/C	10 % Palladium on carbon
Pt/C	Platinum on carbon
Ra-Ni	Raney-Nickel
RP	reversed phase
rt	room temperature
10 R _f	retention factor
R _t	retention time
sat	saturated
TBTU	O-(benzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate
TCDI	thiocarbonyl diimidazole
15 TEA	triethylamine
THF	tetrahydrofuran
TFA	trifluoroacetic acid
TLC	thin layer chromatography

20 **Analytical methods**

[0111] The HPLC/MS data, where specified, were obtained under the following conditions:

25 Chromatography equipment (CE):

CE 1:

[0112] Agilent 1100 with quaternary pump, Gilson G215 Autosampler, HP diode array detector. The diode array detection took place in a wavelength range from 210-550 nm

30 [0113] Range of mass-spectrometric detection: m/z 120 to m/z 1000

CE 2:

[0114] Waters ZQ2000 MS, Alliance 2695, PDA 2996, 210-500 nm, waters 2700 AS.

35 [0115] Range of mass-spectrometric detection: m/z 120 to m/z 820

CE 3:

[0116] Waters ZQ2000 MS, Agilent HP 100, binary pump, waters 2700 AS.

40 [0117] The diode array detection took place in a wavelength range from 210-500 nm

[0118] Range of mass-spectrometric detection: m/z 120 to m/z 820

CE 4:

45 [0119] Agilent 1200 with binary pump, Agilent MS 6140, HiPALS1367C

[0120] The diode array detection took place in a wavelength range from 190-400 nm

[0121] Range of mass-spectrometric detection: m/z 100 to m/z 1000

CE 5:

50 [0122] Waters ZQ2000 MS, Agilent HP 100, binary pump, Gilson 215 AS.

[0123] The diode array detection took place in a wavelength range from 210-500 nm

[0124] Range of mass-spectrometric detection: m/z 120 to m/z 820

CE 6:

[0125] Waters SQD MS, Acquity UPLC.

[0126] The diode array detection took place in a wavelength range from 210-500 nm

[0127] Range of mass-spectrometric detection: m/z 120 to m/z 820

CE 7:

5 [0128] Waters Alliance 2695 Separations Module.

[0129] Waters 2487 Dual λ Absorbance Detector (detection at 254 nm and 280 nm).

[0130] Waters 3100 Mass Detector. Range of mass-spectrometric detection: m/z 150 to m/z 1200.

CE 8:

10 [0131] Waters Acuity UPLC system, Waters Acuity TUV Detector (detection at 210 nm), Waters Acuity Binary Solvent Manager and Micromas Quattro micro API Mass Spectrometer.

[0132] The following methods were used:

15 Method A:

[0133] CE 4 was used.

[0134] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.15% formic acid; E2: acetonitrile

20 Eluent gradient:

[0135]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
25	0.0	95	5	1.6
	2.25	10	90	1.6
	2.50	10	90	1.6
	2.75	90	10	1.6

30 [0136] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 25°C): XBridge C18, 2.5. μ m, 3.0×30 mm

Method B:

35 [0137] CE 4 was used.

[0138] Mobile phase and eluent gradient: As described in method A.

[0139] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 25°C): Sunfire C18, 2.5. μ m, 3.0x30 mm

Method C:

40

[0140] CE 2 was used.

[0141] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.1 % TFA; E2: acetonitrile with 0.08% TFA

Eluent gradient:

45

[0142]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
50	0.0	95	5	1.5
	2.00	0	100	1.5
	3.00	0	100	1.5
	3.40	95	5	1.5

55 [0143] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 40°C): Waters sunfire C18, 3.5 μ m, 4.6x50 mm

Method D:

- [0144] CE 3 was used.
 [0145] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.032% NH₃; E2: MeOH

5

Eluent gradient:

[0146]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
10	0.0	95	5	1.5
	2.00	0	100	1.5

15 [0147] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 40°C): Waters XBridge C18, 3.5 μm, 4.6x50 mm

Method E:

- [0148] CE 4 was used.
 20 [0149] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.15% formic acid; E2: acetonitrile

Eluent gradient:

[0150]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
25	0.00	95	5	1.6
	2.00	50	50	1.6
	2.25	10	90	1.6
30	2.50	10	90	1.6
	2.75	95	5	1.6

[0151] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 25°C): Sunfire C18, 2.5. μm, 3.0x30 mm

35

Method F:

- [0152] CE 4 was used.
 [0153] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.15% formic acid; E2: acetonitrile

40

Eluent gradient:

[0154]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
45	0.00	95	5	1.6
	1.00	10	90	1.6
	2.50	10	90	1.6
	2.75	95	5	1.6

50

[0155] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 25°C): Sunfire C18, 2.5. μm, 3.0x30 mm

Method G:

55

- [0156] CE 4 was used.
 [0157] Mobile phase and eluent gradient: as described in Method E.
 [0158] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 25°C): Zorbax Stable Bond C18, 1.8 μm, 3.0x30 mm

Method H:

- [0159] CE 4 was used.
- [0160] Mobile phase and eluent gradient: As described in Method A.
- 5 [0161] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 25°C): Zorbax Stable Bond C18, 1.8 µm, 3.0x30 mm

Method I:

- 10 [0162] CE 4 was used.
- [0163] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.15% formic acid; E2: acetonitrile

Eluent gradient:

[0164]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
	0.0	95	5	1.6
	2.00	10	90	1.6
	5.00	10	90	1.6
20	5.50	90	10	1.6

[0165] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 25°C): Zorbax Stable Bond C18, 3.5 µm, 4.6x75 mm

25 Method J:

- [0166] CE 3 was used.
- [0167] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.1% TFA; E2: acetonitrile with 0.08% TFA

30 Eluent gradient:

[0168]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
35	0.0	95	5	1.5
	2.00	0	100	1.5
	2.50	0	100	1.5
	2.60	95	5	1.5

40 [0169] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 40°C): Waters sunfire C18, 3.5 µm, 4.6x50 mm

Method K:

- 45 [0170] CE 3 was used.
- [0171] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.15% HCOOH, E2: MeOH
- [0172] Eluent gradient and column as in method D:

Method L:

- 50 [0173] CE 5 was used.
- [0174] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.1% TFA; E2: acetonitrile with 0.1% TFA

Eluent gradient:

[0175]

EP 2 649 052 B1

time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
0.0	95	5	1.5
2.00	0	100	1.5
2.49	0	100	1.5
2.50	95	5	1.5

5

[0176] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 40°C): Waters sunfire C18, 3.5 µm, 4.6x50 mm

10 Method M:

[0177] CE 5 was used.

[0178] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.032% NH₃; E2: acetonitrile

15 Eluent gradient:

[0179]

time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
0.0	95	5	1.3
2.00	0	100	1.3
2.50	0	100	1.3
2.60	95	5	1.3

25

[0180] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 60°C): Waters XBridge C18, 1.7 µm, 2.1x50 mm

Method N:

30 [0181] CE 7 was used.

[0182] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.01% TFA; E2: acetonitrile with 0.01% TFA

Eluent gradient:

35 [0183]

time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
0.00	90	10	0.2
15.00	5	95	0.2
25.00	5	95	0.2
25.10	90	10	0.2

45

[0184] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 30°C): Atlantis dC18, 5 µm, 2.1x50 mm

Method O:

[0185] CE 7 was used.

[0186] E1: water with 0.01% TFA; E2: acetonitrile with 0.01% TFA

50

Eluent gradient:

[0187]

55

time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
0.00	90	10	0.2
15.00	5	95	0.2
20.00	5	95	0.2

(continued)

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
5	20.10	90	10	0.2
	25.00	90	10	0.2

[0188] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 30°C): XBridge C18, 3.5 µm, 2.1x50 mm

Method P:

[0189] CE 8 was used.

[0190] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.1 % HCOOH; E2: acetonitrile with 0.1 % HCOOH

Eluent gradient:

[0191]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
20	0.00	95	5	0.2
	10.00	2	98	0.2
	15.00	2	98	0.2
	15.50	95	5	0.2
	20.00	95	5	0.2

[0192] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 30°C): Acquity UPLC BEH C18, 1.7 µm, 2.1x50 mm

Method Q:

[0193] CE 5 was used.

[0194] Mobile phase: E1: water with 0.1 % TFA; E2: MeOH

Eluent gradient:

[0195]

	time in min	%E1	%E2	flow rate in mL/min
40	0.0	80	20	2.0
	1.70	0	100	2.0
	2.50	0	100	2.0
	2.60	80	20	2.0

[0196] Chromatography column: (column temperature: constant at 60°C): Waters sunfire C18, 3.5 µm, 4.6x50 mm

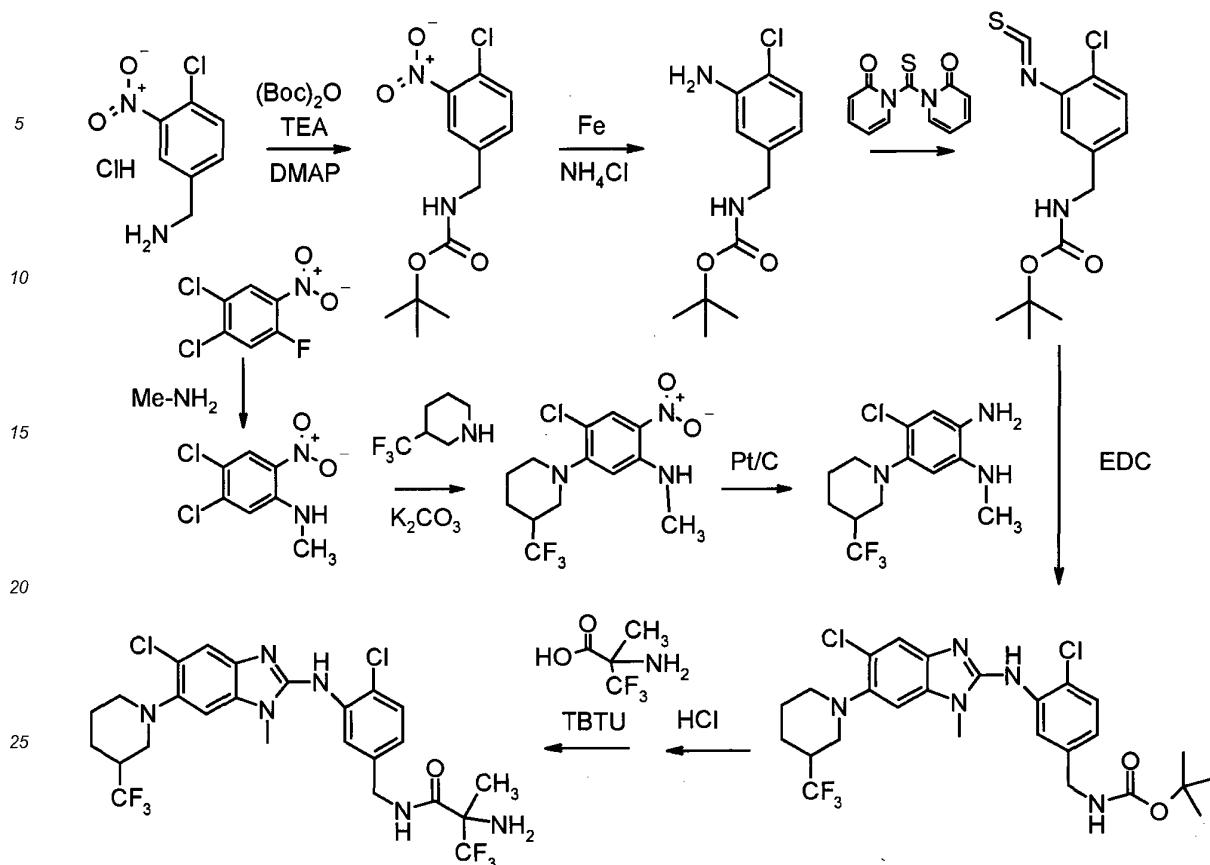
[0197] In the mass spectra in general only the m/z-peak of the main isotope is cited. For all compounds where mass spectra data is given, the isotope patterns are in analogy to the natural occurrence of the elements which are present in the given compound.

Example 1

50 2-Amino-N-{4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-3,3,3-trifluoro-2-methylpropanamide

[0198]

55

(a) Tert-butyl 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzylcarbamate

[0199] TEA (3.12 mL, 22.4 mmol) followed by DMAP (0.14 g, 1.1 mmol) were added to (4-chloro-3-nitrophenyl)methanamine hydrochloride (5.00 g, 22.4 mmol) in DCM (30 mL). The mixture was cooled to 0°C and BOC-anhydride (5.87 g, 26.9 mmol) in DCM (15 mL) was added. After stirring at 0°C for 30 min and further 18 h at rt the reaction mixture was poured into ammonia (10%). The mixture was extracted with DCM. The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 5.66 g (88%). R_f(TLC): 0.75 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 98:2)

(b) Tert-butyl 3-amino-4-chlorobenzylcarbamate

[0200] Sat. aq. NH₄Cl (50 mL) followed by iron powder (5.51 g, 98.7 mmol) were added at rt to a mixture of tert-butyl 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzylcarbamate (5.66 g, 19.7 mmol) and EtOH (50 mL). After stirring for 4 h at 80°C, 4 h at 90°C and at rt overnight the reaction mixture was filtered through celite and washed with EtOAc. The aq. layer was extracted with EtOAc. The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 5.02 g (99%). R_f(TLC): 0.33 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 98:2). MS m/z: 257 [M+H]⁺.

(c) Tert-butyl 4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzylcarbamate

[0201] Tert-butyl 3-amino-4-chlorobenzylcarbamate (2.57 g, 10.0 mmol) was added to a mixture of 1,1'-thiocarbonyldi-2-pyridone (2.55 g, 11.0 mmol) and DCM (90 mL) and it was stirred at rt for 4 h. The mixture was diluted with DCM and filtered over silica gel. The organic layer was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 2.73 g (91%). R_f(TLC): 0.88 (silica gel, PE:EtOAc 1:1). MS m/z: 297 [M-H]⁻.

(d) 4,5-Dichloro-N-methyl-2-nitroaniline

[0202] 1,2-Dichloro-4-fluoro-5-nitrobenzene (5.00 g, 23.8 mmol) in DMF (5.0 mL) was added to methylamine (10% in

toluene, 80.0 g, 258 mmol) and stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of ALOX B, washed with DMF/MeOH and concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 5.22 g (99%). HPLC-method C: R_f = 2.70 min. MS m/z: 221 [M]⁺.

5 (e) 4-Chloro-N-methyl-2-nitro-5-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0203] 3-(Trifluoromethyl)piperidine (0.69 g, 4.5 mmol) followed by potassium carbonate (1.25 g, 9.1 mmol) were added to 4,5-dichloro-N-methyl-2-nitroaniline (1.00 g, 4.5 mmol) in DMF (15 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred 5 h at 80°C and overnight at 70°C. After addition of further 1.5 eq of potassium carbonate the mixture was stirred 2 h at rt and 2 days at 100°C. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of ALOX B and concentrated. The crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 1.01 g (66%). R_f (TLC): 0.36 (silica gel, CH₃OAc 5:1). HPLC-method C: R_f = 2.94 min. MS m/z: 336 [M-H]⁻.

10 (f) 5-Chloro-2-methylamino-4-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0204] A mixture of 4-chloro-N-methyl-2-nitro-5-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)aniline (250 mg, 0.7 mmol), THF (6 mL), MeOH (6 mL) and Pt/C (50 mg) was stirred for 4 h at 35°C under a hydrogen atmosphere (3.2 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the mixture was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 205 mg (90%). HPLC-method C: R_f = 2.05 min. MS m/z: 308 [M+H]⁺.

15 (g) Tert-butyl N-{4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-carbamate

[0205] Tert-butyl 4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzylcarbamate (938 mg, 3.1 mmol) was added to 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)aniline (920 mg, 3.0 mmol) in MeCN (20 mL). The mixture was stirred for 4 h at rt, then EDC (582 μ L, 3.3 mmol) was added and it was stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was purified by chromatography to give the subtitle compound.

Yield: 700 mg (41%). HPLC-method C: R_f = 2.34 min. MS m/z: 572 [M]⁺.

30 (h) 4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzylamine

[0206] 4 M HCl in dioxane (20 mL) was added to tert-butyl N-{4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-carbamate (700 mg, 1.2 mmol) in dioxane (20 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 2 h then diluted with water and aq. K_2CO_3 -solution and stirred for 1 h at rt. The mixture was concentrated, filtered and the filtercake was washed with water and dried to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 570 mg (99%). HPLC-method C: R_f = 1.83 min. MS m/z: 472 [M+H]⁺.

40 (i) 2-Amino-N-{4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-3,3,3-trifluoro-2-methylpropanamide

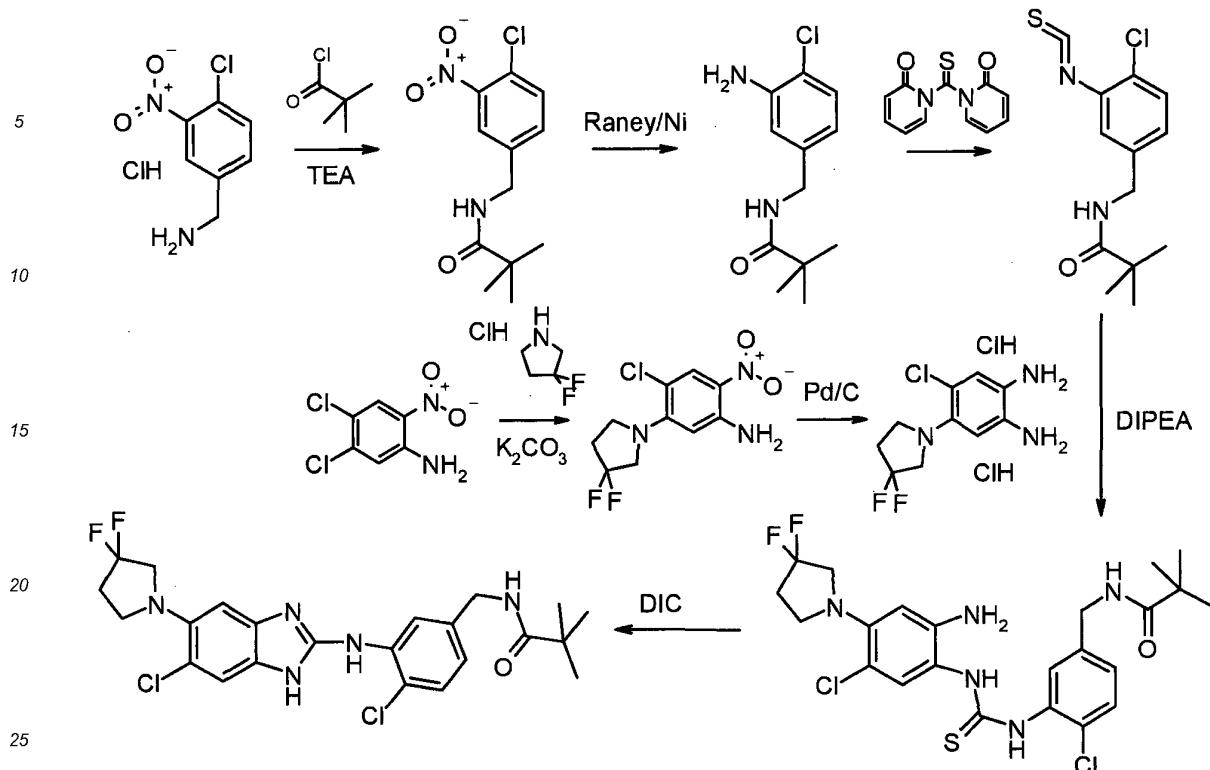
[0207] TBTU (106 mg, 0.3 mmol) followed by TEA (126 μ L, 0.9 mmol) were added to 2-amino-3,3,3-trifluoro-2-methylpropanoic acid (57 mg, 0.4 mmol) in DMF (2 mL). After 5 min at rt a mixture of 4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzylamine (142 mg, 0.3 mmol) and DMF (2 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was purified by chromatography to give the title compound.

Yield: 104 mg (57%). HPLC-method D: R_f = 2.77 min. MS m/z: 611 [M+H]⁺.

Example 2

50 N-{4-Chloro-3-[6-chloro-5-(3,3-difluoropyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0208]



(a) N-(4-Chloro-3-nitrobenzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0209] TEA (8.00 mL, 57.5 mmol) followed by pivaloyl chloride (2.80 mL, 22.8 mmol) in THF (25 mL) were added to 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzylamine hydrochloride (5.00 g, 22.4 mmol) in THF (100 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with THF and stirred at rt for 1.5 h. The mixture was filtered and washed. The filtrate was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 5.92 g (98%). HPLC-method A: $R_f = 1.911$ min. MS m/z: 271 [M+H]⁺.

(b) N-(3-Amino-4-chlorobenzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0210] A mixture of N-(4-chloro-3-nitrobenzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (5.92 g, 21.9 mmol), THF (150 mL) and Ra-Ni (1.50 g) was stirred for 2 days at RT under a hydrogen atmosphere (3.0 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the mixture was concentrated. The crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.
Yield: 4.31 g (82%). R_f(TLC): 0.68 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 9:1). MS m/z: 241 [M+H]⁺.

(b) 1-(1-Chloro-3-methoxybutylbenzyl)-E,E-dimethyl-propionamide

[621] 1,1'-miocarbonyldi-2-pyridone (2.12 g, 9.1 mmol) was added to a mixture of N-(3-amino-4-chlorobenzyl)-2-dimethyl-propionamide (2.00 g, 8.3 mmol) and DCM (60 mL) and stirred at rt for 1.5 h. The mixture was filtered over silica gel. The organic layer was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

(d) 4-Chloro-5-(3,3-difluoropyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline

were added to 4,5-dichloro-2-nitroaniline (3.00 g, 14.5 mmol) in DMF (60 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 130°C over the weekend. After cooling the reaction mixture was poured into ice-water and extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed with water, dried, concentrated and the crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 1.73 g (31%). R_f (TLC): 0.33 (silica gel, PE:EtOAc 7:3). MS m/z: 278 [M+H]⁺.

(e) 4-Chloro-5-(3,3-difluoropyrrolidin-1-yl)benzene-1,2-diamine dihydrochloride

[0213] A mixture of 4-chloro-5-(3,3-difluoropyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline (300 mg, 1.1 mmol), THF (10 mL) and Pd/C (20 mg) was stirred for 1.5 days at RT under a hydrogen atmosphere (3.0 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration.

To the filtrate was added 4 M HCl in dioxane (10 mL). The mixture was concentrated and used in the next step without further purification.

Yield: 340 mg (98%). MS m/z: 248 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method A: R_t = 1.40 min

(f) N-{4-Chloro-3-[2-amino-5-chloro-4-(3,3-difluoropyrrolidin-1-yl)phenyl]thioureido}-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

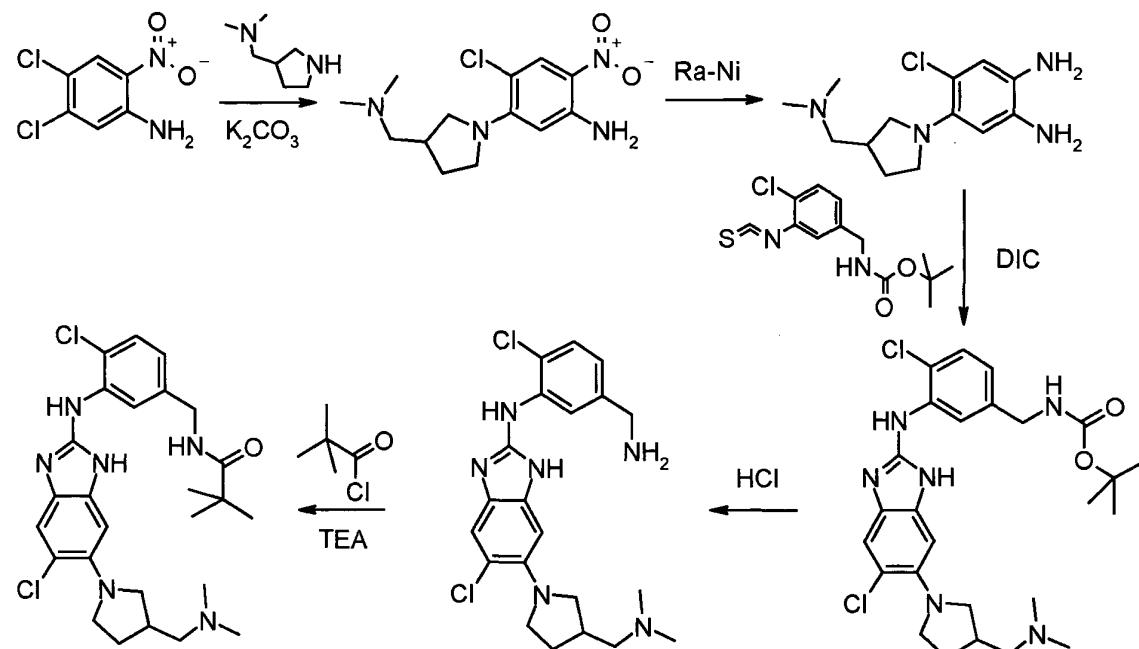
[0214] 4-Chloro-5-(3,3-difluoropyrrolidin-1-yl)benzene-1,2-diamine dihydrochloride (340 mg, 1.1 mmol) was added to N-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (300 mg, 1.1 mmol) in MeCN (10 mL) and stirred at rt overnight. After addition of DIPEA (0.41 μL, 2.3 mmol) the reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 4.5 h. The mixture was concentrated. The crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 140 mg (25%). R_f(TLC): 0.47 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 9:1).

(g) N-{4-Chloro-3-[6-chloro-5-(3,3-difluoropyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0215] DIC (50 μL, 0.3 mmol) was added to a mixture of N-{4-chloro-3-[2-amino-5-chloro-4-(3,3-difluoropyrrolidin-1-yl)phenyl]thioureido}-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (140 mg, 0.3 mmol) and MeCN (4 mL). After 1.5 h at 60°C the reaction mixture was allowed to cool and was concentrated. The crude was purified by chromatography to give the title compound.

Yield: 22 mg (17%). R_f(TLC): 0.33 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 9:1). MS m/z: 496 [M+H]⁺.

Example 3N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide(a) 4-Chloro-5-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline

[0217] Potassium carbonate (500 mg, 3.6 mmol) was added to a mixture of 3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidine (450

mg, 3.5 mmol) and 4,5-dichloro-2-nitroaniline (500 mg, 2.4 mmol) in DMSO (5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C overnight, diluted with EtOAc and washed with water and brine. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated.

Yield: 630 mg (87%). R_f(TLC): 0.15 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). HPLC-method B: R_t= 1.28 min. MS m/z: 299 [M+H]⁺.

5

(b) 4-Chloro-5-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-benzene-1,2-diamine

[0218] A mixture of 4-chloro-5-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline (630 mg, 2.1 mmol), EtOAc (20 mL) and Ra-Ni (150 mg) was stirred for 2 days at rt under a hydrogen atmosphere (3.0 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated. The crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound. Yield: 480 mg (85%). R_f(TLC): 0.50 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 80:20:2). HPLC-method E: R_t= 0.11 min. MS m/z: 269 [M+H]⁺.

10

(c) N-[4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

15

[0219] (4-Chloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (111 mg, 0.4 mmol) was added to 4-chloro-5-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-benzene-1,2-diamine (100 mg, 0.4 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). The mixture was stirred at rt overnight, DIC (62.4 μL, 0.4 mmol) was added and stirring was continued at 80°C for 3 h. The mixture was concentrated and the crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

20

Yield: 150 mg (76%). R_f(TLC): 0.30 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 90:10:1). HPLC-method F: R_t= 1.01 min. MS m/z: 533 [M+H]⁺.

25

(d) 4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine

[0220] 6 M aq. HCl-solution (1.0 ml) was added to N-[4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (130 mg, 0.2 mmol) in THF (2 mL) and stirred at 50°C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

30

Yield: 160 mg. R_f(TLC): 0.35 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 80:20:2). HPLC-method E: R_t= 0.20 min. MS m/z: 433 [M+H]⁺.

(e) N-[4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

35

[0221] Pivaloyl chloride (10 μL, 0.1 mmol) was added to a mixture of 4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(3-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine (60 mg) and TEA (150 μL, 1.1 mmol) in THF (5 mL) and stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc and washed with sat.aq. NaHCO₃. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated. The crude was purified by chromatography to give the title compound.

40

Yield: 30 mg (56%). R_f(TLC): 0.85 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 80:20:2). HPLC-method E: R_t= 0.45 min. MS m/z: 517 [M+H]⁺.

Example 4

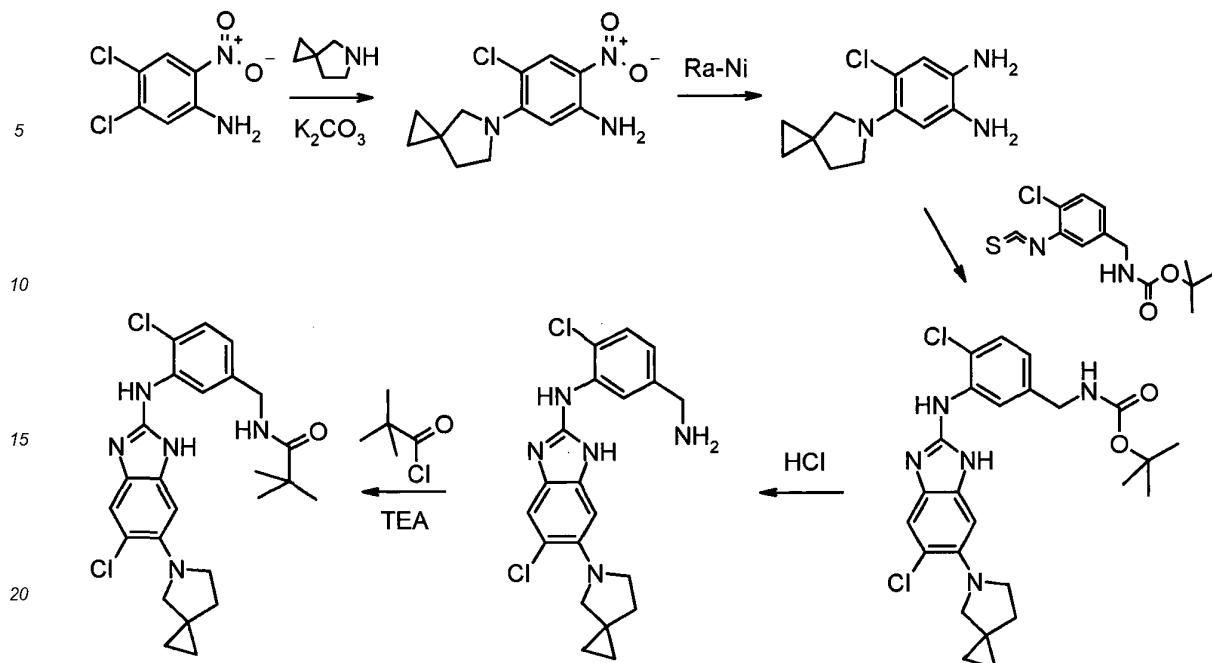
N-[3-[6-(5-Aza-spiro[2.4]hept-5-yl)-5-chloro-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-4-chloro-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

45

[0222]

50

55



(a) 5-(5-Aza-spiro[2.4]hept-5-yl)-4-chloro-2-nitro-phenylamine

[0223] The sub-title compound was prepared from 4,5-dichloro-2-nitroaniline (470 mg, 2.3 mmol), 5-aza-spiro[2.4]heptane (320 mg, 3.3 mmol) and potassium carbonate (470 mg, 3.4 mmol) in DMSO (5 mL) in analogy to example 3, step (a). Yield: 550 mg (91%). R_f(TLC): 0.85 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 99:1). HPLC-method F: R_f = 1.01 min. MS m/z: 533 [2M+H]⁺.

(b) 4-(5-Aza-spiro[2.4]hept-5-yl)-5-chloro-benzene-1,2-diamine

[0224] A mixture of 5-(5-aza-spiro[2.4]hept-5-yl)-4-chloro-2-nitro-phenylamine (550 mg, 2.1 mmol), EtOAc (20 mL) and Ra-Ni (150 mg) was stirred for 21 h at RT under a hydrogen atmosphere (3 bar). After addition of further catalyst the hydrogenation was continued at rt for 7 h. The catalyst was removed by filtration. The filtrate was acidified with 1.25 M HCl in EtOH (6 mL) and concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

(-)-[2,2'-((5-Aza-azido- β -D-ribofuranosyl)oxy)]-5-aminonon-1-yl amine-1,4-ribonucleoside-2'-carboxylic acid tetra-butyl ester

[0225] TEA (130 μ L, 0.9 mmol) followed by 4-(5-aza-spiro[2.4]hept-5-yl)-5-chloro-benzene-1,2-diamine (80 mg) were added to (4-chloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (example 1, step(c), 69 mg, 0.2 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at rt overnight, then concentrated and purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

yield: 60 mg (52%). R_f (TLC): 0.40 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). HPLC method E: R_t = 1.25 min. MS m/z : 502 [M+H]⁺

(d) 3-[6-(5-Azo-spiro[3.4]hept-5-yl)-5-chloro-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-4-chloro-benzylamine.

[0226] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to example 3, step(d) from {3-[6-(5-azaspiro[2.4]hept-5-yl)-5-chloro-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-4-chloro-benzyl}-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (50 mg, 0.1 mmol) and 6 M aq. HCl (0.10 mL) in THF (2 mL).

Yield: 60 mg. R_f(TLC): 0.25 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₃:OH 90:10:1)

(e) N-[3-[6-(5-Aza-spiro[2.4]hept-5-yl)-5-chloro-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-4-chlorobenzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

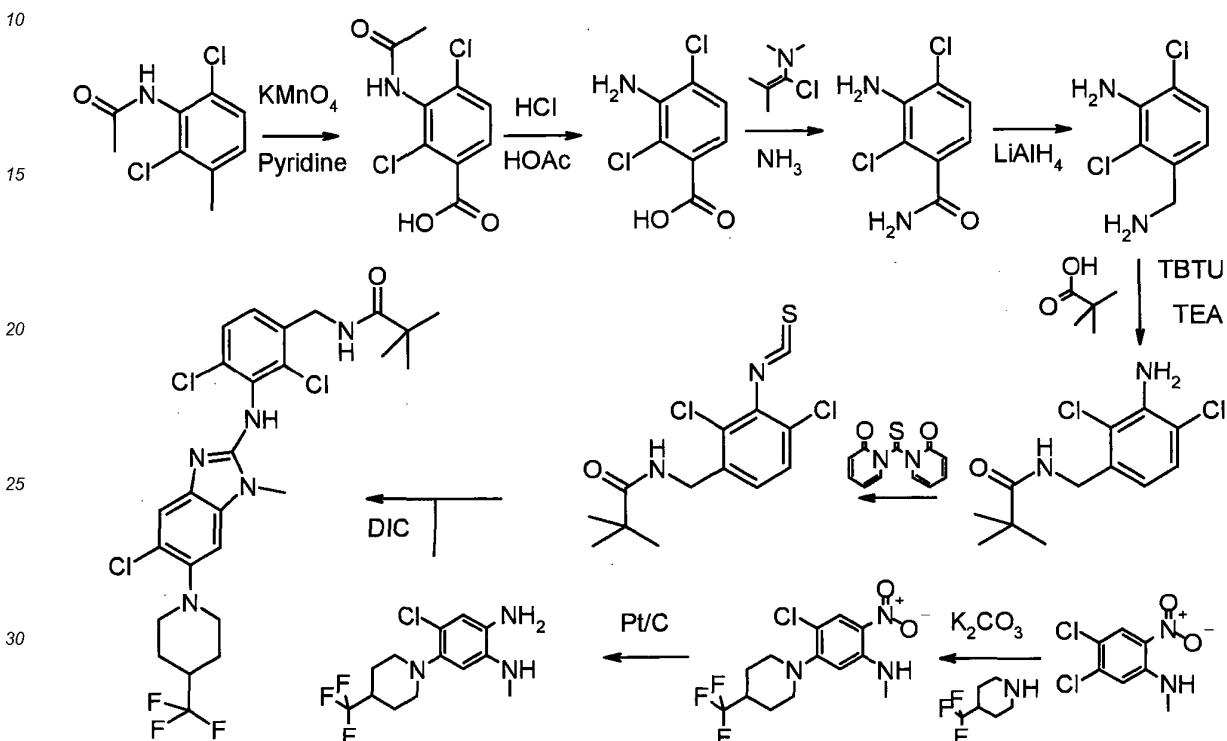
[0227] The sub-title compound was prepared from 3-[6-(5-aza-spiro[2.4]hept-5-yl)-5-chloro-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-4-chloro-benzylamine (60 mg, 0.1), pivaloyl chloride (20 μ L, 0.1 mmol) and TEA (160 μ L, 1.1 mmol) in THF (5 mL) in analogy to example 3, step (a).

Yield: 40 mg. R_f (TLC): 0.80 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 90:10:1). HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.36 min. MS m/z: 486 [M+H]⁺.

Example 5

5 N-[2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0228]



35 (a) 3-Acetylamo-2,4-dichloro-benzoic acid

[0229] Water (110 mL) was added to *N*-(2,6-dichloro-3-methyl-phenyl)-acetamide (13 g, 59 mmol) in pyridine (30 mL). The mixture was heated to 70°C and KMnO₄ (47 g, 298 mmol) was cautiously added portionwise. After 6 h at reflux the reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of celite and washed with hot water. The filtrate was cooled to rt, concentrated and slowly acidified with 6 M aq. HCl solution. The mixture was cooled in an ice bath, filtered and the filtercake was washed with cold water and dried to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 11.6 g (78%). R_f = 0.1 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 9:1). MS m/z: 248 [M+H]⁺.

(b) 3-Amino-2,4-dichloro-benzoic acid

[0230] 3-Acetylamo-2,4-dichloro-benzoic acid (21.0 g, 84.6 mmol) was stirred in 6 M aq. HCl-solution (120 mL) and acetic acid (250 mL) at reflux for 24 h. The reaction mixture was cooled, concentrated, diluted with water and concentrated again. The residue was diluted with water, stirred under cooling and filtered. The filtercake was washed and dried to give the sub-title compound.

50 Yield: 16.8 g (96%). MS m/z: 204 [M-H]. HPLC-method C: R_t = 1.46 min.

(c) 3-Amino-2,4-dichloro-benzamide

[0231] (1-Chloro-2-methyl-propenyl)-dimethyl-amine (16.1 mL, 116 mmol) was added to 3-amino-2,4-dichloro-benzoic acid (20.0 g, 97.1 mmol) in THF (320 mL). After 4 h at rt the mixture was added dropwise to conc. NH₃ (320 mL) and stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated, cooled and filtered. The filtercake was dried to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 17.4 g (87%). MS m/z: 205 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method C: R_t = 1.19 min.

(d) 3-Amino-2,4-dichloro-benzylamine

[0232] 3-Amino-2,4-dichloro-benzamide (2.00 g, 9.8 mmol) in THF (45 mL) was added dropwise to LiAlH₄ (1 M in THF, 24.4 mL) in THF (45 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h at rt and 10 h at reflux. Excess LiAlH₄ was carefully destroyed under cooling as described by L.F.Fieser & M. Fieser Vol 1, p 584 Wiley 1967. After 30 min the mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.
Yield: 1.85 g (99%). R_f = 0.12 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). MS m/z: 191 [M+H]⁺.

(e) N-(3-Amino-2,4-dichloro-benzyl)- 2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0233] 3-Amino-2,4-dichloro-benzylamine (2.28 g, 11.9 mmol) was added to a mixture of 2,2-dimethyl-propionic acid chloride (1.47 mL, 11.9 mmol) and TEA (4.14 mL, 29.8 mmol) in THF (90 mL) and it was stirred for 3 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, diluted with EtOAc, washed with 5% aq. NaHCO₃ solution and water, dried with Na₂SO₄ filtered and concentrated to give the sub-title compound.
Yield: 3.1 g (94%). R_f = 0.61 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5).

(f) N-(2,4-Dichloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)- 2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0234] 1,1'-Thiocarbonyldi-2-pyridone (4.87 g, 21 mmol) was added to a mixture of *N*-(3-amino-2,4-dichloro-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (5.50 g, 20 mmol) and dioxane (200 mL) and stirred at rt for 2 h and at reflux for 8 h. The mixture was concentrated, diluted with DCM and filtered over silica gel. The filtrate was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.
Yield: 6.00 g (95%). HPLC-method B: R_t = 1.58 min. MS m/z: 318 [M+H]⁺.

(g) 4-Chloro-N-methyl-2-nitro-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0235] The sub-title compund was prepared from 4,5-dichloro-2-nitro-N-methyl-aniline (820 mg, 3.7 mmol), 4-trifluoromethyl-piperidine (680 mg, 4.5 mmol) and potassium carbonate (770 mg, 5.6 mmol) in DMSO (10 mL) in analogy to example 3, step (a).
Yield: 1.07 g (85%). R_f(TLC): 0.15 (silica gel, PE:EtOAc 9:1). MS m/z: 338 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.70 min

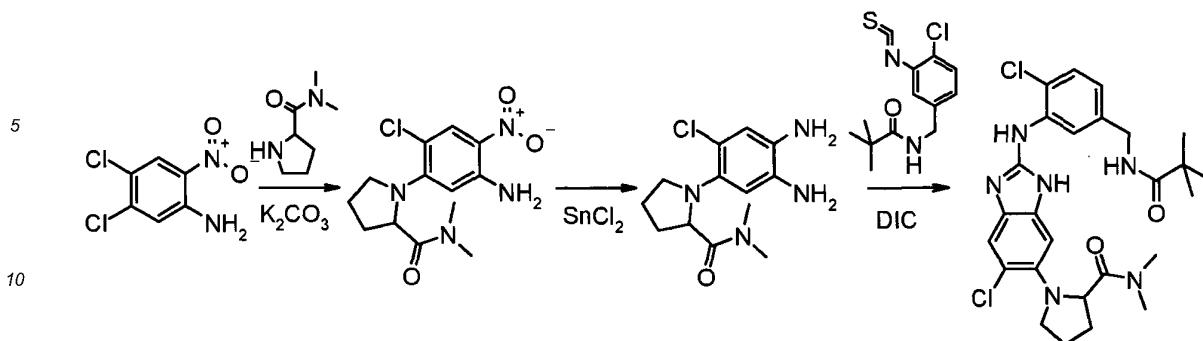
(h) 5-Chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0236] A mixture of 4-chloro-N-methyl-2-nitro-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (1.07 g, 3.2 mmol), THF (20 mL), MeOH (30 mL) and Pt/C (100 mg) was stirred for 6 h at rt under a hydrogen atmosphere (3 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the mixture was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.
Yield: 1.00 g. R_f(TLC): 0.25 (silica gel, DCM). HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.30 min. MS m/z: 308 [M+H]⁺.

(i) N-[2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0237] *N*-(2,4-Dichloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (120 mg, 0.4 mmol) was added to (4-chloro-2-methylamino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (110 mg, 0.4 mmol) in DMF (2 mL). After 3 h at rt DIC (74 µL, 0.5 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture and it was stirred at 80°C for 5.5 h. Additional DIC (40 µL, 0.3 mmol) was added and stirring was continued at 100°C overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the crude was purified by chromatography to give the title compound.
Yield: 140 mg (65%). R_f(TLC): 0.35 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). MS m/z: 590 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.44 min.

Example 6N-[4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-dimethylcarbamoyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide**[0238]**

(a) 4-Chloro-5-(2-dimethylcarbamoyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline

[0239] Potassium carbonate (1.00 g, 7.3 mmol) was added to a mixture of pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid dimethylamide (1.00 g, 7.0 mmol) and 4,5-dichloro-2-nitroaniline (1.00 g, 4.8 mmol) in DMSO (6 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C for 2.5 h, diluted with EtOAc and washed with water and sat.aq. NaCl. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, concentrated and the crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 1.18 g (78%). R_f(TLC): 0.15 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 98:2). MS m/z: 313 [M+H]⁺.

(b) 1-(4,5-Diamino-2-chloro-phenyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid dimethylamide

[0240] Tin dichloride dihydrate (710 mg, 3.1 mmol) was added to 4-chloro-5-(2-dimethylcarbamoyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline (200 mg, 0.6 mmol) in EtOAc (5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 3 h, cooled and poured into sat.aq. NaHCO₃-solution. The mixture was filtered through a pad of celite. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

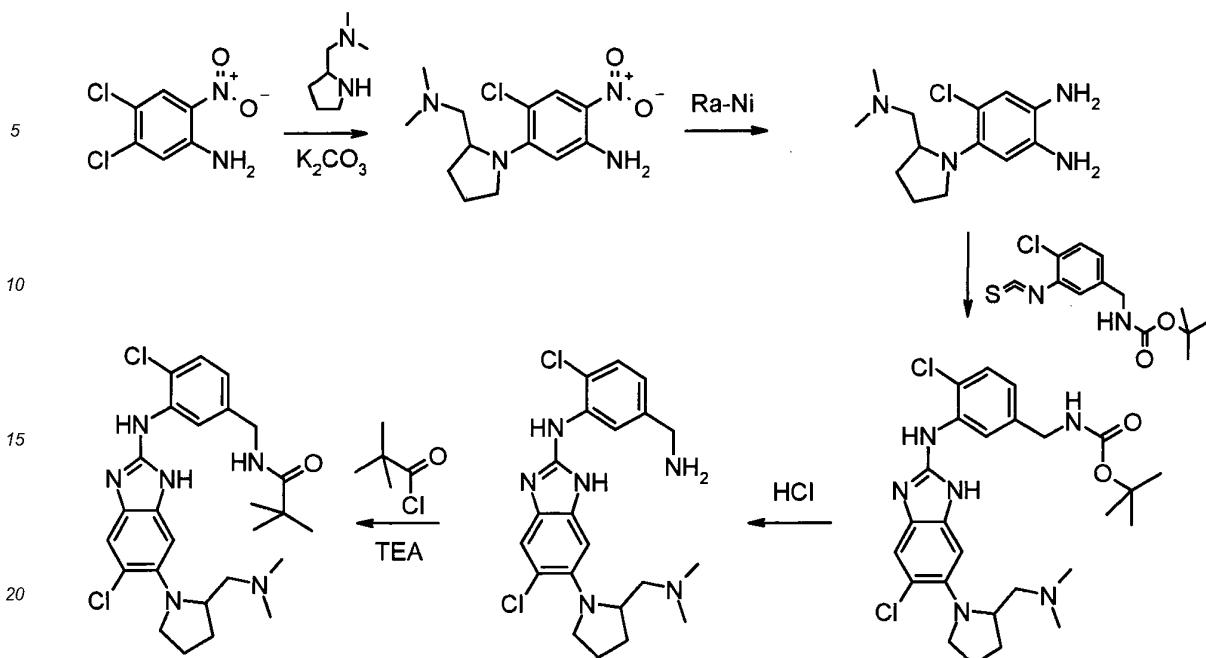
Yield: 75 mg (42%). R_f(TLC): 0.40 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 90:10:1). MS m/z: 283 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method F: R_t= 0.84 min.

(c) N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-dimethylcarbamoyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0241] N-(4-Chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (75 mg, 0.3 mmol), which was prepared as described in example 2 step(c), was added to 1-(4,5-diamino-2-chloro-phenyl)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid dimethylamide (75 mg, 0.3 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) and stirred at rt overnight. DIC (45 µL, 0.3 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture and stirring was continued for 5 h at 80°C. The mixture was concentrated and the crude was purified by chromatography to give the title compound.

Yield: 60 mg (43%). R_f(TLC): 0.20 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). MS m/z: 531 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method F: R_t= 1.09 min.

Example 7N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide**[0242]**

(a) 4-Chloro-5-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline

[0243] The sub-title compound was prepared from 2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidine (270 mg, 2.1 mmol), 4,5-dichloro-2-nitroaniline (300 mg, 1.5 mmol) and potassium carbonate (300 mg, 2.2 mmol) in DMSO (3 mL) in analogy to the method described in example 3 step(a).

Yield: 220 mg (51%). R_f (TLC): 0.05 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 99:1)

(b) 4-Chloro-5-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-benzene-1,2-diamine

[0244] A mixture of 4-chloro-5-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline (150 mg, 0.5 mmol), EtOAc (10 mL) and Ra-Ni (50 mg) was stirred for 19 h at rt under a hydrogen atmosphere (3.0 bar). Further catalyst was added and the hydrogenation was continued for 6 h at 40°C. The catalyst was removed by filtration, the filtrate was acidified with 1.25 M HCl in EtOH and concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 180 mg. R_f (TLC): 0.15 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 90:10:1). MS m/z: 269 [M+H]⁺.

(c) {4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester

[0245] (4-Chloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (68 mg, 0.2 mmol) followed by TEA (160 μ L, 1.2 mmol) were added to 4-chloro-5-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-benzene-1,2-diamine (95 mg) in DMF (3 mL). The mixture was stirred at rt for 4 h and then purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 20 mg (16%). R_f (TLC): 0.30 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 90:10:1). HPLC-method F: R_t = 1.01 min. MS m/z: 533 [M+H]⁺.

(d) 4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine

[0246] The sub-title compound was prepared from {4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester (20 mg, 0.04 mmol) and 6 M aq. HCl-solution (1.0 ml) in THF (2 mL) in analogy to example 3 step(d).

Yield: 30 mg R_f (TLC): 0.40 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 80:20:2).

(e) N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-dimethylaminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0247] The title compound was prepared analogously to example 3 step(e) from 4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-dimethyl-

aminomethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine (30 mg), pivaloyl chloride (10 μ L, 0.06 mmol) and TEA (70 μ L, 0.54 mmol) in THF (2 mL).

Yield: 20 mg (75%). R_f (TLC): 0.90 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 80:20:2). HPLC-method E: R_t = 1.42 min. MS m/z: 517 [M+H]⁺.

5

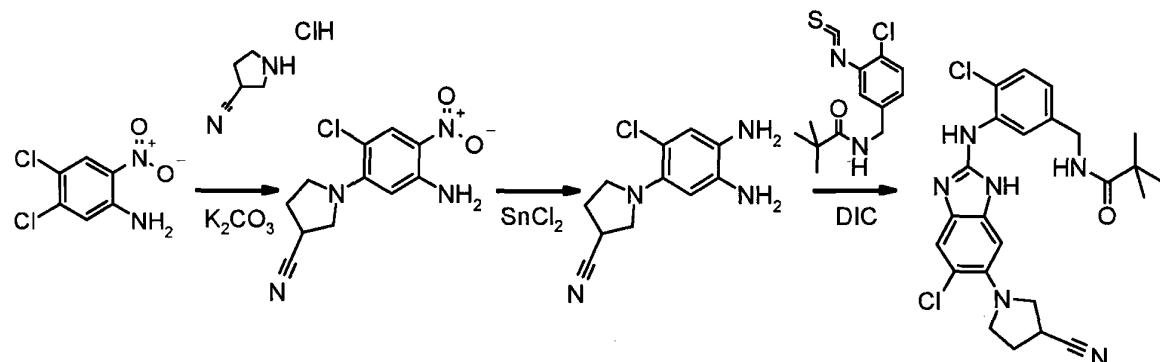
Example 8

N-[4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(3-cyano-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

10

[0248]

15



20

(a) 1-(5-Amino-2-chloro-4-nitro-phenyl)-pyrrolidine-3-carbonitrile

[0249] Potassium carbonate (2.93 g, 21.3 mmol) was added to a mixture of pyrrolidine-3-carbonitrile hydrochloride (1.41 g, 10.6 mmol) and 4,5-dichloro-2-nitroaniline (2.00 g, 9.7 mmol) in DMF (8 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C overnight, diluted with EtOAc and washed with water and brine. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, concentrated and the crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

30

Yield: 1.18 g (78%). R_f (TLC): 0.25 (silica gel, DCM). MS m/z: 267 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.33 min.

(b) 1-(4,5-Diamino-2-chloro-phenyl)-pyrrolidine-3-carbonitrile

35

[0250] Tin dichloride dihydrate (410 mg, 1.8 mmol) was added to 1-(5-amino-2-chloro-4-nitro-phenyl)-pyrrolidine-3-carbonitrile (100 mg, 0.4 mmol) in EtOAc (5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 1.5 h, cooled, diluted with EtOAc and water and basified with conc. ammonia. The mixture was filtered through a pad of celite. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

40

Yield: 75 mg (42%). R_f (TLC): 0.40 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH:NH₄OH 90:10:1). MS m/z: 283 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method F: R_t = 0.84 min.

(c) N-[4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(3-cyano-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

45

[0251] The title compound was prepared from N-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (66 mg, 0.2 mmol), 1-(4,5-diamino-2-chloro-phenyl)-pyrrolidine-3-carbonitrile (55 mg, 0.2 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) and DIC (39 μ L, 0.2 mmol) in analogy to example 6 step(c).

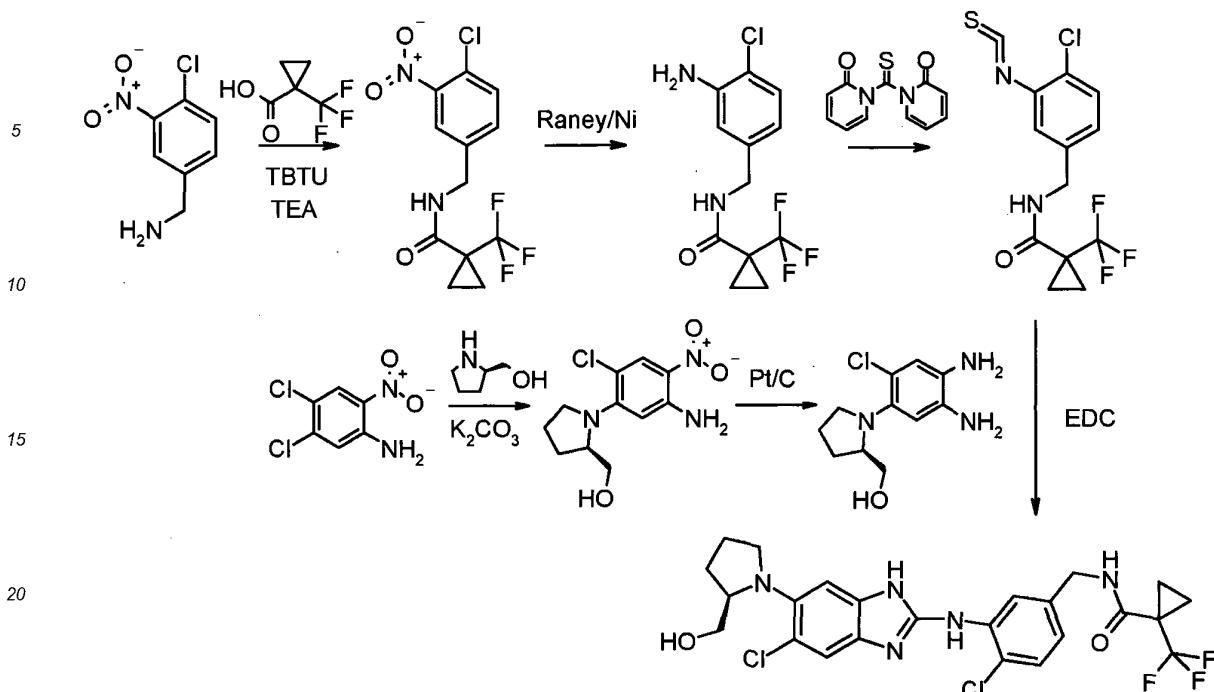
Yield: 50 mg (44%). R_f (TLC): 0.35 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). MS m/z: 485 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.22 min.

50

(R)-N-[4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

55

[0252]

25 (a) N-(4-Chloro-3-nitro-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0253] TBTU (0.44 g, 1.4 mmol) and TEA (0.43 mL, 3.1 mmol) were added to 1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxylic acid (0.19 g, 1.2 mmol) in THF (5mL). After 10 min at rt 4-chloro-3-nitro-benzylamine (0.23 g, 1.2 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture and stirring was continued overnight. The mixture was concentrated, diluted with EtOAc and washed with sat.aq. NaHCO₃-solution, water and brine. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to give the subtitle compound.

Yield: 340 mg (86%). MS m/z: 321 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method I: R_t= 2.76 min.

35 (b) N-(4-Chloro-3-amino-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0254] A mixture of N-(4-chloro-3-nitro-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide (340 mg, 1.1 mmol), EtOAc (10 mL) and Ra-Ni (30 mg) was stirred at rt under a hydrogen atmosphere (3 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 250 mg (81%). R_f(TLC): 0.50 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). HPLC-method G: R_t= 1.30 min. MS m/z: 293 [M+H]⁺.

40 (c) N-(4-Chloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0255] A mixture of N-(4-chloro-3-amino-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide (100 mg, 0.3 mmol), N,N-diisopropylcarbodiimide (87 mg, 0.4 mmol) and DCM (5 mL) was stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of silica gel and the filtrate was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 95 mg (83%). R_f(TLC): 0.75 (silica gel, CH:EtOAc 1:1). MS m/z: 335 [M+H]⁺.

(d) (R)-1-(5-Amino-2-chloro-4-nitro-phenyl)-2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidine

[0256] (R)-2-Hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidine (202 mg, 2.0 mmol) followed by potassium carbonate (304 mg, 2.2 mmol) were added to a mixture of 4,5-dichloro-2-nitro-phenylamine (414 mg, 2.0 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) and stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with water, acidified with TFA:H₂O 1:1 and filtered. The filtercake was washed with DMF:H₂O 1:1 and dried to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 220 mg (41%). HPLC-method J: R_t= 1.91 min. MS m/z: 272 [M+H]⁺.

55 (e) (R)-1-(4,5-Diamino-2-chloro-phenyl)-2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidine

[0257] The sub-title compound was prepared from (R)-1-(5-amino-2-chloro-4-nitro-phenyl)-2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolid-

ine (220 mg, 0.8 mmol) and Pt/C (50 mg) in MeOH (6 mL) and THF (6 mL) in analogy to example 1 step(f). Yield: 186 mg (95%). HPLC-method C: R_t = 1.22 min. MS m/z: 242 [M+H]⁺.

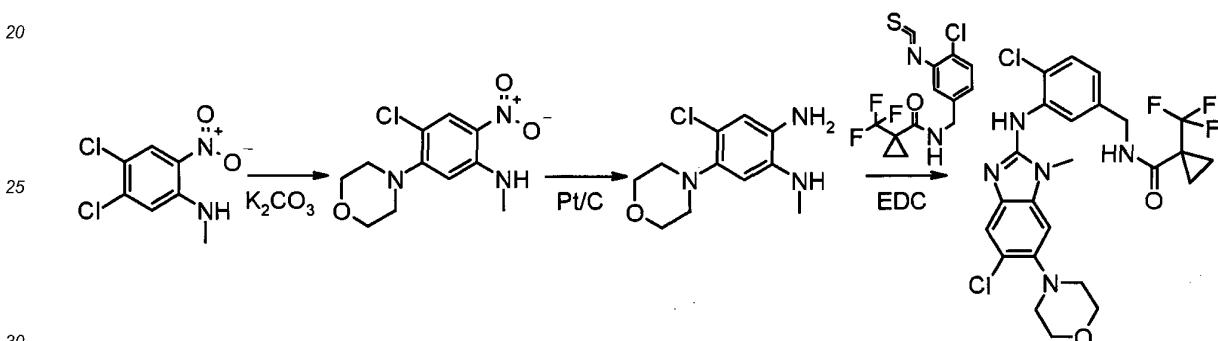
5 (f) *(R*)-*N*-(4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0258] The title compound was prepared from N-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane-carboxamide (85 mg, 0.3 mmol), (*R*)-1-(4,5-diamino-2-chloro-phenyl)-2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidine (62 mg, 0.3 mmol) and EDC (45 μ L, 0.3 mmol) in MeCN (5 mL) in analogy with the method described in example 1 step(g).
10 Yield: 3 mg (2%). HPLC-method J: R_t = 1.56 min. MS m/z: 542 [M+H]⁺.

Example 10:

15 *N*-(4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-morpholin-4-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0259]



(a) *(4-Chloro-5-morpholin-4-yl-2-nitro-N-methyl-aniline*

[0260] Morpholine (174 mg, 2.0 mmol) followed by potassium carbonate (304 mg, 2.2 mmol) were added to a mixture of 4,5-dichloro-N-methyl-2-nitroaniline (442 mg, 2.0 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) and stirred at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was acidified with TFA:H₂O 1:1 and purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.
Yield: 260 mg (48%). HPLC-method J: R_t = 2.18 min. MS m/z: 272 [M+H]⁺.

(b) *5-Chloro-2-methylamino-4-morpholin-4-yl-aniline*

[0261] The sub-title compound was prepared from (4-chloro-5-morpholin-4-yl-2-nitro-N-methyl-aniline (260 mg, 1.0 mmol), THF (6 mL), MeOH (6 mL) and Pt/C (50 mg) in analogy to example 1 step(f).
Yield: 219 mg (95%). HPLC-method C: R_t = 1.57 min. MS m/z: 242 [M+H]⁺.

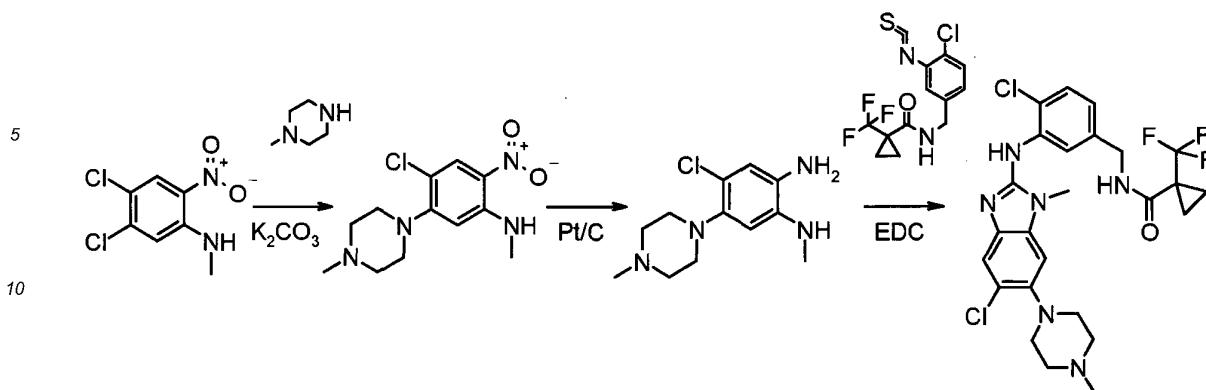
45 (c) *N*-(4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-morpholin-4-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0262] The title compound was prepared from N-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane-carboxamide (111 mg, 0.3 mmol), 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-morpholin-4-yl-aniline (80 mg, 0.3 mmol) and EDC (59 μ L, 0.3 mmol) in MeCN (5 mL) in analogy with method described in example 1 step(g).
Yield: 53 mg (30%). HPLC-method J: R_t = 1.68 min. MS m/z: 542 [M+H]⁺.

Example 11:

55 *N*-(4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0263]



15 (a) 4-Chloro-5-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl)-2-nitro-N-methyl-aniline

[0264] The sub-title compound was prepared from N-methylpiperazine (200 mg, 2.0 mmol), 4,5-dichloro-N-methyl-2-nitroaniline (442 mg, 2.0 mmol) and potassium carbonate (304 mg, 2.2 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) in accordance to example 9 step (d).

20 Yield: 500 mg (88%). HPLC-method J: $R_f = 1.37$ min. MS m/z: 285 [M+H]⁺.

(b) 5-Chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl)-aniline

[0265] The sub-title compound was prepared from 4-chloro-5-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl)-2-nitro-N-methyl-aniline (500 mg, 1.8 mmol), THF (6 mL), MeOH (6 mL) and Pt/C (50 mg) in analogy to example 1 step(f).

Yield: 403 mg (90%). HPLC-method C: $R_f = 1.22$ min. MS m/z: 255 [M+H]⁺.

(c) N-[4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-1-trifluoromethylcyclopropanecarboxamide

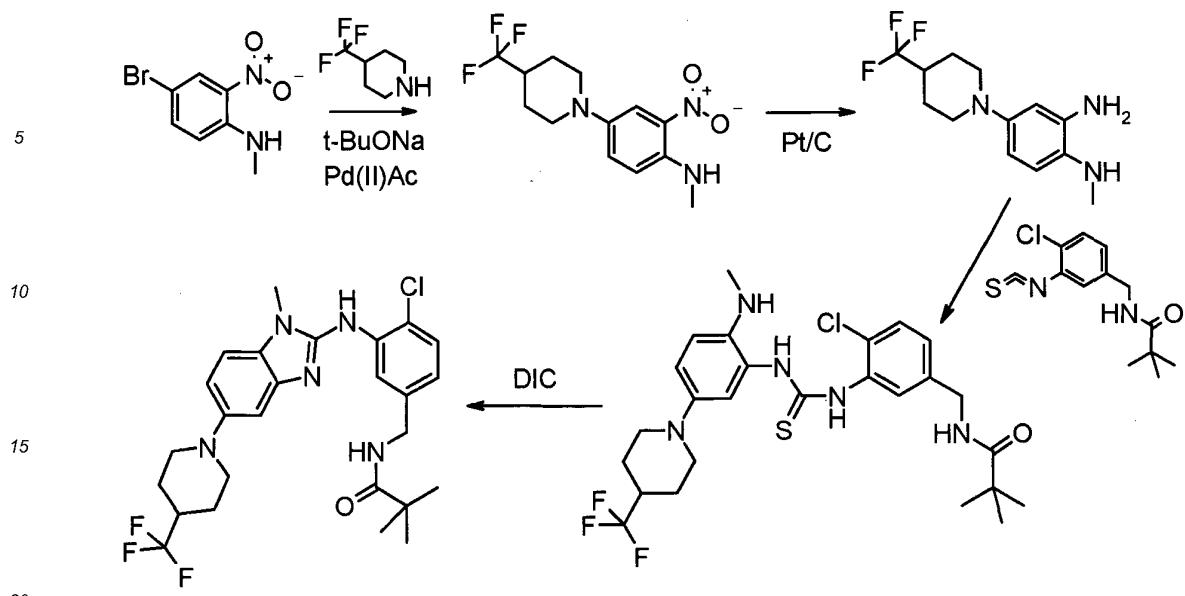
[0266] The title compound was prepared from N-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane-carboxamide (176 mg, 0.5 mmol), 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-methyl-piperazin-1-yl)-aniline (134 mg, 0.5 mmol) and EDC (93 μ L, 0.5 mmol) in MeCN (5 mL) in analogy to example 1 step(g).

Yield: 84 mg. HPLC-method J: $R_f = 1.40$ min. MS m/z: 555 [M+H]⁺.

Example 12

N-[4-Chloro-3-[3-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0267]



(a) N-Methyl-2-nitro-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-aniline

[0268] Under argon sodium tert-butoxide (366 mg, 3.8 mmol) followed by palladium(II) acetate (22 mg, 0.1 mmol) and tri-tert-butylphosphine 10% in toluene (450 μ L, 0.2 mmol) were added to a mixture of 4-bromo-2-nitro-N-methyl-aniline (440 mg, 1.9 mmol) and 4-(trifluoromethyl)piperidine (660 mg, 2.9 mmol) in toluene (7 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 100°C overnight then allowed to cool and was concentrated. The crude was purified by chromatography to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 220 mg (38%). R_f (TLC): 0.56 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 98:2). MS m/z: 304 [M+H]⁺.

(b) 2-Methylamino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0269] A mixture of N-methyl-2-nitro-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-aniline (220 mg, 0.7 mmol), MeOH (7 mL) and Pd/C (30 mg) was stirred for 18 h at rt under a hydrogen atmosphere (3.0 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration, the filtrate was concentrated and directly used in the next step.

(c) N-(4-Chloro-3-{3-[2-methylamino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-phenyl]-thioureido}-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0270] A mixture of 2-methylamino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (90 mg, 0.3 mmol) and N-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (93 mg, 0.3 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was stirred at rt for 4 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and directly used in the next step. Yield: 180 mg (98%). HPLC-method A : R_f = 2.23 min. MS m/z: 556 [M+H]⁺.

(d) N-[4-Chloro-3-[3-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0271] DIC (130 μ L, 0.8 mmol) was added to N-(4-chloro-3-[3-[2-methylamino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-phenyl]-thioureido]-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (180 mg, 0.3 mmol) in MeCN. The reaction mixture was heated at 60°C - 80°C for one week (additional DIC (2.5 ml) was added). The mixture was cooled to rt and concentrated. The residue was treated with MeCN, filtered and washed. The filtercake was diluted with dioxane and HCOOH and lyophilized to give the title compound.

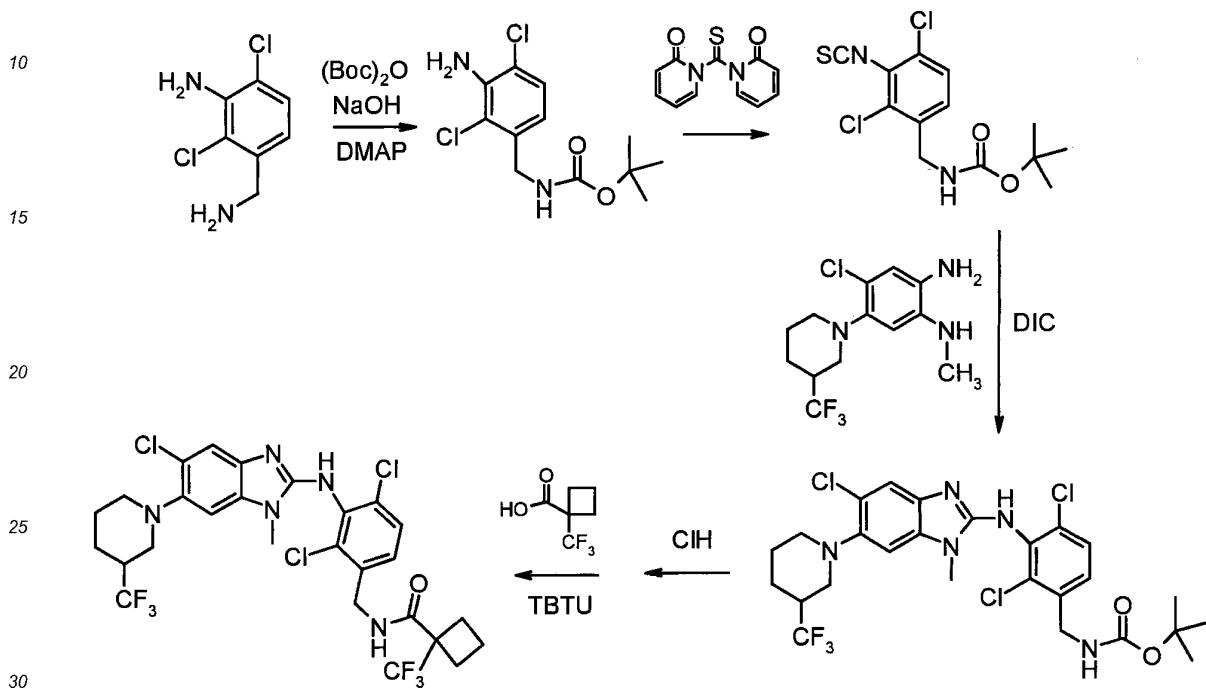
Yield: 33 mg (20%). R_f(TLC): 0.65 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 9:1). MS m/z: 522 [M+H]⁺.

Example 23

N-{2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclobutaneamide

5

[0272]



(a) (3-Amino-2,4-dichloro-benzyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester

[0273] Boc_2O (1.48 g, 6.68 mmol) in 3.3 mL DCM was added at 0°C to a mixture of 3-amino-2,4-dichlorobenzylamine (1.16 g, 6.07 mmol), 6.7 mL DCM and 12.1 mL 1 N NaOH-solution. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 2d and diluted with 5% aq NH₃-solution. The organic phase was separated and the aq. phase was washed 2 x with DCM. The combined organic phase was washed with brine, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated to give the subtitle compound. Yield: 1.71 g (97%). R_f = 0.65 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). MS m/z: 291 [M+H]⁺.

40

b) (2,4-Dichloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester

[0274] 1,1'-Thiocarbonyldi-2-pyridone (0.42 g, 1.8 mmol) was added to a mixture of (3-amino-2,4-dichlorobenzyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (0.50 g, 1.7 mmol) and dioxane (25 mL) and stirred at rt for 2 h and at reflux for 2 d. The mixture was concentrated, diluted with DCM and filtered over silica gel. The filtrate was concentrated to give the subtitle compound.

45

Yield: 0.49 g (86%). R_f = 0.83 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5).

(c) N-{2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester

50

[0275] The title compound was prepared from (2,4-dichloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (5.47g, 16.4 mmol), 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)aniline (5.05g, 16.4 mmol) and DIC 4.48 ml, 29 mmol) in MeCN in analogy to example 6 step(c). HPLC-method A: R_t= 2.37 min. MS m/z: 606 [M+H]⁺.

55

(d) 2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]benzylamine

[0276] 4 M HCl in dioxane (38 mL) was added to N-{2,4-dichloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-

1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (5.4 g, 8.9 mmol) in dioxane (300 mL) and stirred at r.t. overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was diluted with aq. NaHCO₃-solution. The aq. phase was extracted with EtOAc, the organic phase was dried with Na₂SO₄ and concentrated.

Yield: 3.65 g (81%). HPLC-method A: R_t = 1.33 min. MS m/z: 506 [M+H]⁺.

5

(e) *N*-{2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclobutanecarboxamide

[0277] The title compound was prepared from TBTU (35 mg, 0.11 mmol), TEA (50 µL, 0.36 mmol), 1-trifluoromethyl-cyclobutanecarboxylic acid (57 mg, 0.4 mmol) and 2,4-dichloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(3-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]benzylamine (45.3 mg, 0.1 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) analogy to example 1 step(i). Yield: 36 mg (55%). HPLC-method Q: R_t = 1.73 min. MS m/z: 656 [M+H]⁺.

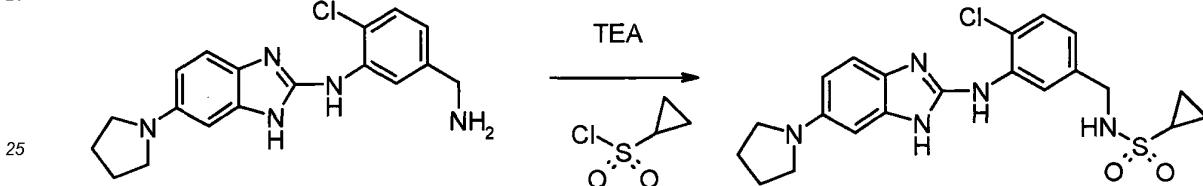
Example 30

15

N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-(pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}cyclopropylsulfonamide

[0278]

20



25

[0279] A TEA solution (0.35 M in DMF, 0.1 mL) was added to a 4-Chloro-3-[5-(pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine solution (0.12 M in MeCN, 0.1 mL, prepared in analogy to example 4d) followed by a cyclopropylsulfonyl chloride solution (0.12 M in MeCN, 0.1 mL). The mixture was stirred overnight and filtered through basic alumina. The solids were washed with DMF/MeOH 9:1 and the combined filtrates were concentrated to give the title compound.

MS m/z: 446 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method L: R_t = 1.46 min.

35

Example 33

N-{2-Fluoro-4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-fluoro-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

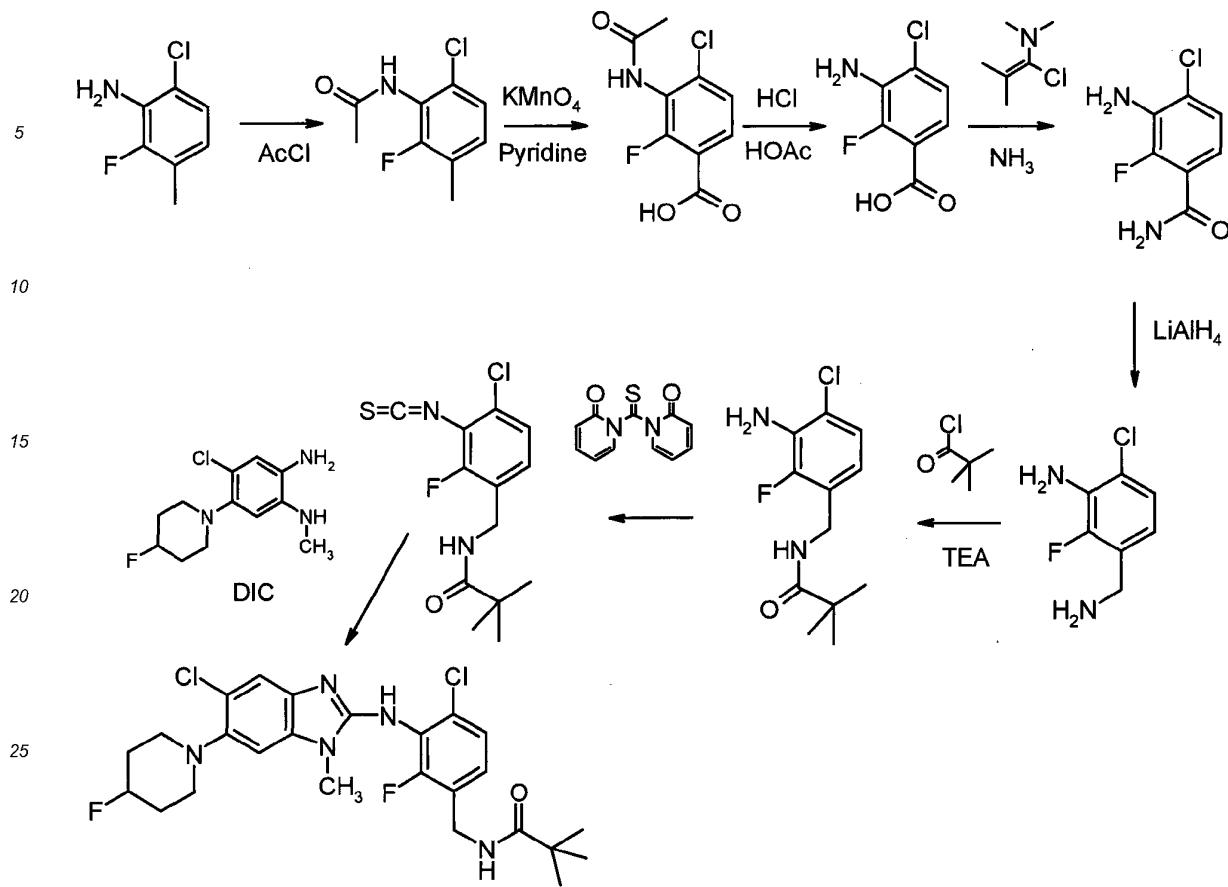
40

[0280]

45

50

55



(a) *N*-(6-Chloro-2-fluoro-3-methyl-phenyl)-acetamide

[0281] Acetylchloride (2.56 mL, 36.0 mmol) was added to a mixture of 6-chloro-2-fluoro-3-methylaniline (5.00 g, 31.3 mmol) and toluene (200 mL), additional toluene (50 mL) was added and the mixture was heated to reflux for 3 h. The reaction mixture was cooled with an ice bath and the formed precipitate was filtered off, washed with cold toluene and dried. Yield: 4.75 g (75%). HPLC-method B: R_f = 1.12 min. MS m/z: 202 [M+H]⁺.

(b) 3-Acetylamino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzoic acid

[0282] The sub-title compound was prepared from *N*-(6-chloro-2-fluoro-3-methyl-phenyl)-acetamide and KMnO₄ in pyridine in analogy to step 5a.

(c) 3-Amino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzoic acid

[0283] The sub-title compound was prepared from 3-acetylamino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzoic acid and 6 M HCl-solution in analogy to step 5b.
Yield: 96%. HPLC R_f = 1.10 min (method B). MS m/z: 190 [M+H]⁺.

50 (d) 3-Amino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzamide

[0284] The sub-title compound was prepared from 3-amino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzoic acid, (1-chloro-2-methyl-propenyl)-dimethyl-amine and conc. NH₃ in analogy to step 5c.
Yield: 69%. R_f = 0.3 (silica gel, PE:EtOAc 4:6). HPLC-method B: R_t = 0.97 min. MS m/z: 189 [M+H]⁺.

(e) 3-Amino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzylamine

[0285] The crude sub-title compound was prepared from 3-amino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzamide and LiAlH₄ in analogy

to step 5d.

HPLC-method B: $R_f = 0.37$ min. MS m/z: 175 [M+H]⁺.

(f) N-(3-Amino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzyl)- 2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0286] The sub-title compound is prepared from crude 3-amino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzylamine, 2,2-dimethyl-propionic acid chloride and TEA in analogy to example 5e.

Yield: 36% (side product in 29%: *N*-(3-Amino-4-chloro-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide). $R_f = 0.6$ (silica gel, PE:EtOAc 6:4). HPLC-method B: $R_f = 1.27$ min. MS m/z: 259 [M+H]⁺.

(g) N-(4-Chloro-2-fluoro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)- 2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0287] The title compound is prepared from *N*-(3-amino-4-chloro-2-fluoro-benzyl)- 2,2-dimethyl-propionamide, 1,1'-thiocarbonyldi-2-pyridone in analogy to step 5f.

(h) N-[2-Fluoro-4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-fluoropiperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

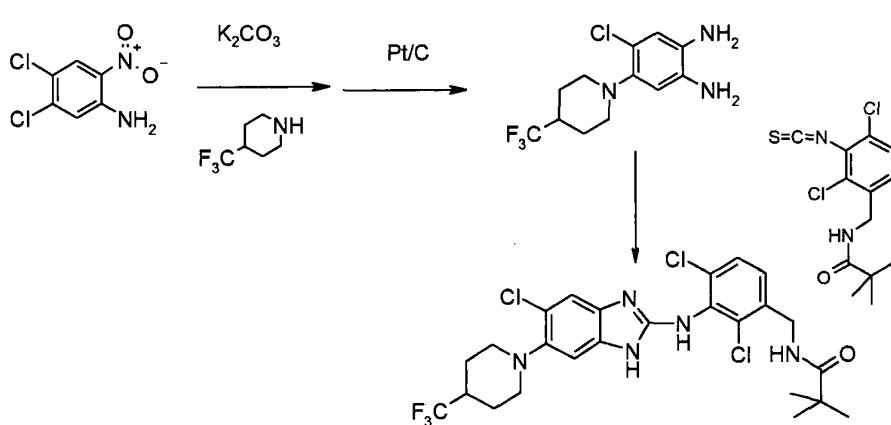
[0288] The title compound is prepared from *N*-(4-chloro-2-fluoro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)- 2,2-dimethyl-propionamide and 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-fluoropiperidin-1-yl)-aniline and DIC in analogy to example 5i.

Yield: 49%. $R_f = 0.5$ (silica gel, PE:EtOAc 1:1). HPLC-method G: $R_f = 1.40$ min. MS m/z: 524 [M+H]⁺.

Example 40

N-(2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0289]



(a) 4-Chloro- 2-nitro-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0290] The sub-title compound was prepared from 4,5-dichloro-2-nitro-aniline (500 mg, 2.4 mmol), 4-trifluoromethyl-piperidine hydrochloride (550 mg, 2.9 mmol) and K_2CO_3 (830 mg, 6.0 mmol) in DMSO (10 mL) in analogy to example 3, step (a).

MS m/z: 324 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method G: $R_f = 1.59$ min

(b) 4-Chloro-2-amino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0291] A mixture of 4-chloro-2-nitro-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (0.63 g, 1.9 mmol), THF (10 mL), MeOH (20 mL) and 50% -Pt-on-carbon (60 mg) was stirred for 22 h at rt under a hydrogen atmosphere (3 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the mixture was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

HPLC-method G: $R_f = 1.22$ min. MS m/z: 294 [M+H]⁺.

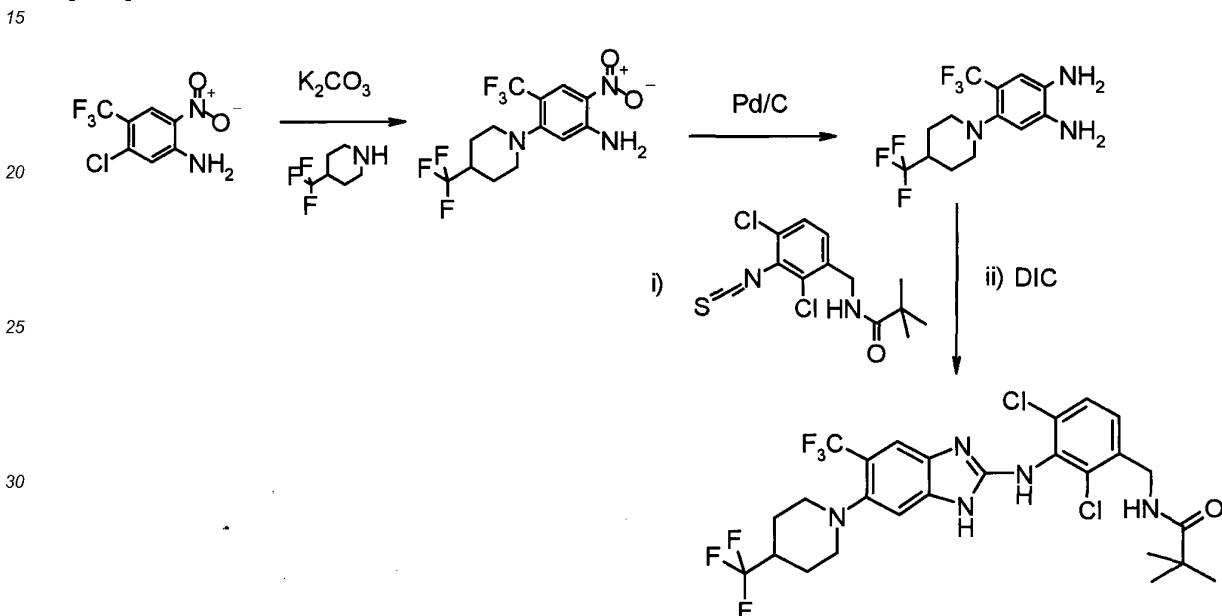
(c) *N*{2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0292] The title compound was prepared from *N*-(2,4-dichloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (108 mg, 0.34 mmol), 4-chloro-2-amino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (100 mg, 0.34 mmol), DIC (56 µL) in DMF (2 mL) in analogy to example 5, step (i). R_f (TLC): 0.35 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). MS m/z: 576 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.48 min.

Example 61

N{2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-trifluoromethyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0293]



(a) 4-Trifluoromethyl- 2-nitro-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0294] The sub-title compound was prepared from 4-trifluoromethyl-5-chloro-2-nitro-aniline (100 mg, 0.42 mmol), 4-trifluoromethyl-piperidine hydrochloride (394 mg, 2.1 mmol) and K_2CO_3 (600 mg, 4.4 mmol) in NMP (2 mL) in analogy to example 3, step (a). MS m/z: 356 [M+H]⁺. R_f (TLC): 0.8 (silica gel, DCM). HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.62 min

(b) 4-Trifluoromethyl-2-amino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0295] A mixture of 4-trifluoromethyl-2-nitro-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (0.14 g, 0.39 mmol), THF (10 mL) and Pd/C (15 mg) was stirred for 2 d at rt under a hydrogen atmosphere (3 bar). The catalyst was filtered off and the mixture was concentrated. MS m/z: 328 [M+H]⁺. R_f (TLC): 0.2 (silica gel, DCM). HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.42 min.

(c) *N*{2,4-Dichloro-3-[5-trifluoromethyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

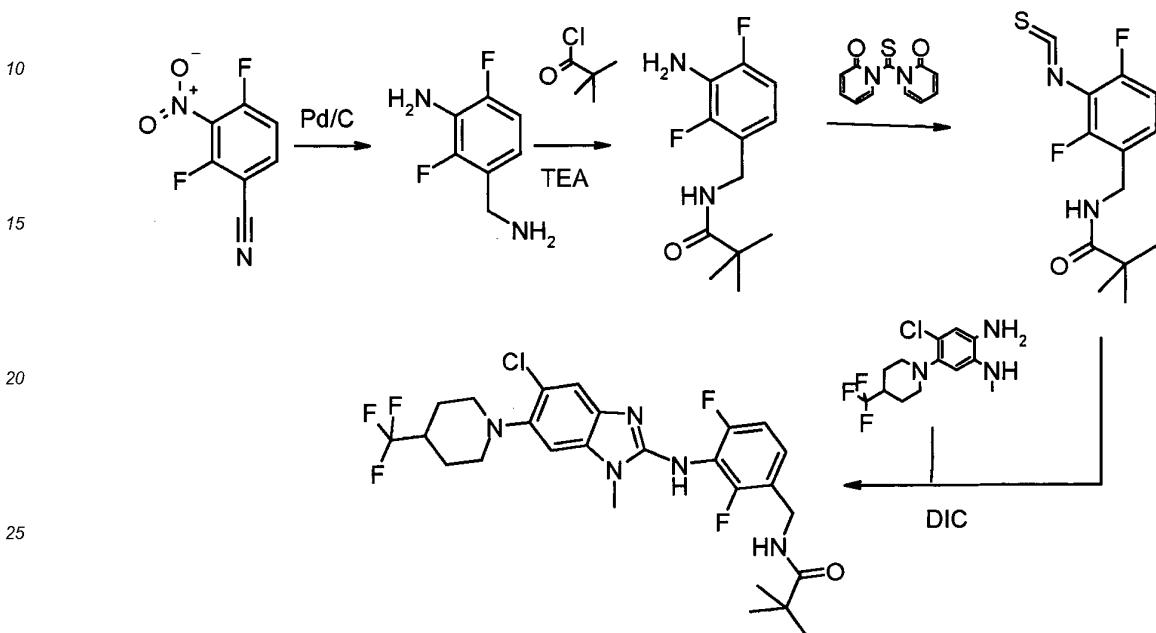
[0296] The compound was prepared from *N*-(2,4-dichloro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (87 mg, 0.28 mmol), 4-trifluoromethyl-2-amino-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (90 mg, 0.28 mmol), DIC (43 µL) in DMF (2 mL) in analogy to example 5, step (i). Yield: 24%. R_f (TLC): 0.30 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). MS m/z: 610 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.52 min.

Example 70

N-{2,4-Difluoro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

5

[0297]



30 (a) 3-Amino-2,4-difluoro-benzylamine

[0298] A mixture of 3-Nitro-2,4-difluoro-benzonitrile (0.50 g, 2.7 mmol), MeOH (25 ml), 37% HCl (1.5 ml) and Pd/C (200 mg) was stirred for 13 h at rt under a hydrogen atmosphere (3 bar). The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated.

35 Yield: 0.58 g. MS m/z: 159 [M+H]⁺.

(b) N-(3-Amino-2,4-difluoro-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0299] TEA (1.92 mL, 13.8 mmol) was added to a mixture of 3-amino-2,4-difluoro-benzylamine (0.58 g, 2.5 mmol) in THF (40 ml) followed by pivaloyl chloride (0.31 mL, 2.5 mmol) and it was stirred overnight. The mixture was diluted with EtOAc, washed successively with satd. NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic phase was dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated.

Yield: 0.57 g. HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.20 min. MS m/z: 243 [M+H]⁺.

45 (c) N-(2,4-Difluoro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0300] 1,1'-Thiocarbonyldi-2-pyridone (546 mg, 2.35 mmol) was added to a mixture of *N*-(3-amino-2,4-difluoro-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (570 mg, 2.35 mmol) and dioxane (20 mL) and stirred at reflux overnight. The mixture was concentrated, diluted with DCM and filtered over silica gel. The filtrate was concentrated to give the sub-title compound.

50 Yield: 440 mg R_f(TLC): 0.8 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5).

(d) N-{2,4-Difluoro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0301] The compound was prepared in analogy to example 5 (i) from *N*-(2,4-difluoro-3-isothiocyanato-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (68 mg, 0.24 mmol), 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (100 mg, 0.24 mmol), DIC (40 μL, 0.25 mmol) in DMF.

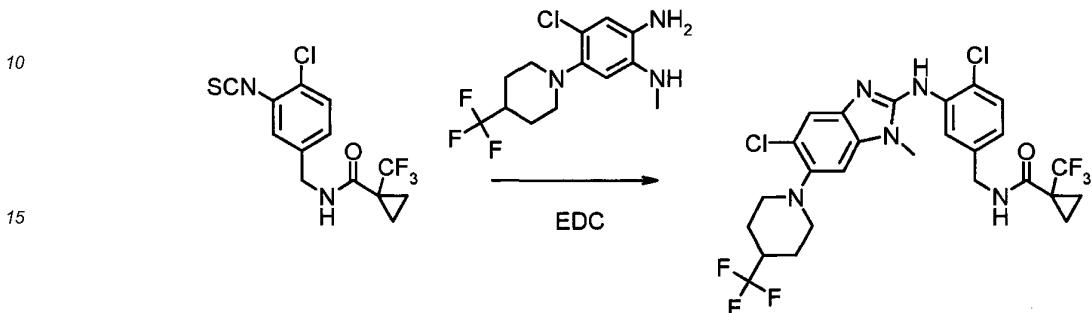
Yield: 50 mg (37%). R_f(TLC): 0.4 (silica gel, DCM:EtOH 95:5). MS m/z: 558 [M+H]⁺. HPLC-method G: R_t = 1.47 min.

Example 71

N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropaneamide

5

[0302]



20 [0303] A mixture of *N*-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide (0.15 g; 0.45 mmol) and 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (0.14 g; 0.45 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was stirred overnight at rt. EDC (0.086 g; 0.45 mmol) was added and the mixture was heated to 90 °C for 1 h. The mixture was poured in water, extracted with DCM and the combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, concentrated and purified by column chromatography.

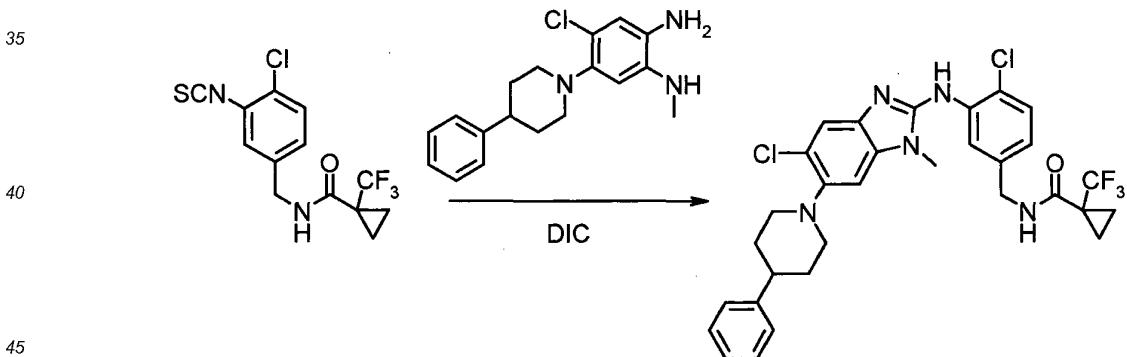
25 Yield: 0.079 g (29%). HPLC-method N: R_t= 13.92 min. MS m/z: 608 [M+H]⁺.

Example 76

N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-phenyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

30

[0304]



35 [0305] A mixture of *N*-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide (200 mg; 0.60 mmol) and 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-phenyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (190 mg; 0.60 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) was stirred overnight at rt. DIC (76 mg; 0.60 mmol) was added and the mixture was heated at 90 °C for 1.5 h. The mixture was poured in water, extracted with EtOAc and the combined organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated and the residue was purified by column chromatography.

40 Yield: 69 mg (19%). HPLC-method O: R_t= 11.40 min. MS m/z: 616 [M+H]⁺.

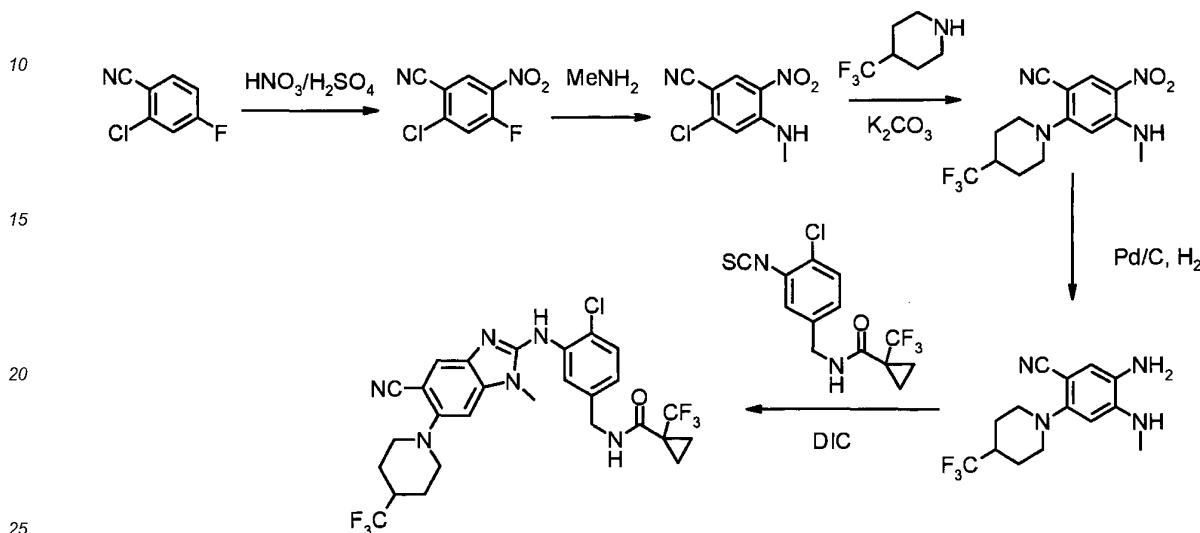
55

Example 82

N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-cyano-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

5

[0306]



(a) 2-Chloro-4-fluoro-5-nitrobenzonitrile

[0307] Fuming HNO₃ (2.9 mL, 64 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 2-chloro-4-fluorobenzonitrile (5.0 g, 32 mmol) in conc. H₂SO₄ (5 mL) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 15 min and at rt for 30 min whereafter it was poured into ice. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with water and dried under vacuum.

Yield: 6.08 g (95%).

(b) 2-Chloro-4-(methylamino)-5-nitrobenzonitrile

[0308] A solution of MeNH₂ in THF (14.9 mL, 2 M, 29.8 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 2-chloro-4-fluoro-5-nitrobenzonitrile (3.0 g, 15 mmol) in THF (100 mL) at -20 °C. The mixture was stirred at -20 °C for 1 h and thereafter concentrated, washed with brine and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was washed with PE to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 3.07 g (97%).

(c) 4-(Methylamino)-5-nitro-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile

[0309] A mixture of 2-chloro-4-(methylamino)-5-nitrobenzonitrile (3.07 g, 14.5 mmol), 4-trifluoromethylpiperidine (3.33 g, 21.7 mmol), K₂CO₃ (5.01 g, 36.2 mmol) and DMF (16 mL) was heated at 60 °C for 6 h under Ar atmosphere. The mixture was poured into aqueous NH₄OH and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. Crystallization from EtOAc/PE gave the sub-title compound.

Yield: 3.65 g (77%).

(d) 5-Amino-4-(methylamino)-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile

[0310] H₂ (1 atm) was passed through a mixture of 4-(methylamino)-5-nitro-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile (204 mg, 0.62 mmol), Pd/C (66 mg, 0.062 mmol), EtOAc (10 mL) and EtOH (10 mL) at rt for 1 h. The mixture was filtered through celite and concentrated. Crystallization from Et₂O/PE gave the sub-title compound.

Yield: 182 mg (98%).

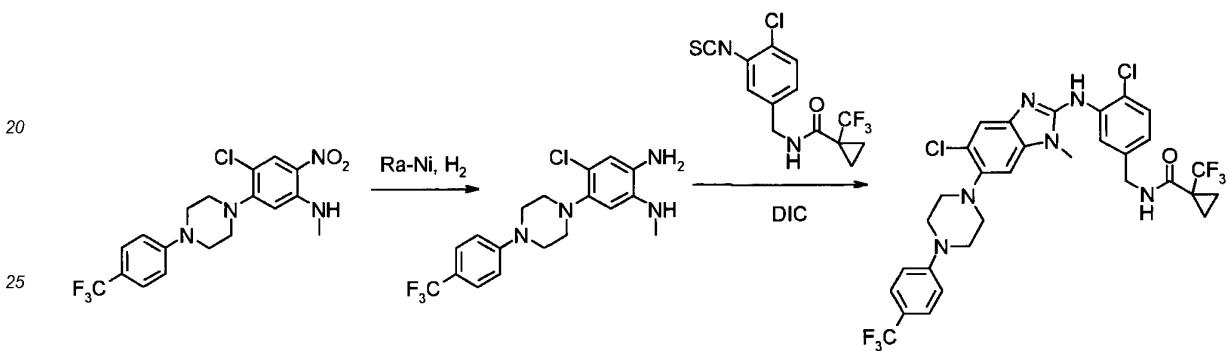
(e) *N*{4-Chloro-3-[5-cyano-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[0311] The title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 76 using 5-amino-4-(methylamino)-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile (179 mg, 0.60 mmol), *N*-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide (200 mg; 0.60 mmol), DIC (76 mg, 0.60 mmol) and DMF (4 mL). Yield: 142 mg (40%). HPLC-method O: R_f = 11.23 min. MS m/z: 599 [M+H]⁺.

Example 83

[0312] *N*{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)-piperazin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[0312]



(a) 5-Chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)piperazin-1-yl)aniline

[0313] A mixture of 4-chloro-*N*-methyl-2-nitro-5-(4-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)-piperazin-1-yl)aniline (200 mg, 0.48 mmol), Ra-Ni (20 mg; 0.34 mmol) and THF (8 mL) was shaken under H₂ atmosphere (1 atm) at rt for 4 h. The mixture was filtered through celite and the resulting solution was used immediately used in the next step.

(b) *N*{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)piperazin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

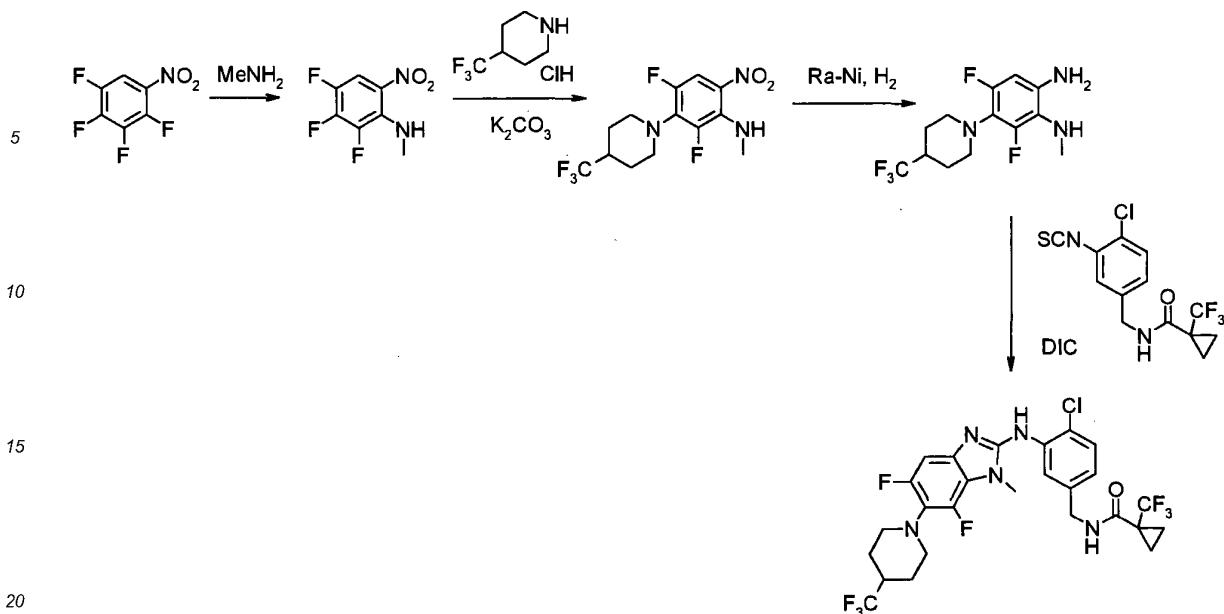
[0314] *N*-(4-Chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane carboxamide (161 mg, 0.48 mmol) was added to the THF solution from step (a) above and the mixture was concentrated. DMF (2 mL) was added to the residue, the mixture was stirred at rt for 1 h and DIC (67 mg, 0.53 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at rt overnight, another portion of DIC (17 mg, 0.13 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at rt overnight. The mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by column chromatography to give the title compound.

Yield: 91 mg (28%). HPLC-method O: R_f = 12.37 min. MS m/z: 685 [M+H]⁺.

Example 84

N{4-Chloro-3-[5,7-difluoro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[0315]



(a) 2,3,4-Trifluoro-*N*-methyl-6-nitroaniline

[0316] A solution of MeNH₂ in THF (50.7 mL, 2 M, 101 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 1,2,3,4-tetrafluoro-5-nitrobenzene (9.88 g, 50.7 mmol) in THF (200 mL) at -20 °C. The mixture was stirred at -20 °C for 1.5 h, concentrated, washed with brine and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. Crystallization from EtOAc/PE gave the sub-title compound. Yield: 8.5 g (81%).

(b) 2,4-Difluoro-N-methyl-6-nitro-3-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0317] A mixture of 2,3,4-trifluoro-N-methyl-6-nitroaniline (1.5 g, 7.3 mmol), 4-trifluoromethylpiperidine hydrochloride (2.76 g, 14.6 mmol), K_2CO_3 (2.01 g, 14.6 mmol) and DMF (10 mL) was stirred at rt overnight under Ar atmosphere. The mixture was poured into aqueous ammonia and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated. Crystallization from EtOAc/PE gave the sub-title compound.

35 Yield: 2.3 g (93%).

(c) 3,5-Difluoro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0318] A mixture of 2,4-difluoro-N-methyl-6-nitro-3-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (210 mg, 0.62 mmol), Ra-Ni (4 mg, 0.062 mmol) and THF (30 mL) was shaken under H₂ atmosphere (1 atm) at rt for 1 h. The mixture was filtered through celite and the celite pad was further washed with THF. The resulting solution was concentrated to give the subtitle compound.

Yield: 100 mg (92%)

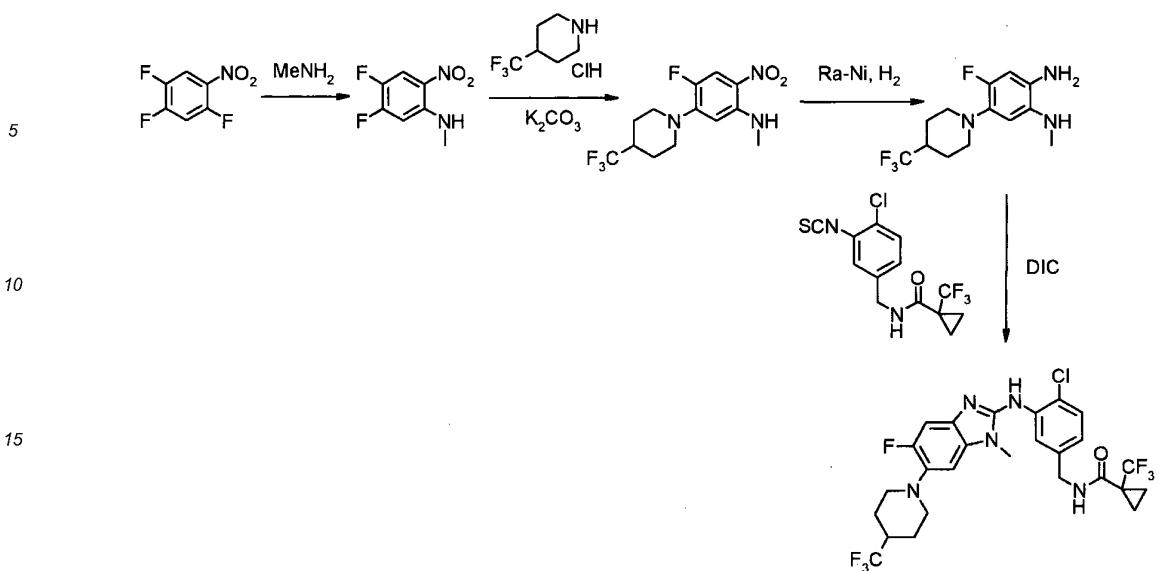
45 (d) N-[4-Chloro-3-[5,7-difluoro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanepropane

[0319] The title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 76 using 3,5-difluoro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (186 mg, 0.60 mmol), *N*-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide (200 mg; 0.60 mmol), DIC (76 mg, 0.60 mmol) and DMF (3 mL).
Yield: 119 mg (33%). HPLC-method Q: R = 12.25 min. MS m/z: 610 [M+H]⁺

Example 86

55 N-{4-Chloro-3-[5-fluoro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[03201]



(a) 4,5-Difluoro-*N*-methyl-2-nitroaniline

[0321] A solution of MeNH₂ in THF (5.7 mL, 2 M, 11 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 1,2,4-trifluoro-5-nitrobenzene (1.0 g, 5.7 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at -20 °C. The mixture was stirred at -20 °C for 1 h, concentrated, washed with brine and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. Crystallization from EtOAc/PE gave the sub-title compound. Yield: 1.0 g (81%).

(b) 4-Fluoro-N-methyl-2-nitro-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0322] A mixture of 4,5-difluoro-N-methyl-2-nitroaniline (1.0 g, 5.3 mmol), 4-trifluoromethylpiperidine hydrochloride (2.02 g, 10.6 mmol), K_2CO_3 (1.47 g, 10.6 mmol) and DMF (7 mL) was stirred at 40 °C overnight under Ar atmosphere. The mixture was poured into aqueous ammonia and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The residue was washed with Et_2O/PE to give the sub-title compound.
Yield: 1.6 g (95%).

(c) 5-Fluoro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline

[0323] A mixture of 4-fluoro-N-methyl-2-nitro-5-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (200 mg, 0.62 mmol), Ra-Ni (4 mg, 0.062 mmol) and THF (30 mL) was shaken under H₂ atmosphere (1 atm) at rt for 1 h. The mixture was filtered through celite and the celite pad was further washed with THF. Concentration and crystallization from Et₂O/PE gave the sub-title compound.

(d) *N*-{4-Chloro-3-[5-fluoro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

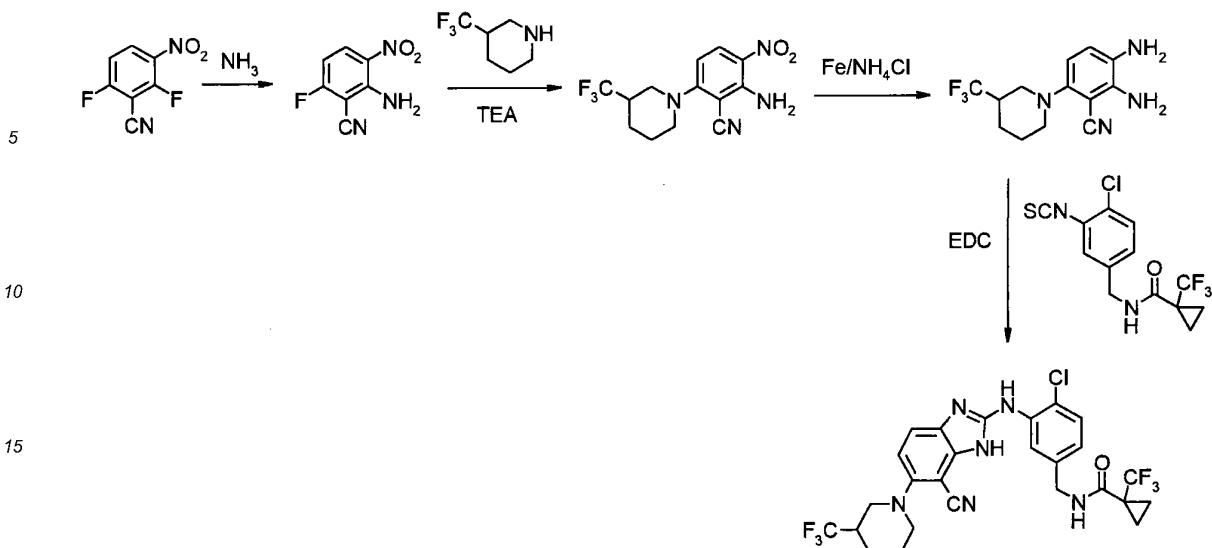
[0324] The title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 76 using 5-fluoro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (175 mg, 0.60 mmol), *N*-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide (200 mg; 0.60 mmol), DIC (76 mg, 0.60 mmol) and DMF (3 mL).

Yield: 155 mg (44%). HPLC-method O: $R_f = 10.62$ min. MS m/z: 592 [M+H]⁺.

Example 93

N-{4-Chloro-3-[4-cyano-5-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[0325]



20 (a) 2-Amino-6-fluoro-3-nitrobenzonitrile

[0326] A solution of NH₃ in EtOH (19 mL, 8.6 M, 160 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 2,6-difluoro-3-nitrobenzonitrile (10 g, 54 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 0 °C under Ar and the resulting mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h. The mixture was concentrated and the residue washed with brine and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated.

(b) 2-Amino-3-nitro-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile

[0327] A mixture of 2-amino-6-fluoro-3-nitrobenzonitrile (3.1 g, 17 mmol), 3-trifluoromethylpiperidine (2.5 g, 19 mmol), TEA (3.4 g, 34 mmol) and THF (110 mL) was stirred under Ar at rt for 3 h. The mixture was concentrated and poured into H₂O and thereafter extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. Crystallization from EtOAc gave the sub-title compound.

(c) 2,3-Diamino-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile

[0328] A mixture of 2-amino-3-nitro-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile (200 mg, 0.64 mmol), Fe (178 mg, 3.18 mmol), aqueous NH₄Cl (5 mL) and EtOH (5 mL) was heated under Ar at 90 °C for 2 h. The mixture was thereafter basified to pH ~9-10 and filtered through celite and the celite pad was washed with EtOH and EtOAc. The organic layer was concentrated and the residue was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was washed with Et₂O to give the sub-title compound.

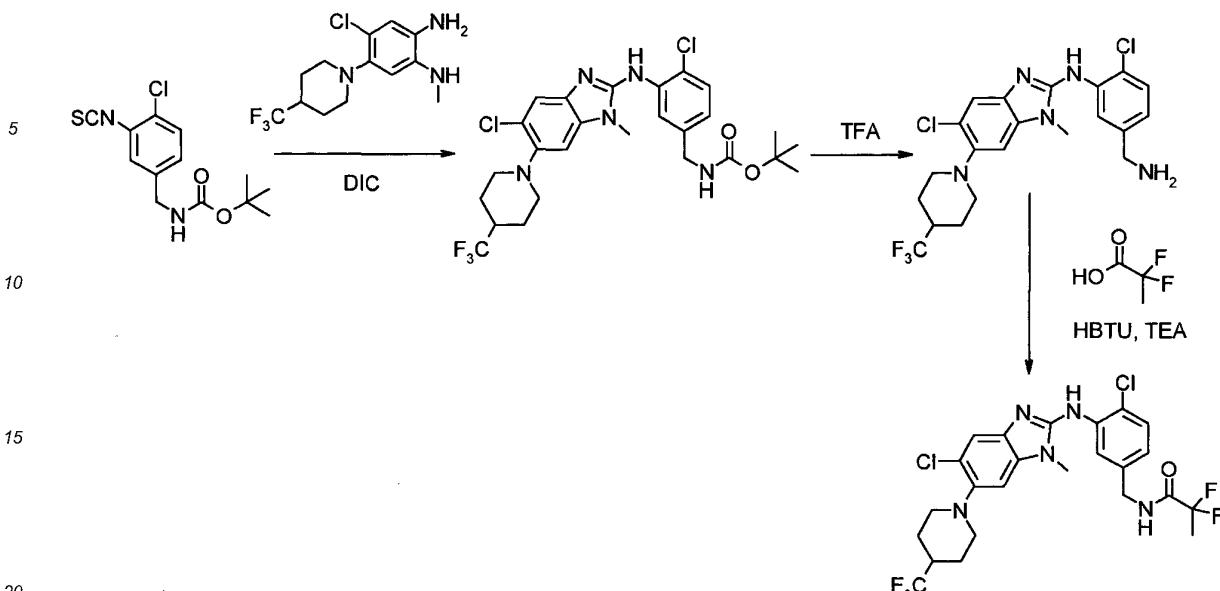
45 (d) N-{4-Chloro-3-[4-cyano-5-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[0329] The title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 71 using 2,3-diamino-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile (115 mg, 0.40 mmol), *N*-(4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide (135 mg; 0.40 mmol), EDC (77 mg, 0.40 mmol) and DMF (3 mL).
 Yield: 69 mg (29%). HPLC-method N: R_f = 15.50 min. MS m/z: 585 [M+H]⁺.

Example 94

55 *N*-(4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl)-2,2-difluoro-propionamide

[0330]



(a) Tert-butyl N-[4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl]-carbamate

[0331] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 76 using 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (508 mg, 1.65 mmol), tert-butyl 4-chloro-3-isothiocyanatobenzylcarbamate (493 mg, 1.65 mmol), DIC (208 mg, 1.65 mmol) and DMF (8 mL).

30 (b) 4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzylamine

[0332] A mixture of tert-butyl *N*-{4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl}-carbamate (790 mg, 1.38 mmol), TFA (1.54 mL, 20.7 mmol) and DCM (30 mL) was stirred at rt overnight. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C, basicified to pH ~10 and extracted with DCM. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated and the residue was washed with Et₂O/PE.

(c) *N*-{4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-2,2-difluoro-propionamide

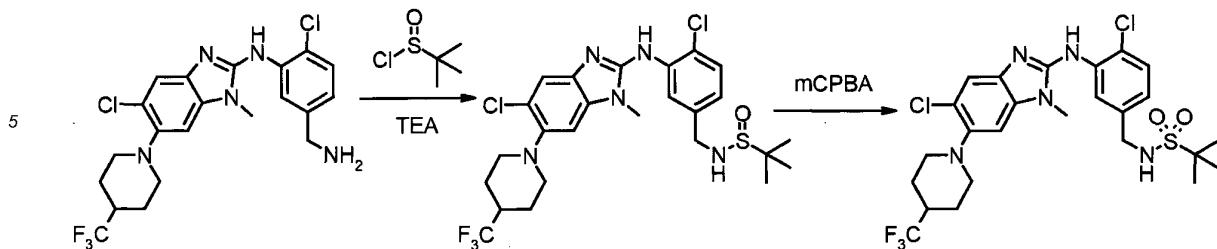
[0333] A mixture of 2,2-difluoropropanoic acid (37 mg; 0.34 mmol), HBTU (129 mg; 0.34 mmol) and TEA (69 mg; 0.68 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL) was stirred for 30 min at rt and added to a solution of 4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzylamine (161 mg; 0.34 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred overnight at rt, poured into brine and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated and the residue was purified by column chromatography.

Yield: 87 mg (45%). HPLC-method O: $R_f = 10.60$ min. MS m/z: 564 [M+H]⁺.

Example 99

50 *N*-(4-Chloro-3-(5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)benzyl)-2-methyl-propane-2-sulfonamide

[0334]



(a) *N*-(4-Chloro-3-(5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)benzyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

[0335] A solution of 2-methylpropane-2-sulfinic acid chloride (83 mg, 0.59 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of 4-chloro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzylamine (265 mg, 0.56 mmol), TEA (113 mg, 1.12 mmol) and DCM (3 mL) at 0 °C under Ar. The mixture was stirred at rt overnight, poured into H₂O and extracted with DCM. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. Crystallization from DCM/PE gave the sub-title compound.

Yield: 298 mg (92%).

20

(b) *N*-(4-Chloro-3-(5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)benzyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

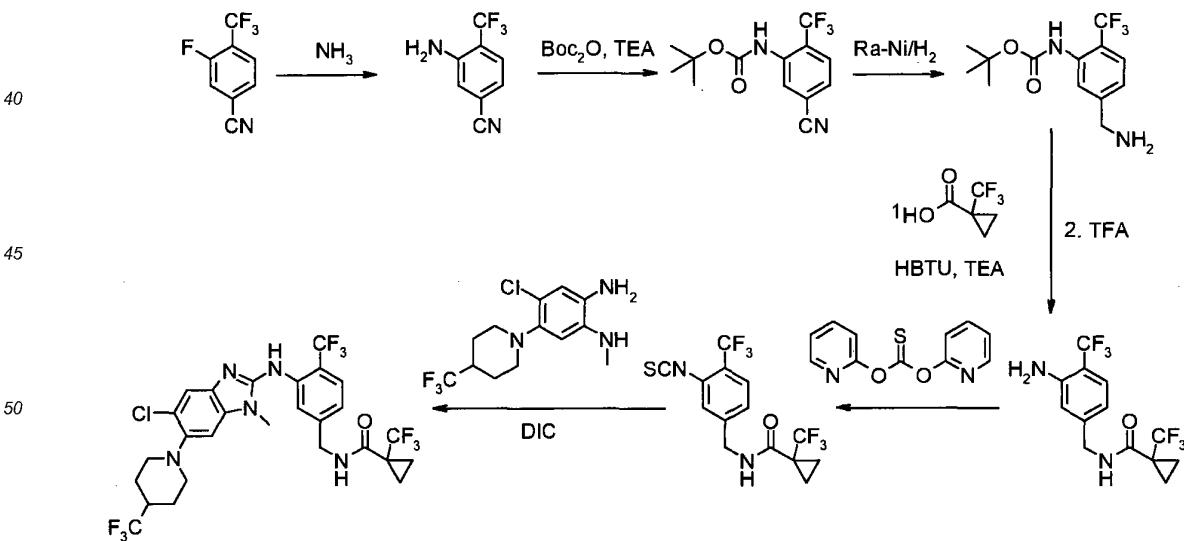
[0336] A mixture of *N*-(4-chloro-3-(5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)benzyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide (298 mg, 0.52 mmol), *m*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (127 mg, 0.74 mmol) and DCM (20 mL) was stirred at rt overnight. The mixture was basicified to pH ~8-9 and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated. Crystallization from DCM/Et₂O gave the title compound. Yield: 39 mg (13%). HPLC-method O: R_t = 10.84 min. MS m/z: 592 [M+H]⁺.

30 Example 101

N-{4-Trifluoromethyl-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

35

[0337]



(a) 3-Amino-4-trifluoromethyl-benzonitrile

[0338] A closed pressure tube charged with 3-fluoro-4-trifluoromethyl-benzonitrile (10.0 g; 52.9 mmol) and liquid NH₃

(60 mL) was heated for 6 days at 90 °C. The tube was cooled to -60 °C and opened. The mixture was allowed to stir for 1 h at rt, washed with brine, extracted with EtOAc, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated.. Yield: 10.2 g (quantitative; slightly contaminated).

5 (b) tert-Butyl 5-cyano-2-trifluoromethyl-phenylcarbamate

[0339] A mixture of 3-amino-4-trifluoromethyl-benzonitrile (10.0 g; 53.7 mmol), DCM (100 mL) and TEA (8.2 mL; 59 mmol) was treated dropwise with a solution of Boc₂O (12.9 g; 59.1 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) at 0 °C and stirred overnight. Another portion of Boc₂O in DCM and DMAP (656 mg; 5.37 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for another 10 12 h at rt. The mixture was washed with water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, concentrated and purified by column chromatography.

Yield: 8.50 g (55%).

15 (c) tert-Butyl 5-aminomethyl-2-trifluoromethyl-phenylcarbamate

[0340] A mixture of tert-butyl 5-cyano-2-trifluoromethyl-phenylcarbamate (8.5 g; 29.7 mmol), Ra-Ni (174 mg; 2.97 mmol) and THF (60 mL) was stirred under H₂-atmosphere (5 atm) overnight at rt. The mixture was filtered through celite and the celite pad was washed with THF and EtOAc. Concentration gave the sub-title compound which was used in the next step without further purification. Yield: 8 g (93%).

20 (d) N-(3-Amino-4-trifluoromethyl-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0341] The compound was prepared in analogy to the procedures in Example 94, step (c) and Example 94, step (b) using tert-butyl 5-aminomethyl-2-trifluoromethyl-phenylcarbamate (2.09 g; 7.20 mmol), 1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane-25 carboxylic acid (1.11 g; 7.20 mmol), HBTU (2.73 g; 7.20 mmol), TEA (2.19 g; 21.6 mmol), DMF (25 mL), TFA (10 mL) and DCM (50 mL). Yield: 1.8 g (77%).

(e) N-(4-Trifluoromethyl-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane carboxamide

30 [0342] A mixture of *N*-(3-amino-4-trifluoromethyl-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide (1.60 g; 4.90 mmol), di-(2-pyridyl)thionocarbonate (1.71 g; 7.36 mmol) and THF (40 mL) was stirred in a pressure tube for 2 days at 60 °C. The mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by column chromatography. Yield: 1.29 g (72%).

35 (f) N-[4-Trifluoromethyl-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

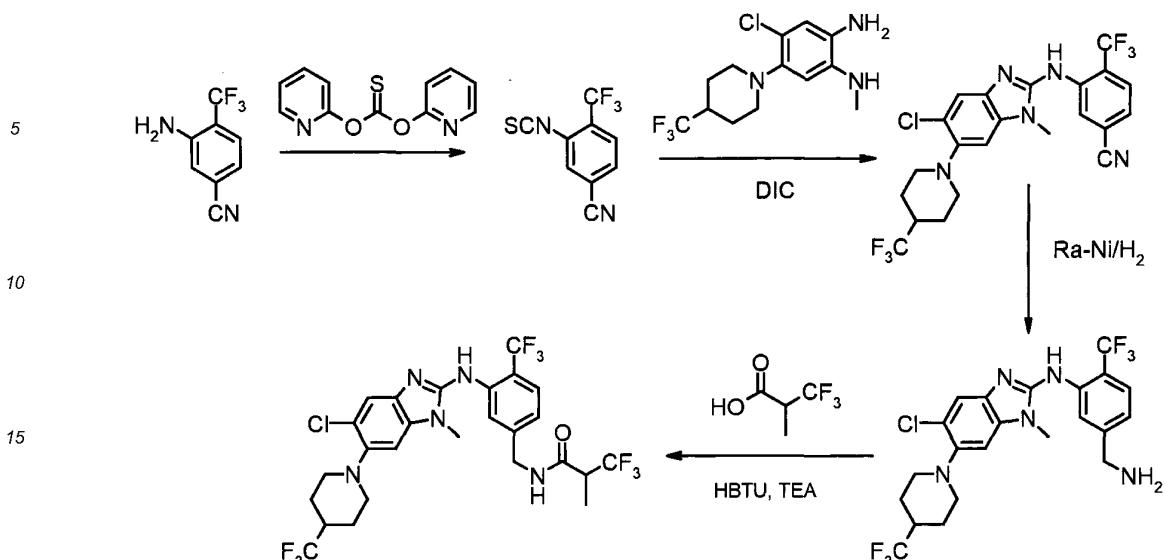
[0343] The title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 76 using 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (185 mg, 0.60 mmol), *N*-(4-trifluoromethyl-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide (221 mg, 0.60 mmol), DIC (76 mg, 0.60 mmol) and DMF (4 mL).

40 Yield: 185 mg (48%). HPLC-method O: R_t = 11.17 min. MS m/z: 642 [M+H]⁺.

Example 105

45 *N*-[4-Trifluoromethyl-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-3,3,3-trifluoro-2-methyl-propanamide

[0344]



(a) 3-Isothiocyanato-4-trifluoromethyl-benzonitrile

[0345] A mixture of 3-amino-4-trifluoromethyl-benzonitrile (1.0 g, 5.4 mmol), di-(2-pyridyl)thionocarbonate (1.87 g, 8.06 mmol) and THF (50 mL) was stirred at rt overnight. The mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by column chromatography.

(b) 3-(5-Chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)-4-trifluoromethyl-benzonitrile

[0346] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 76 using 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (998 mg, 3.24 mmol), 3-isothiocyanato-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzonitrile (740 mg, 3.24 mmol), DIC (409 mg, 3.24 mmol) and DMF (7 mL).
Yield: 1.21 g (74%).

(c) 4-Trifluoromethyl-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine

[0347] A mixture of 3-(5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)-4-trifluoromethyl-benzonitrile (1.20 g; 2.39 mmol), Ra-Ni (14 mg; 0.24 mmol) and THF (50 mL) was shaken under H₂-atmosphere (5 atm) overnight at rt. The mixture was filtered through celite and the celite pad was washed with THF and EtOAc. Concentration and crystallization from Et₂O/PE gave the sub-title compound.
Yield: 1.2 g (90%).

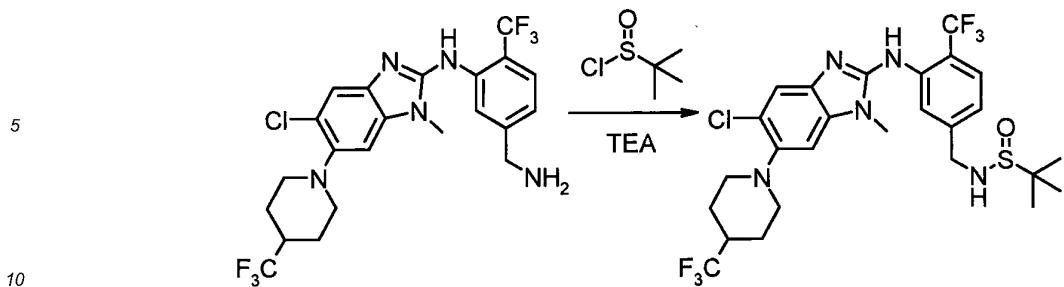
(d) N-{4-Trifluoromethyl-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-3,3,2, trifluoro-2, methyl propanamide

[0348] The title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 94, step (c) using 4-trifluoromethyl-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine (110 mg; 0.22 mmol), 3,3,3-trifluoro-2-methylpropanoic acid (31 mg; 0.22 mmol), HBTU (83 mg; 0.22 mmol), TEA (45 mg; 0.44 mmol), DMF (2 mL).
 Yield: 39 mg (28%). HPLC-method O: R_t = 11.80 min. MS m/z: 630 [M+H]⁺.

Example 109

55 N-(4-Trifluoromethyl-3-(5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)benzyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

[0349]



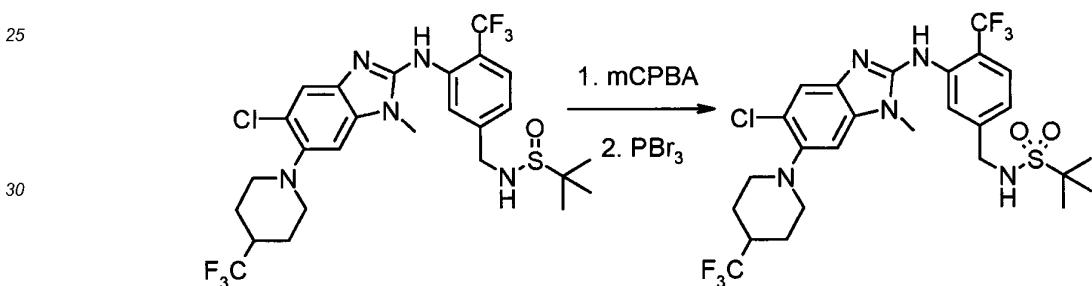
[0350] The title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 99, step (a) using 2-methylpropane-2-sulfonic chloride (117 mg, 0.83 mmol), 4-trifluoromethyl-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine (400 mg, 0.79 mmol), TEA (160 mg, 1.58 mmol) and DCM (5 mL).

15 Yield: 210 mg (44%). HPLC-method O: R_t = 11.25 min. MS m/z: 610 [M+H]⁺.

Example 110

20 N-(4-Trifluoromethyl-3-(5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)benzyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide

[0351]



35 [0352] A mixture of *N*-(4-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)benzyl)-2-methylpropane-2-sulfonamide (140 mg, 0.23 mmol), m-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (198 mg, 1.15 mmol) and CHCl₃ (7 mL) was stirred at rt for 15 min. The mixture was poured into brine and extracted with DCM. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was mixed with PBr₃ (144 mg, 0.50 mmol) and DCM (5 ml) and the mixture was stirred at rt overnight. The mixture was poured into H₂O and extracted with DCM.

40 The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. Purification by column chromatography gave the title compound. Yield: 33 mg (16%). HPLC-method O: R_t = 11.44 min. MS m/z: 626 [M+H]⁺.

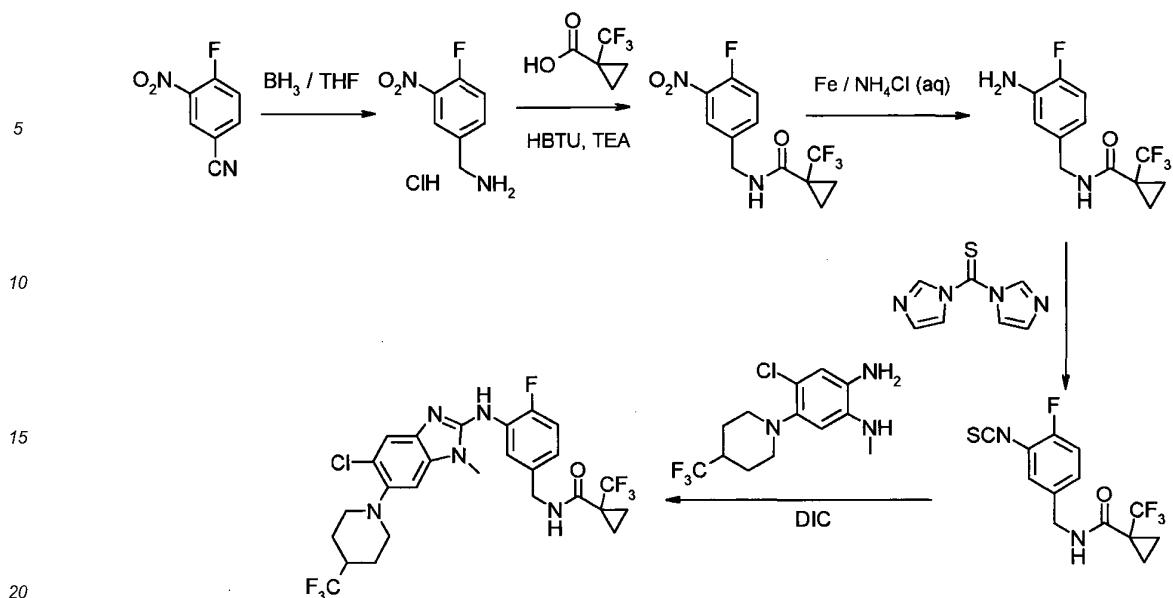
Example 111

45 N-{4-Fluoro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[0353]

50

55

(a) 4-Fluoro-3-nitro-benzylamine hydrochloride

[0354] BH_3/THF (120 mL; 120 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-fluoro-3-nitro-benzonitrile (10 g; 60 mmol) in THF (50 mL) over 30 min at 0 °C and the resulting mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h and at rt for 3 h. The mixture was acidified to pH ~1 and stirred for 1 h at rt, basified to pH ~7-8 and extracted with EtOAc . The organic layer was dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in Et_2O and treated with a solution of HCl in 1,4-dioxane to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 8.7 g (70%).

(b) N -(4-Fluoro-3-nitro-benzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0355] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 94, step (c) using 4-fluoro-3-nitro-benzylamine hydrochloride (3.0 g; 14.5 mmol), 1-(trifluoromethyl)-cyclopropanecarboxylic acid (2.5 g; 16.0 mmol), HBTU (6.07 g; 16.0 mmol), TEA (5.88 g; 58.1 mmol) and DMF (50 mL).

Yield: 3.8 g (85%).

(c) N -(3-Amino-4-fluorobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0356] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 93, step (c) using N -(4-fluoro-3-nitrobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)-cyclopropanecarboxamide (3.77 g; 12.3 mmol), Fe (3.45 g; 61.6 mmol), NH_4Cl (aq, sat, 30 mL) and EtOH (30 mL).

Yield: 3.2 g (76%).

(d) N -(4-Fluoro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide

[0357] A mixture of N -(3-amino-4-fluorobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide (3.17 g; 11.5 mmol) and TCDI (3.07 g; 17.2 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) was heated overnight at 50 °C. The mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by column chromatography.

Yield: 3 g (82%).

(e) N -(4-Fluoro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[0358] The title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 76 using N -(4-fluoro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropane carboxamide (191 mg; 0.60 mmol), 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (185 mg; 0.60 mmol), DIC (76 mg; 0.60 mmol) and DMF (3 mL).

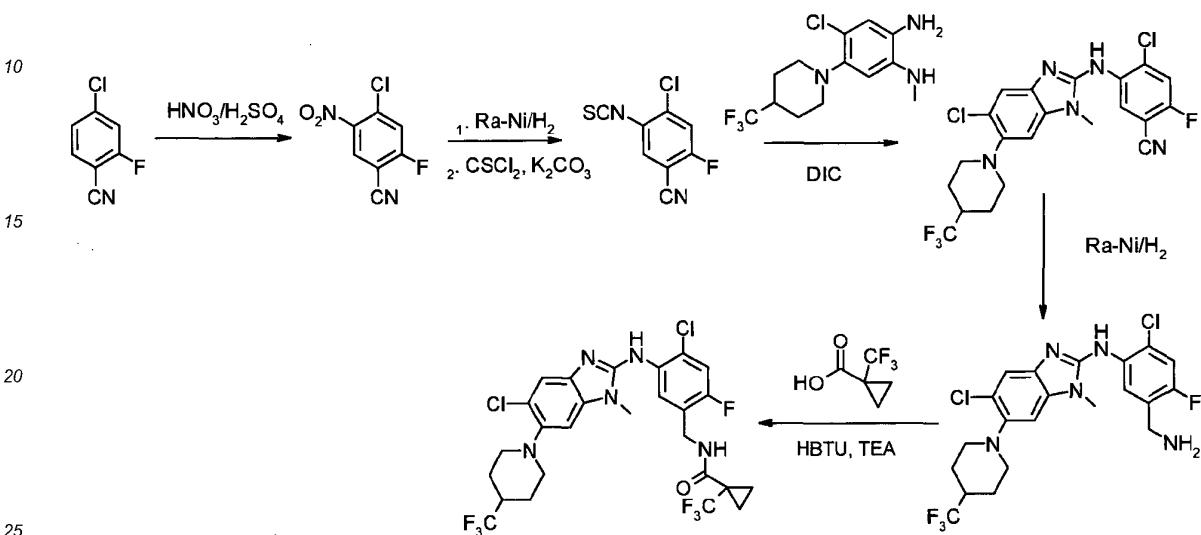
Yield: 111 mg (31%). HPLC-method O: $R_t = 11.07$ min. MS m/z: 592 [M+H]⁺.

Example 114

N-[4-Chloro-2-fluoro-5-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

5

[0359]



(a) 4-Chloro-2-fluoro-5-nitrobenzonitrile

[0360] A mixture of 4-chloro-2-fluorobenzonitrile (4.62 g; 29.7 mmol) in conc. H_2SO_4 (42 mL) was treated dropwise with conc. HNO_3 (3.9 mL) at 1-2 °C. After stirring at 1-2 °C for 2 h the mixture was poured into ice and filtered. Yield: 5.18 g (87%).

(b) 4-Chloro-2-fluoro-5-isothiocyanatobenzonitrile

[0361] H_2 was passed through a mixture of 4-chloro-2-fluoro-5-nitrobenzonitrile (1.0 g; 5.0 mmol) and Ra-Ni (29 mg, 0.50 mmol) in THF (50 mL) for 6 h. The mixture was filtered through celite. CSCl_2 (2.29 g; 19.9 mmol) and K_2CO_3 (3.45 g; 25.0 mmol) was added and it was stirred overnight at rt. The residue was concentrated and purified by column chromatography. Yield: 840 mg (79%).

(c) 4-Chloro-5-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]-2-fluorobenzonitrile

[0362] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 76 using 4-chloro-2-fluoro-5-isothiocyanatobenzonitrile (300 mg; 1.41 mmol), 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (434 mg; 1.41 mmol), DIC (178 mg; 1.41 mmol) and DMF (12 mL). Yield: 264 mg (39%).

(d) 4-Chloro-2-fluoro-5-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine

[0363] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 101, step (c) using 4-chloro-5-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-(trifluoromethyl)piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]-2-fluorobenzonitrile (264 mg; 0.54 mmol), Ra-Ni (3 mg), H_2 (5 atm) and THF (30 mL).

(e) N-[4-Chloro-2-fluoro-5-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl]-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

[0364] The title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 94, step (c) using 4-chloro-2-fluoro-

5-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzylamine (270 mg; 0.55 mmol), 1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxylic acid (85 mg; 0.55 mmol), HBTU (209 mg; 0.55 mmol), TEA (111 mg; 1.10 mmol) and DMF (5 mL).

Yield: 79 mg (23%). HPLC-method O: R_t = 11.47 min. MS m/z: 626 [M+H]⁺.

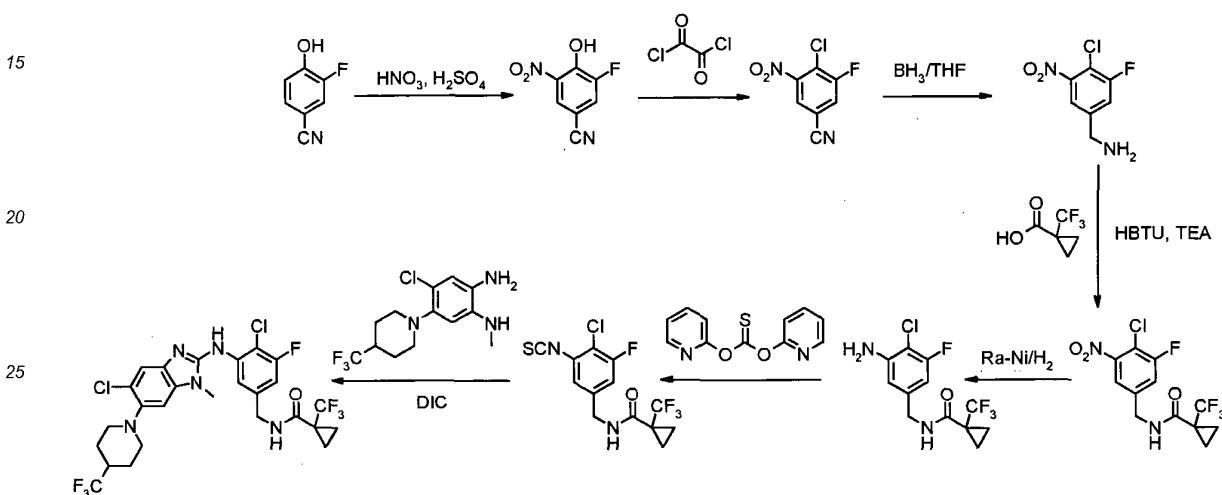
5

Example 116

N-{4-Chloro-5-fluoro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl}-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

10

[0365]



30

(a) 3-Fluoro-4-hydroxy-5-nitro-benzonitrile

[0366] Fuming HNO₃ (1.8 mL; 44 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 3-fluoro-4-hydroxybenzonitrile (4.0 g; 29 mmol) in conc. H₂SO₄ (10 mL) at -10 °C. The mixture was stirred at -10 °C for 1 h and thereafter slowly poured into ice. The precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was combined with the precipitate and crystallized from EtOAc/PE to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 3.9 g (73%).

40

(b) 4-Chloro-3-fluoro-5-nitro-benzonitrile

[0367] Oxalyl chloride (5.44 g; 42.8 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 3-fluoro-4-hydroxy-5-nitrobenzonitrile (3.9 g; 21 mmol) in DMF (40 mL) at -25 °C. The mixture was stirred at -25 °C for 15 min and thereafter at 80 °C for 2.5 h. The mixture was slowly poured into ice, the precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was combined with the precipitate and filtered through a plug of silica gel to give the sub-title compound.

Yield: 2.44 g (56%).

50

(c) 4-Chloro-3-fluoro-5-nitro-benzylamine

[0368] A solution of BH₃/THF (7.5 mL; 7.5 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of 4-chloro-3-fluoro-5-nitrobenzonitrile (750 mg; 3.74 mmol) in THF (5 mL) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 3 h, it was acidified to pH ~1 and stirred at rt for 1 h and then basicified to pH ~8 and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in Et₂O and precipitated with PE to give the sub-title compound.

55

Yield: 761 mg (99%).

(d) *N*-(4-Chloro-3-fluoro-5-nitro-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

[0369] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 94, step (c) using 4-chloro-3-fluoro-5-nitro-benzylamine (761 mg; 3.72 mmol), 1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxylic acid (573 mg; 3.72 mmol), HBTU (1.41 g; 3.72 mmol), TEA (753 mg; 7.44 mmol) and DMF (10 mL).

5 Yield: 980 mg (77%).

(e) *N*-(3-Amino-4-chloro-5-fluoro-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide

10 [0370] H_2 was passed through a shaken mixture of *N*-(4-chloro-3-fluoro-5-nitrobenzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane-carboxamide (980 mg, 2.88 mmol), Ra-Ni (17 mg, 0.29 mmol) and THF (50 mL) at rt for 1.5 h. The mixture was filtered through celite and concentrated.

Yield: 800 mg (89%).

15 (f) *N*-(4-Chloro-5-fluoro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane carboxamide

[0371] The sub-title compound was prepared in analogy to Example 105, step (a) using *N*-(3-amino-4-chloro-5-fluorobenzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide (800 mg, 2.57 mmol), di-(2-pyridyl)thionocarbonate (897 mg, 3.86 mmol) and THF (20 mL).

20 Yield: 211 mg (23%).

(g) *N*-(4-Chloro-5-fluoro-3-[5-chloro-1-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino]-benzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanamide

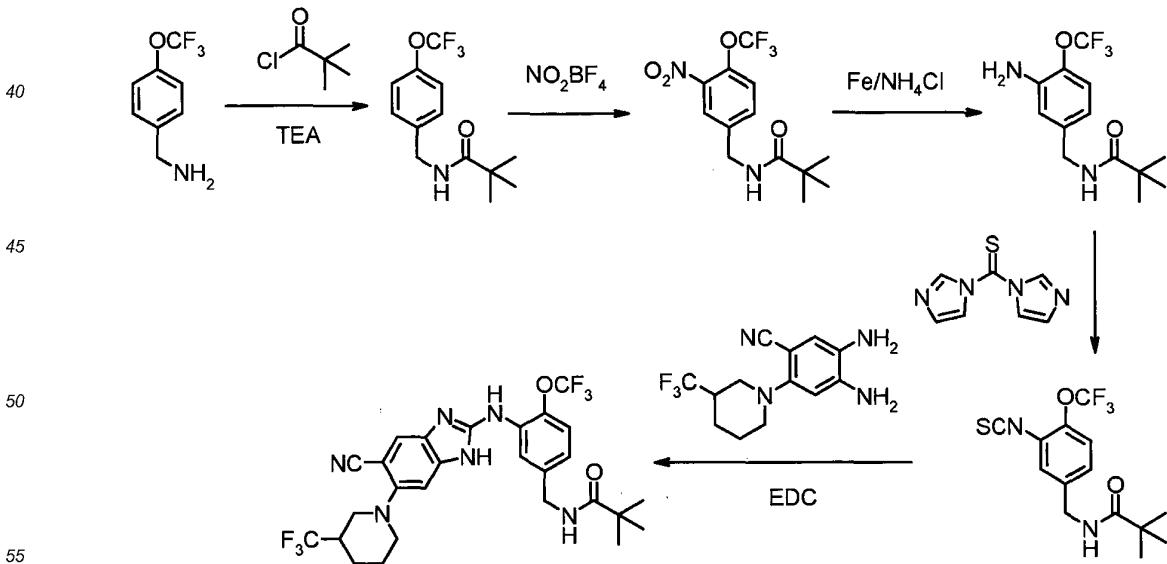
25 [0372] The title compound was prepared in analogy to the procedure in Example 76 using *N*-(4-chloro-5-fluoro-3-isothiocyanatobenzyl)-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropane carboxamide (211 mg; 0.60 mmol), 5-chloro-2-methylamino-4-(4-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)aniline (184 mg; 0.60 mmol), DIC (78 mg; 0.60 mmol) and DMF (4 mL).

Yield: 75 mg (20%). HPLC-method O: R_t = 11.80 min. MS m/z: 626 [$M+H$]⁺.

30 Example 117

N-(3-(5-Cyano-6-[3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl]-1*H*-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)-4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

35 [0373]



(a) *N*-(4-Trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0374] A solution of pivaloyl chloride (2.1 mL, 17 mmol) in MeCN (10 mL) was added dropwise over 10 min to a solution of 4-trifluoromethoxy-benzylamine (2.6 mL, 17 mmol) and TEA (4.0 mL, 29 mmol) in MeCN (20 mL) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred for 30 min, filtered and concentrated. The residue was treated with water and filtration gave the sub-title compound.

Yield: 4.12 g (88%).

(b) *N*-(3-Nitro-4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0375] Nitronium tetrafluoroborate (3.97 g, 29.9 mmol) was added in portions over 5 min to *N*-(4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (4.1 g, 15 mmol) in MeNO₂ (35 mL) and the mixture was stirred at rt for 1 h. The mixture was treated with ice and Et₂O was added. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was treated with PE and the sub-title compound was filtered off.

Yield: 3.40 g (71%).

(c) *N*-(3-Amino-4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0376] A mixture of *N*-(3-nitro-4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (3.4 g, 11 mmol), Fe (3.7 g, 66 mmol), saturated aqueous NH₄Cl-solution (35 mL) and EtOH (170 mL) was refluxed for 30 min. The mixture was concentrated, treated with water and the pH was adjusted to ~8. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc and the organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was treated with PE and the sub-title compound was filtered off. Yield: 2.7 g (88%).

(d) *N*-(3-Isothiocyanato-4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0377] A mixture of *N*-(3-amino-4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (200 mg, 0.69 mmol), TCDI (133 mg, 0.746 mmol) and MeCN (3 mL) was refluxed for 1 h. Concentration and purification by column chromatography gave the sub-title compound.

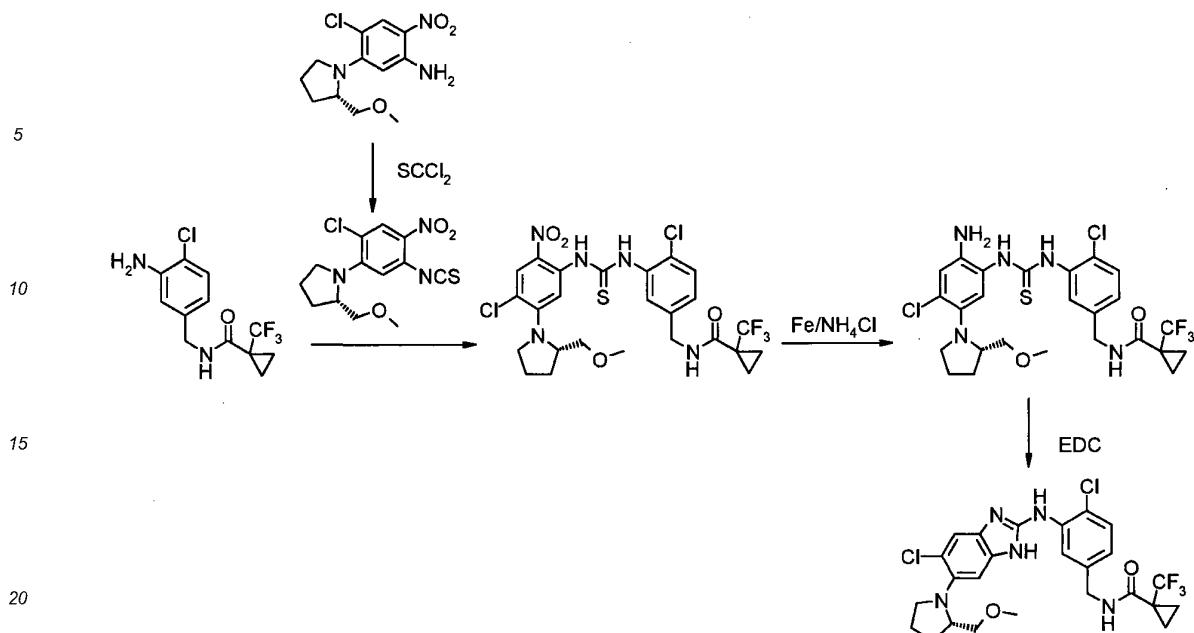
Yield: 135 mg (59%).

(e) *N*-(3-[5-Cyano-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]-4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide

[0378] A mixture of *N*-(3-isothiocyanato-4-trifluoromethoxy-benzyl)-2,2-dimethyl-propionamide (135 mg, 0.406 mmol), 4,5-diamino-2-(3-trifluoromethyl-piperidin-1-yl)benzonitrile (115 mg, 0.406 mmol) and DMF (2 mL) was stirred at rt for 4 h. EDC (101 mg, 0.527 mmol) was added and mixture was stirred at rt overnight. The mixture was treated with water and extracted with Et₂O. Concentration and purification by column chromatography gave an oil. The oil was treated with CHCl₃ and the precipitate was collected by filtration.

Yield: 52 mg (22%). HPLC-method N: R_t = 14.60 min. MS m/z: 583 [M+H]⁺.

Example 133(S)-N-[4-Chloro-3-[5-chloro-6-(2-methoxymethyl-pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino]benzyl]-1-trifluoromethyl-cyclopropanecarboxamide**[0379]**

(a) (S)-5-Chloro-2-isothiocyanato-4-(2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-yl)-nitrobenzene

25 [0380] A mixture of (S)-4-chloro-5-(2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitroaniline (200 mg; 0.70 mmol), NaHCO₃ (588 mg; 7.00 mmol), CH₂Cl₂ (7 mL) and SCCl₂ (402 mg; 3.50 mmol) was stirred at rt overnight and concentrated and the residue was purified by column chromatography. Yield: 170 mg (74%).

30 (b) (S)-N-(4-Chloro-3-(3-(4-chloro-5-(2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitrophenyl)thioureido)benzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide

35 [0381] A mixture of *N*-(3-amino-4-chlorobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide (150 mg; 0.51 mmol), (S)-5-chloro-2-isothiocyanato-4-(2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-yl)-nitrobenzene (169 mg; 0.51 mmol) and DMF (3 mL) was stirred at rt overnight. The mixture was poured into brine and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was washed with Et₂O to give the sub-title compound. Yield: 145 mg (46%).

40 (c) (S)-N-(3-(3-(2-Amino-4-chloro-5-(2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-yl)phenyl)thioureido)-4-chlorobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide

45 [0382] A mixture of (S)-*N*-(4-chloro-3-(3-(4-chloro-5-(2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-yl)-2-nitrophenyl)thioureido)benzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide (145 mg; 0.23 mmol), Fe (65 mg; 1.2 mmol), saturated aqueous NH₄Cl-solution (3 mL) and EtOH (3 mL) was stirred at 90 °C for 2 h. The mixture was basicified to pH~9-10 and filtered through celite. The celite pad was washed with EtOH and EtOAc. The mixture was concentrated and the residue was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was washed with Et₂O to give the sub-title compound. Yield: 110 mg (81%).

50 (d) (S)-N-(4-Chloro-3-(5-chloro-6-(2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-yl)-1H-benzo[d]imidazol-2-ylamino)benzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide

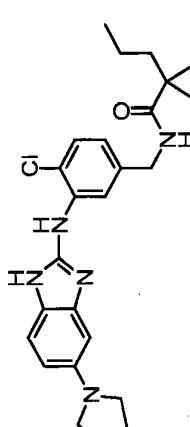
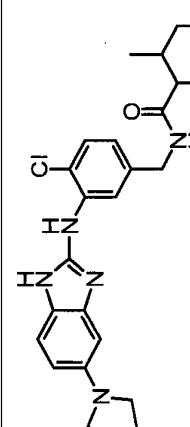
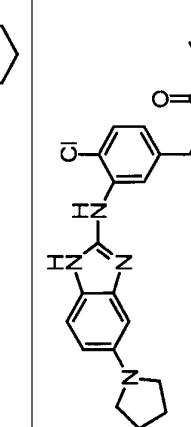
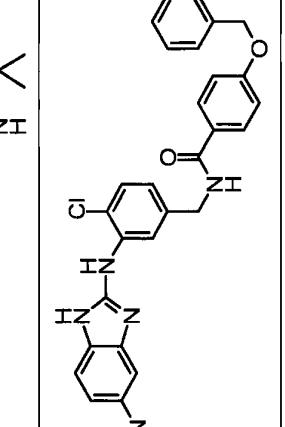
55 [0383] A mixture of (S)-*N*-(3-(3-(2-amino-4-chloro-5-(2-(methoxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1-yl)phenyl)thioureido)-4-chlorobenzyl)-1-(trifluoromethyl)cyclopropanecarboxamide (110 mg; 0.19 mmol), EDC (36 mg; 0.19 mmol) and DMF (4 mL) was stirred at 90 °C overnight. The mixture was poured into brine and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated and the residue was purified by column chromatography. Yield: 29 mg (27%). HPLC-method N: R_f= 12.10 min. MS m/z: 556 [M+H]⁺.

[0384] The following examples were prepared in analogy to the indicated methods described above using the appropriate building blocks.

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC- method)	Prepared in analogy to example
13		C ₂₅ H ₂₅ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O	596	Rt = 2.31 (method C)	12
14		C ₂₅ H ₂₅ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂	612	Rt: 2.56 (method K)	12
15		C ₂₄ H ₂₄ Cl ₂ F ₅ N ₅ O	564	Rt: 2.78 (method D)	12
16		C ₂₅ H ₃₂ ClN ₅ O	454	Rt: 1.66 (method L)	1(i)
17		C ₂₃ H ₂₅ ClF ₃ N ₅ O	479.93	Rt: 1.62 (method L)	1(ii)

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
18		C ₂₅ H ₃₂ ClN ₅ O	454.02	454	Rt: 1.69 (method L) 1(i)
19		C ₂₆ H ₃₂ ClN ₅ O	466.03	466	Rt: 1.67 (method L) 1(i)
20		C ₂₃ H ₂₈ ClN ₅ O	425.96	426	Rt: 1.51 (method L) 1(i)
21		C ₃₂ H ₃₀ ClN ₅ O ₂	552.08	552	Rt: 1.78 (method L) 1(i)

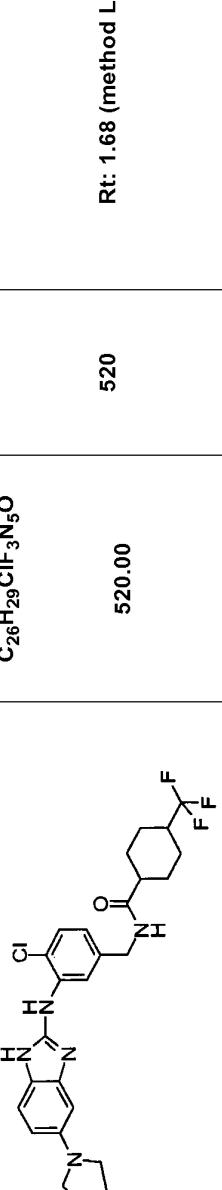
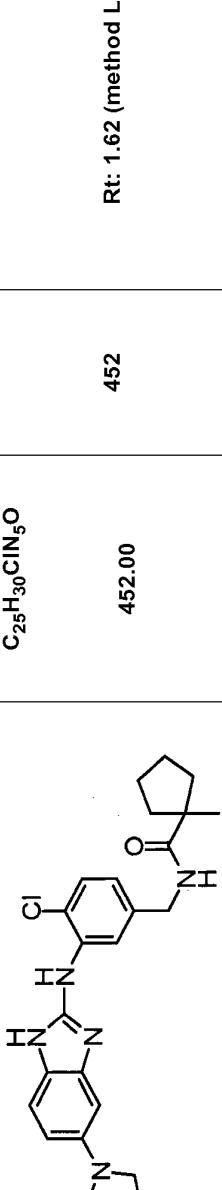
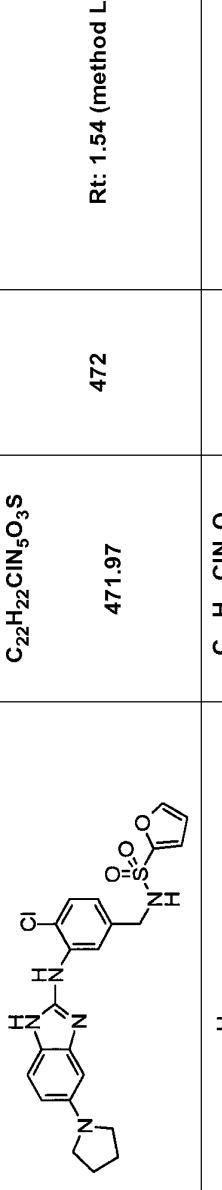
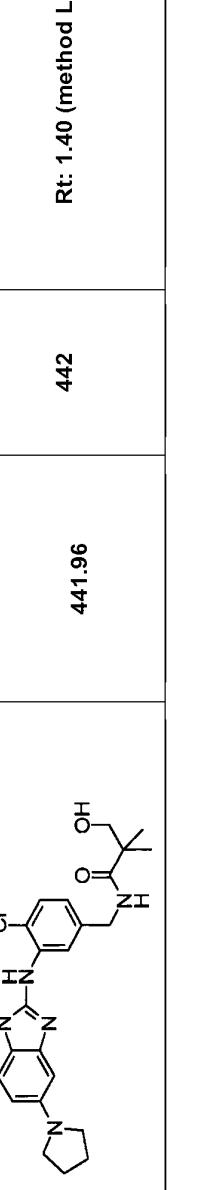
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
22		C ₂₈ H ₂₅ ClN ₆ O	497.00	497	Rt: 1.66 (method L) 1(i)
24		C ₂₇ H ₂₂ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O	600.9	600	Rt: 1.68 (method Q) 23
25		C ₂₆ H ₂₂ Cl ₄ F ₃ N ₅ OS	651.37	650	Rt: 1.77 (method Q) 23
26		C ₂₃ H ₂₃ ClN ₆ O	434.93	435	Rt: 1.46 (method L) 1(i)

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
27		C ₂₆ H ₂₉ ClF ₃ N ₅ O	520.00	Rt: 1.68 (method L)	1(i)
28		C ₂₅ H ₃₀ ClN ₅ O	452.00	Rt: 1.62 (method L)	1(i)
29		C ₂₂ H ₂₂ ClN ₅ O ₃ S	471.97	Rt: 1.54 (method L)	30
31		C ₂₃ H ₂₈ ClN ₅ O ₂	441.96	Rt: 1.40 (method L)	1(i)

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
32		C ₂₄ H ₂₅ CIN ₆ O ₂	481.02	Rt: 1.47 (method L)	1(i)
34		C ₂₂ H ₂₂ CIN ₅ O ₃ S	471.97	Rt: 1.53 (method L)	30
35		C ₂₆ H ₃₀ CIN ₅ O ₂	464.01	Rt: 1.64 (method L)	1 (i)
36		C ₂₆ H ₃₃ CIN ₆ O ₂	481.04	Rt: 1.33 (method L)	1(i)
37		C ₂₅ H ₃₂ Cl ₂ FN ₅ O ₂	524.46	Rf: 0.3 (silica; DCM:EtOH 95:5)	33

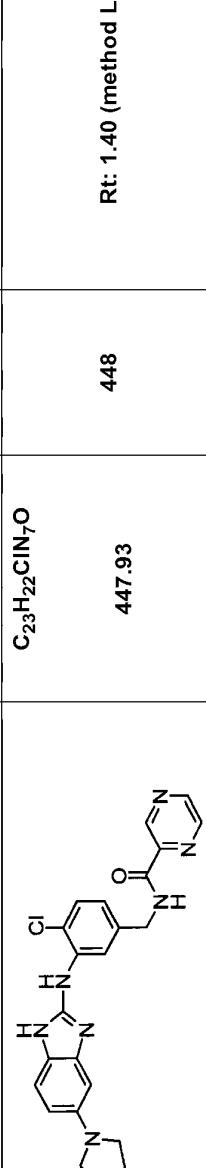
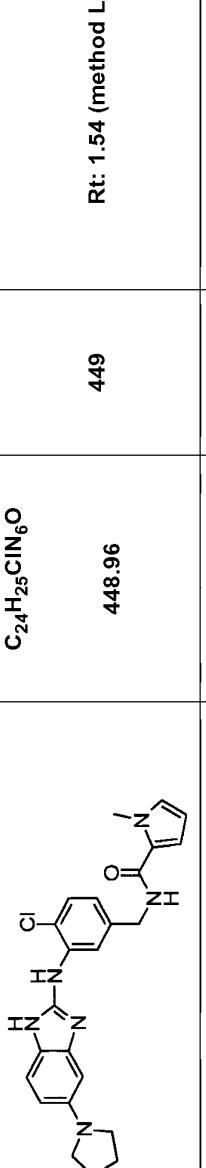
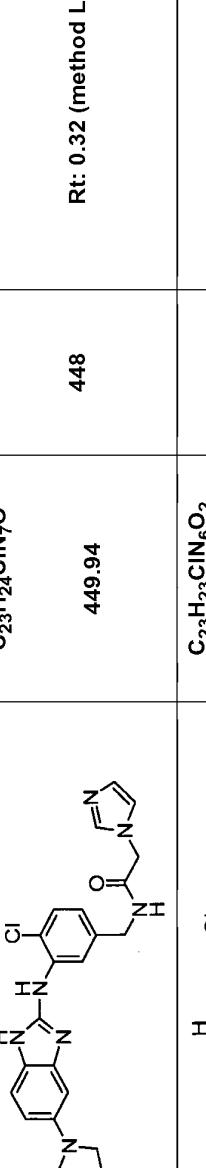
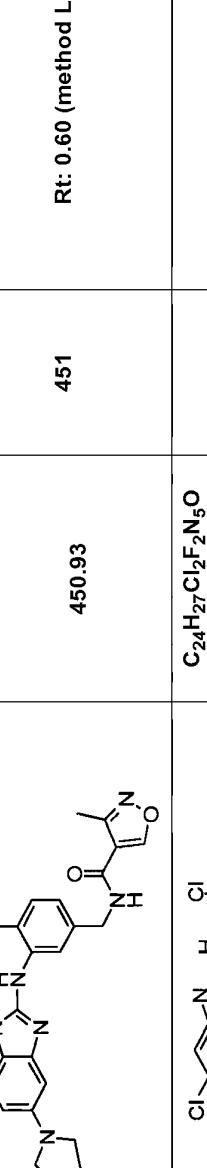
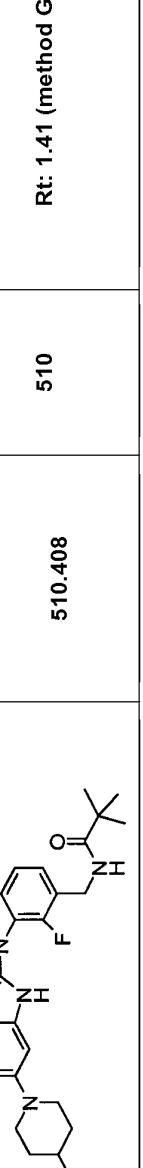
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
38		C ₂₅ H ₂₅ ClN ₆ O	460.97	460	Rt: 1.31 (method L) 1(i)
39		C ₂₃ H ₂₃ ClN ₆ O ₂	450.93	451	Rt: 1.48 (method L) 1(i)
41		C ₂₇ H ₂₈ ClN ₅ O	474.01	474	Rt: 1.62 (method L) 1(i)
42		C ₂₅ H ₃₀ Cl ₂ FN ₅ O ₂	522.442	522	Rt: 1.20 (method G) 33
43		C ₃₀ H ₂₇ ClN ₆ O	523.04	523	Rt: 1.40 (method L) 1(i)

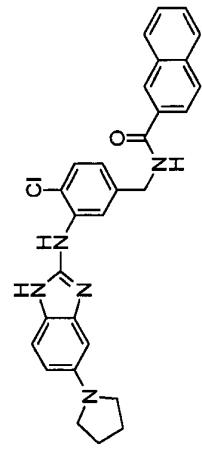
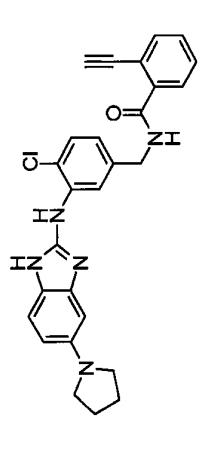
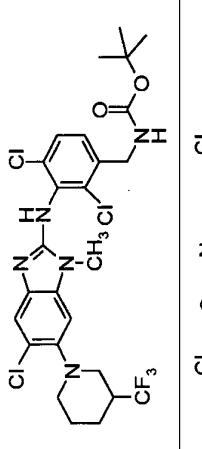
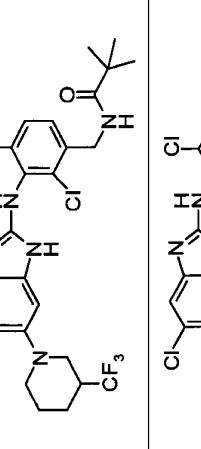
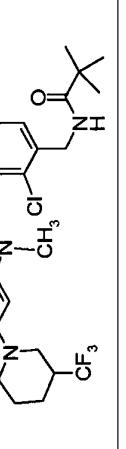
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
44		C ₂₃ H ₂₂ ClN ₇ O	447.93	448	Rt: 1.40 (method L) 1(i)
45		C ₂₄ H ₂₅ ClN ₆ O	448.96	449	Rt: 1.54 (method L) 1(i)
46		C ₂₃ H ₂₄ ClN ₇ O	449.94	448	Rt: 0.32 (method L) 1(i)
47		C ₂₃ H ₂₃ ClN ₆ O ₂	450.93	451	Rt: 0.60 (method L) 1(i)
48		C ₂₄ H ₂₇ Cl ₂ F ₂ N ₅ O	510.408	510	Rt: 1.41 (method G) 33

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

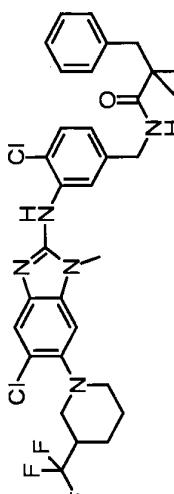
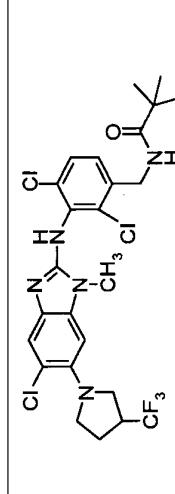
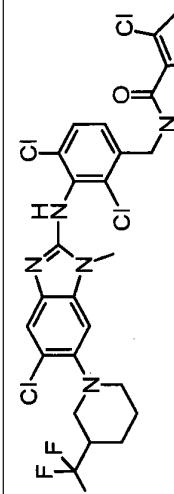
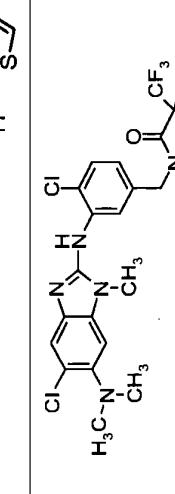
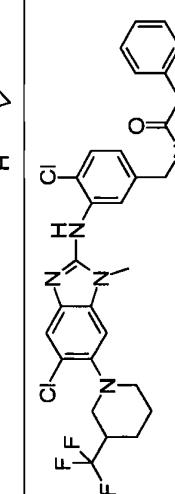
Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
49		C ₂₉ H ₂₆ ClN ₅ O	496.01	R _f : 1.74 (method L)	1(i)
50		C ₂₇ H ₂₄ ClN ₅ O	469.97	R _f : 0.68 (method L)	1(i)
51		C ₂₆ H ₂₉ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O ₂	606.894	R _f : 2.37 (method A)	1
52		C ₂₅ H ₂₇ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O	576.87	576	5
53		C ₂₆ H ₂₉ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O	590.90	R _f : 1.51 (method G)	5

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC- method)	Prepared in analogy to example
54		C ₂₇ H ₂₃ Cl ₄ F ₃ N ₆ O 646.33	645	R _t : 1.52 (method M)	1(i)
55		C ₂₄ H ₂₃ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂ 598.37	598	Rt: 1.43 (method M)	1(i)
56		C ₂₆ H ₂₅ Cl ₃ F ₅ N ₅ O 624.87	624	R _t : 1.97 (method Q)	1(i)
57		C ₂₆ H ₂₇ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂ 626.43	626	R _t : 1.93 (method L)	1(i)

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
58		C ₃₂ H ₃₄ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O	632	R _t : 2.03 (method L)	1(i)
59		C ₂₅ H ₂₇ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O	576.87	R _t : 1.50 (method G)	5
60		C ₂₆ H ₂₂ Cl ₄ F ₃ N ₅ OS	651.37	R _t : 1.69 (method Q)	23
62		C ₂₂ H ₂₂ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O	500.34	R _t : 1.54 (method J)	71
63		C ₃₁ H ₃₀ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O	616.51	R _t : 2.00 (method L)	1(i)

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
64		C ₃₁ H ₃₁ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O	652.97	R _f : 2.05 (method L)	1(i)
65		C ₂₄ H ₂₄ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₆ O	597.39	R _f : 1.69 (method L)	1(i)
66		C ₂₆ H ₂₈ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O ₂	570.44	R _f : 1.81 (method L)	1(i)
67		C ₃₁ H ₂₉ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂	688.50	R _f : 2.04 (method L)	1(i)

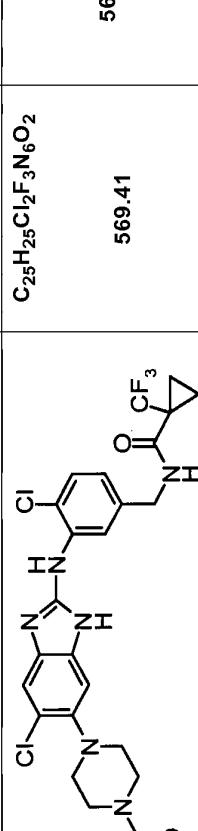
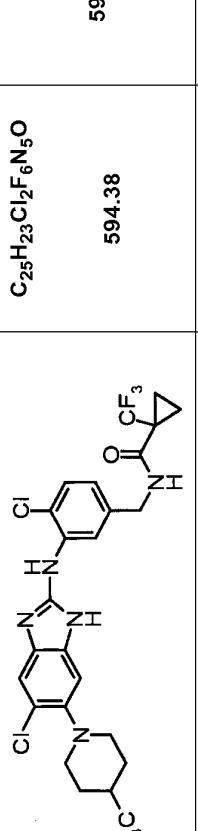
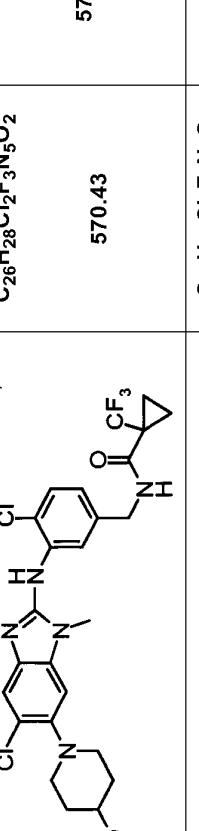
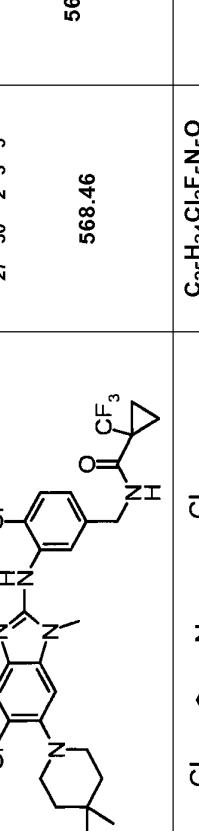
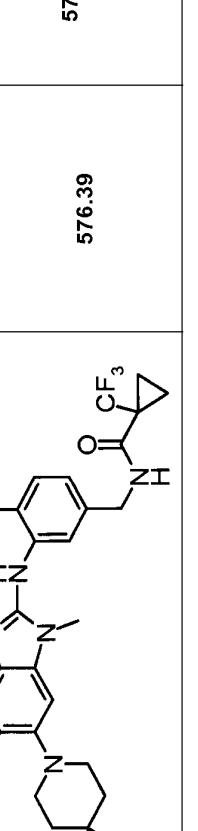
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
68		C ₂₈ H ₂₄ Cl ₄ F ₃ N ₅ O	645.34	R _t : 1.96 (method L)	1(i)
69		C ₂₉ H ₂₄ Cl ₂ F ₇ N ₅ O	662.44	R _t : 1.96 (method L)	1(i)
72		C ₂₅ H ₂₃ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O	594.38	R _t : 13.74 (method N)	71
73		C ₂₆ H ₂₇ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₆ O ₂	583.43	R _t : 11.03 (method N)	71

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
74		C ₂₅ H ₂₅ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₆ O ₂	569.41	569	R _f : 10.87 (method N) 71
75		C ₂₅ H ₂₃ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O	594.38	594	R _f : 13.70 (method N) 71
77		C ₂₆ H ₂₈ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O ₂	570.43	570	R _f : 9.55 (method O) 76
78		C ₂₇ H ₃₀ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O	568.46	568	Rt: 11.39 (method O) 76
79		C ₂₅ H ₂₄ Cl ₂ F ₅ N ₅ O	576.39	576	Rt: 10.59 (method O) 76

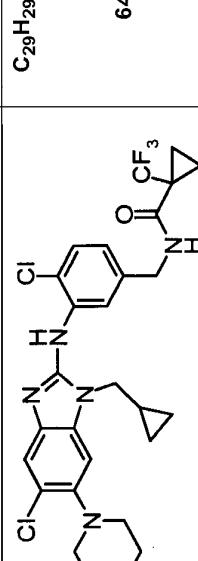
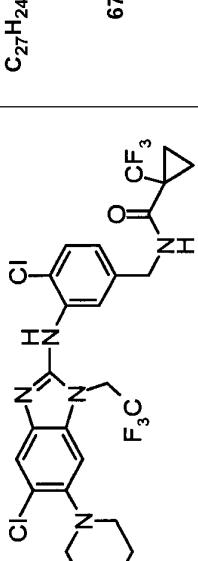
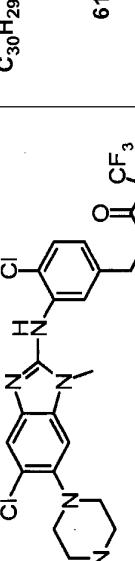
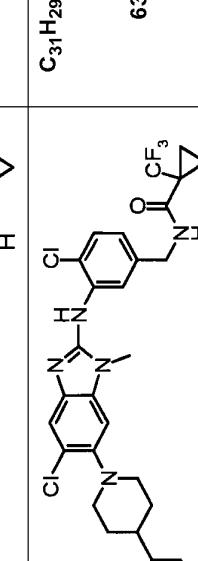
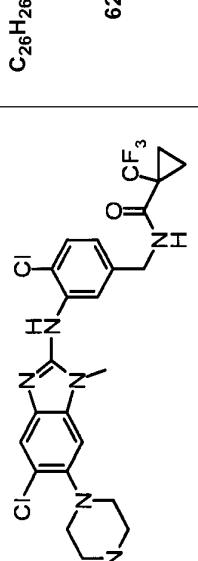
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
80		C ₂₉ H ₃₂ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₆ O	665.50	665	Rt: 10.67 (method O) 76
81		C ₂₈ H ₂₉ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂	652.46	652	Rt: 12.90 (method O) 76
85		C ₂₇ H ₂₉ ClF ₅ N ₅ O	570.00	570	Rt: 12.64 (method O) 84
87		C ₂₇ H ₃₀ ClF ₄ N ₅ O	552.01	552	Rt: 10.65 (method O) 86

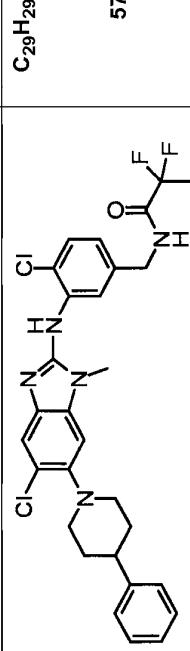
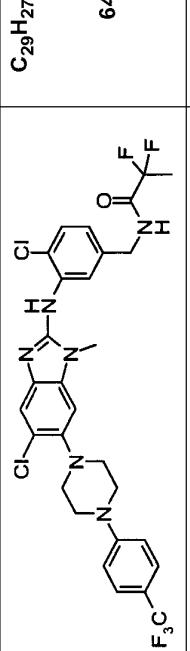
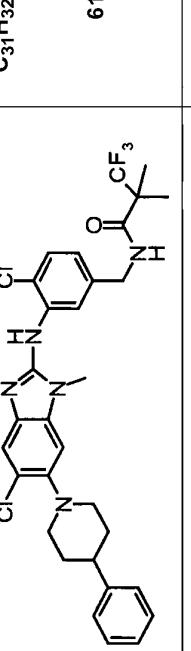
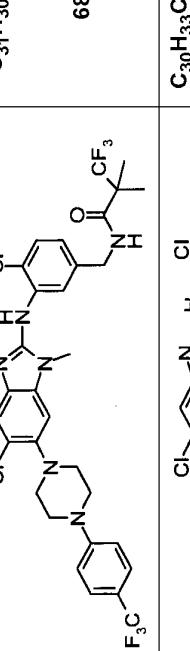
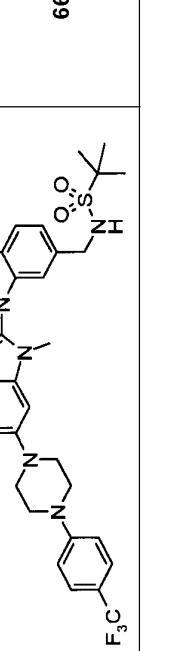
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
88		C ₂₉ H ₂₉ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O	648.47	Rt: 11.70 (method O)	76
89		C ₂₇ H ₂₄ Cl ₂ F ₉ N ₅ O	676.40	Rt: 13.07 (method O)	76
90		C ₃₀ H ₂₉ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₆ O	617	Rt: 11.23 (method O)	76
91		C ₃₁ H ₂₉ Cl ₂ F ₄ N ₅ O	617.49		
92		C ₂₆ H ₂₆ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₆ O	623.42	Rt: 10.85 (method O)	76

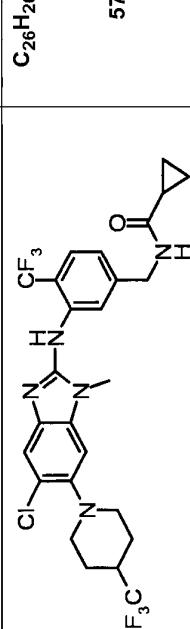
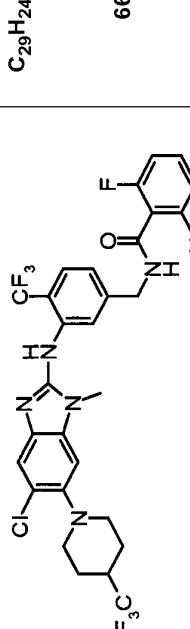
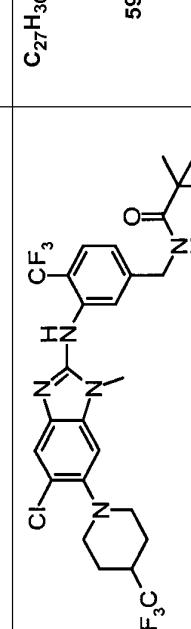
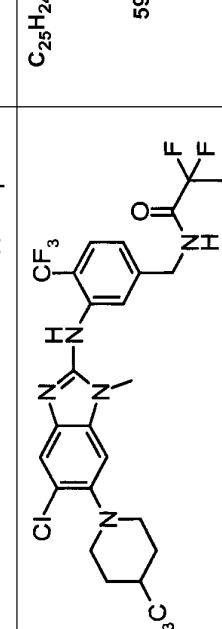
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
95		C ₂₉ H ₂₉ Cl ₂ F ₂ N ₅ O	572.48	572 Rt: 11.20 (method O)	94
96		C ₂₉ H ₂₇ Cl ₂ F ₅ N ₆ O	641.46	641 Rt: 12.00 (method O)	94
97		C ₃₁ H ₃₂ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O	618.52	618 Rt: 12.02 (method O)	94
98		C ₃₁ H ₃₀ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₆ O	687.51	687 Rt: 12.19 (method O)	94
100		C ₃₀ H ₃₃ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₆ O ₂ S	669.59	669 Rt: 12.12 (method O)	99

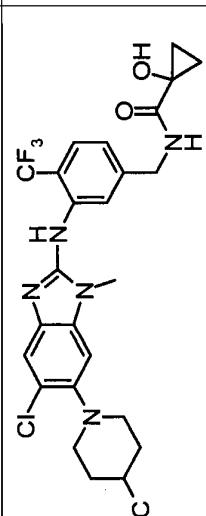
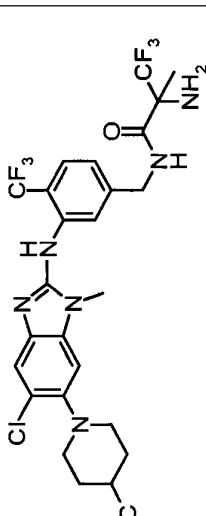
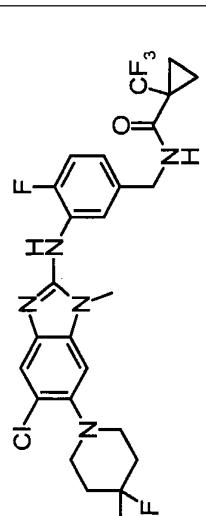
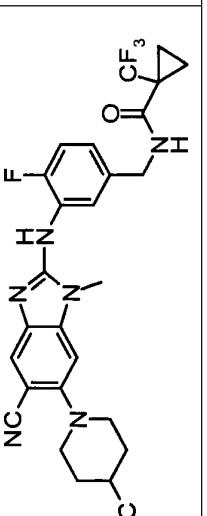
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
102		C ₂₆ H ₂₆ ClF ₆ N ₅ O	574	Rt: 10.53 (method O)	101
103		C ₂₉ H ₂₄ Cl ₂ F ₇ N ₅ O	662	Rt: 11.10 (method O)	101
104		C ₂₇ H ₃₀ ClF ₆ N ₅ O	590	Rt: 11.03 (method O)	101
106		C ₂₅ H ₂₄ ClF ₈ N ₅ O	598	Rt: 11.23 (method O)	105

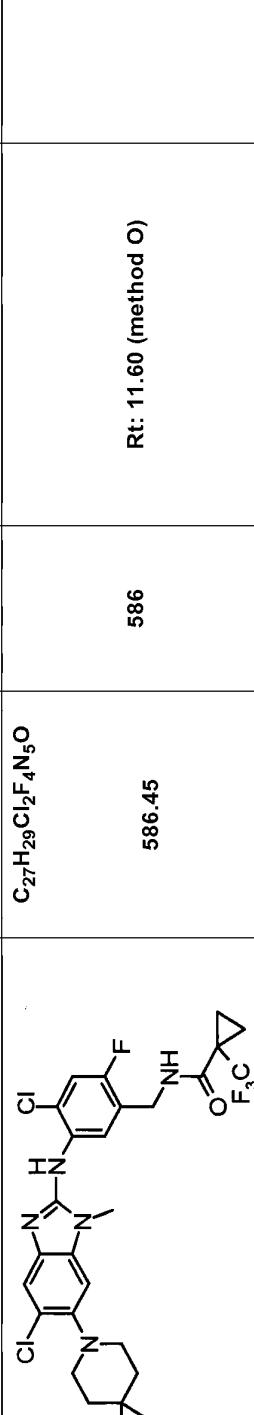
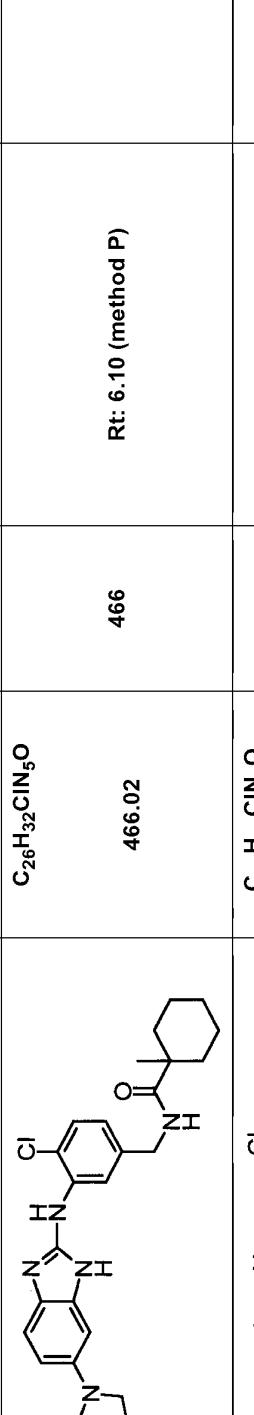
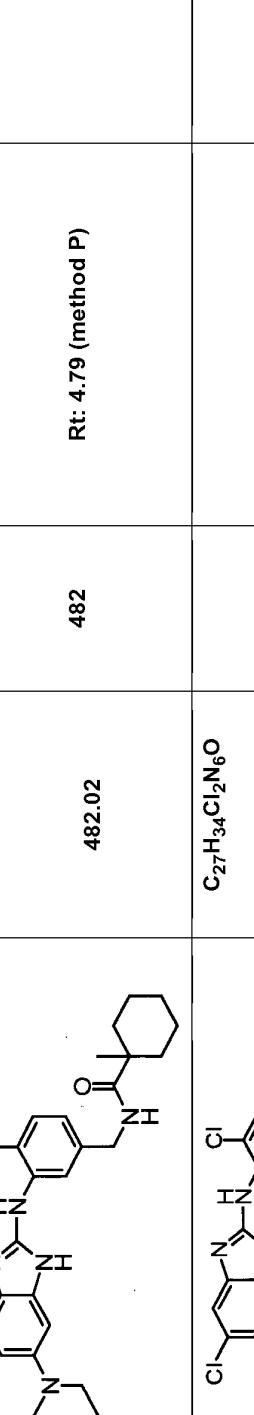
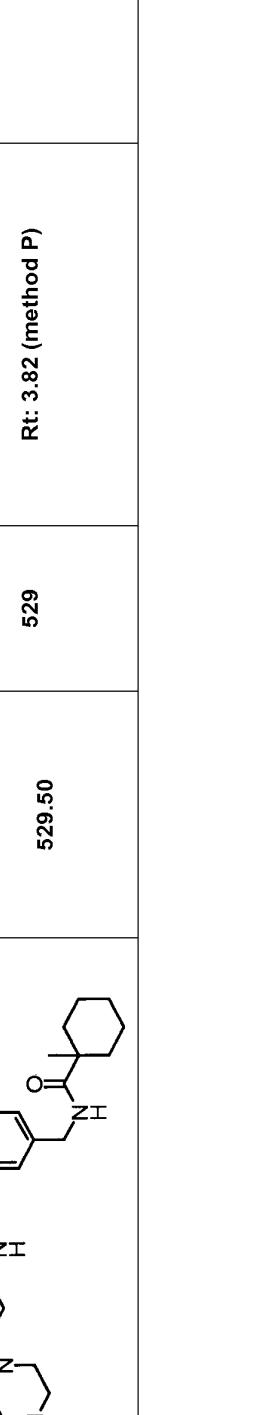
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
107		C ₂₆ H ₂₂ ClF ₆ N ₅ O ₂	589.96	590	Rt: 10.50 (method O) 105
108		C ₂₆ H ₂₂ ClF ₉ N ₆ O	644.96	645	Rt: 11.27 (method O) 105
112		C ₂₅ H ₂₄ ClF ₆ N ₅ O	559.93	560	Rt: 10.48 (method O) 111
113		C ₂₇ H ₂₅ F ₇ N ₆ O	582.52	583	Rt: 10.82 (method O) 111

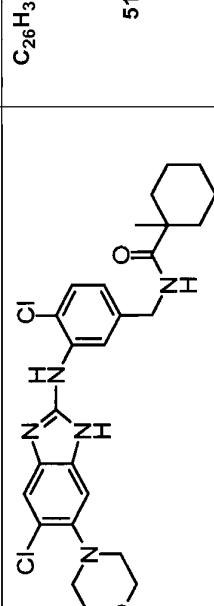
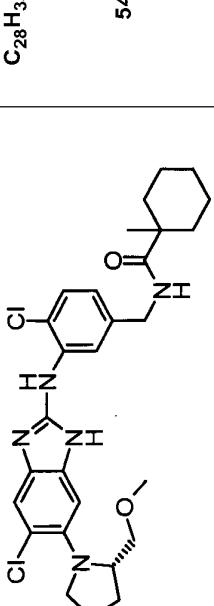
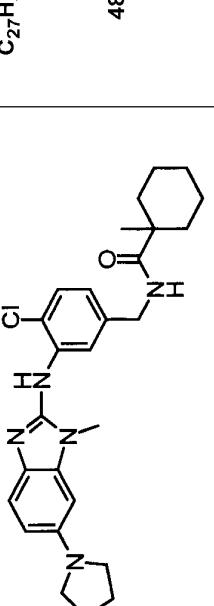
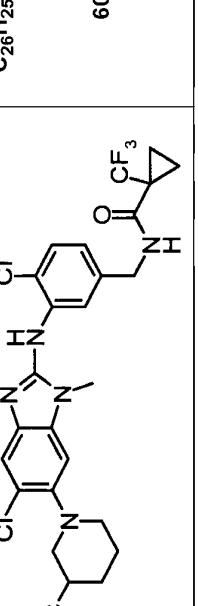
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
115		C ₂₇ H ₂₉ Cl ₂ F ₄ N ₅ O	586	Rt: 11.60 (method O)	114
118		C ₂₆ H ₃₂ ClN ₅ O	466.02	Rt: 6.10 (method P)	71
119		C ₂₆ H ₃₂ ClN ₅ O ₂	482.02	Rt: 4.79 (method P)	71
120		C ₂₇ H ₃₄ Cl ₂ N ₆ O	529.50	Rt: 3.82 (method P)	71

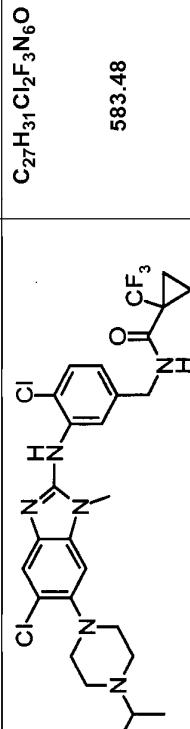
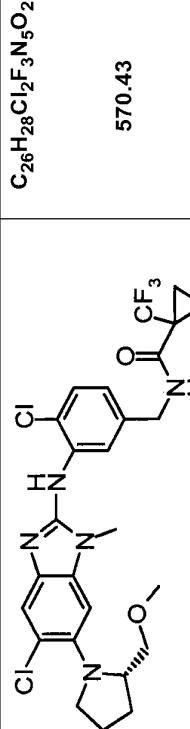
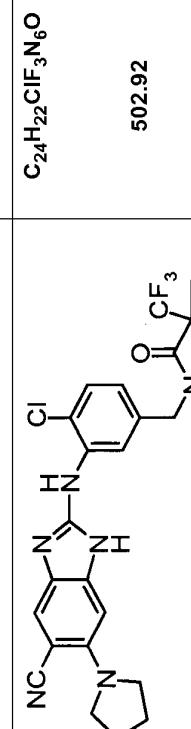
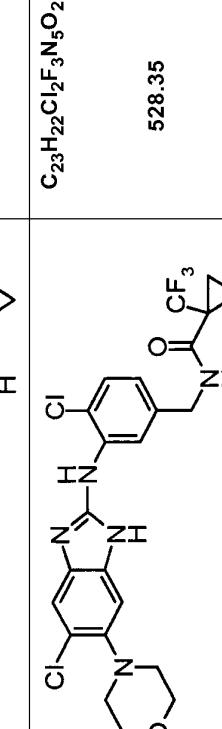
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
121		C ₂₆ H ₃₁ Cl ₂ N ₅ O ₂	516.46	516	Rt: 11.62 (method N) 71
122		C ₂₈ H ₃₅ Cl ₂ N ₅ O ₂	544.52	544	Rt: 12.50 (method N) 71
123		C ₂₇ H ₃₄ ClN ₅ O	480.04	480	Rt: 12.25 (method N) 71
124		C ₂₆ H ₂₅ Cl ₂ F ₆ N ₅ O	608.41	608	Rt: 14.02 (method N) 71

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
125		C ₂₇ H ₃₁ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₆ O	583.48	583	Rt: 9.35 (method N) 71
126		C ₂₆ H ₂₈ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O ₂	570.43	570	Rt: 12.52 (method N) 71
127		C ₂₄ H ₂₂ ClF ₃ N ₆ O	502.92	503	Rt: 11.84 (method N) 71
128		C ₂₃ H ₂₂ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₅ O ₂	528.35	528	Rt: 11.28 (method N) 71

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

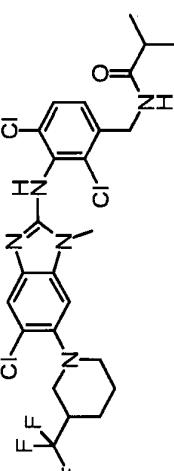
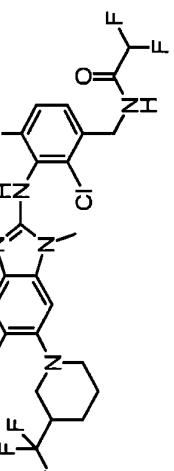
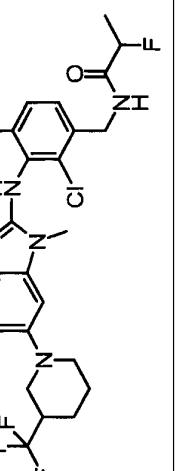
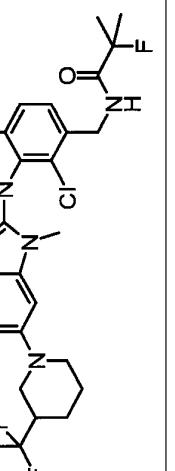
55

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC- method)	Prepared in analogy to example
129		C ₂₄ H ₂₅ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₆ O	541.40	541	Rt: 8.90 (method N) 71
130		C ₂₆ H ₂₃ ClF ₆ N ₆ O	584.94	585	Rt: 13.92 (method N) 82
131		C ₂₆ H ₂₇ Cl ₂ F ₃ N ₆ O	567.433	567	Rt: 1.39 (method G) 82
132		C ₂₄ H ₂₅ ClF ₃ N ₅ O	491.94	492	Rt: 12.00 (method N) 9(f)
134		C ₂₄ H ₂₅ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O	562.85	562	Rt: 1.62 (method Q) 23

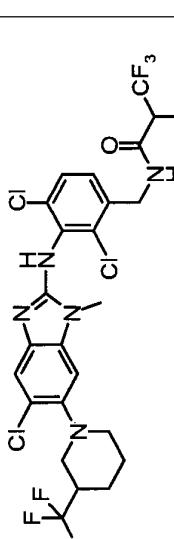
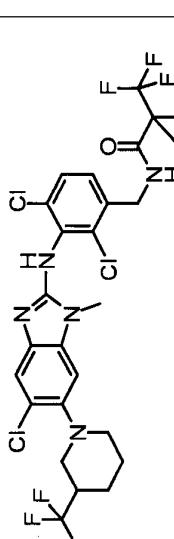
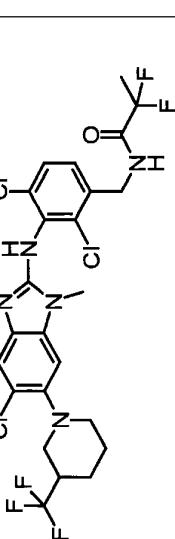
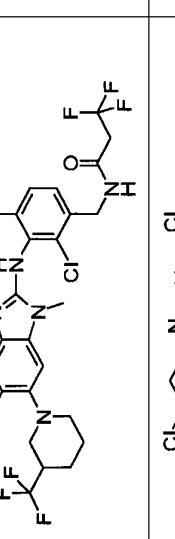
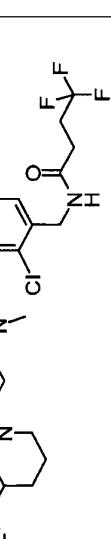
(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
135		C ₂₅ H ₂₇ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O	576.88	576 Rt: 1.66 (method Q)	23
136		C ₂₃ H ₂₁ Cl ₃ F ₅ N ₅ O	584.8	584 Rt: 1.61 (method Q)	23
137		C ₂₄ H ₂₃ Cl ₃ F ₄ N ₅ O	580.84	580 Rt: 1.62 (method Q))	23
138		C ₂₅ H ₂₆ Cl ₃ F ₄ N ₅ O	594.87	594 Rt: 1.65 (method Q)	23

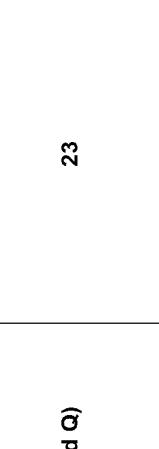
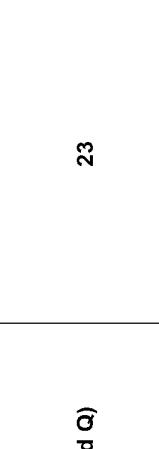
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
139		C ₂₅ H ₂₂ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O	630.85	630	Rt: 1.69 (method Q) 23
140		C ₂₆ H ₂₃ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O	644.87	644	Rt: 1.72 (method Q) 23
141		C ₂₄ H ₂₃ Cl ₃ F ₅ N ₅ O	598.83	598	Rt: 1.64 (method Q) 23
142		C ₂₄ H ₂₂ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O	616.82	616	Rt: 1.65 (method Q) 23
143		C ₂₅ H ₂₂ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O	630.85	630	Rt: 1.68 (method Q) 23

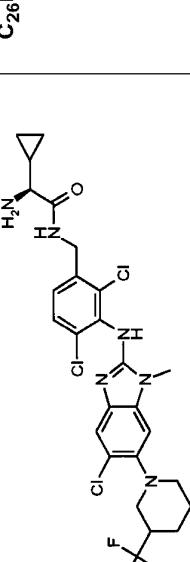
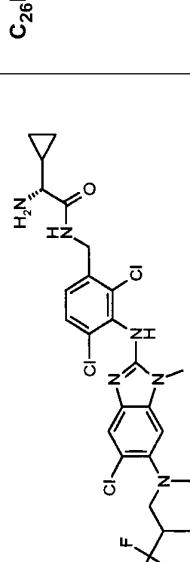
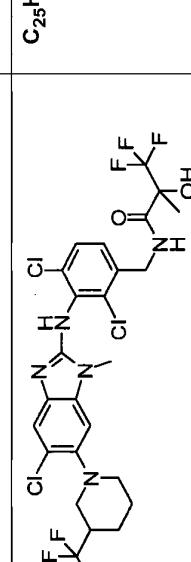
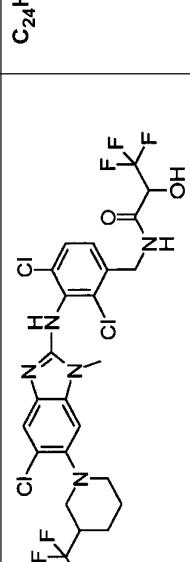
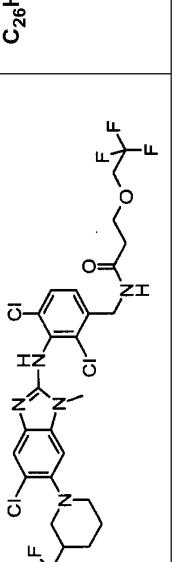
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
144		C ₂₇ H ₃₁ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O	604	Rt: 1.73 (method Q)	23
145		C ₂₆ H ₂₈ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	601.89	Rt: 1.63 (method Q)	23
146		C ₂₄ H ₂₆ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	577.86	Rt: 1.40 (method Q)	23
147		C ₂₅ H ₂₅ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₆ O	645.86	Rt: 1.57 (method Q)	23
148		C ₂₄ H ₂₅ Cl ₃ F ₄ N ₆ O	595.85	Rt: 1.41 (method Q)	23

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
149		C ₂₆ H ₂₈ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	603.9	Rt: 1.42 (method Q)	23
150		C ₂₆ H ₂₈ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	603.9	Rt: 1.42 (method Q)	23
151		C ₂₅ H ₂₄ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂	646.84	Rt: 1.66 (method Q)	23
152		C ₂₄ H ₂₂ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂	632.82	Rt: 1.63 (method Q)	23
153		C ₂₆ H ₂₆ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂	660.87	Rt: 1.67 (method Q)	23

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

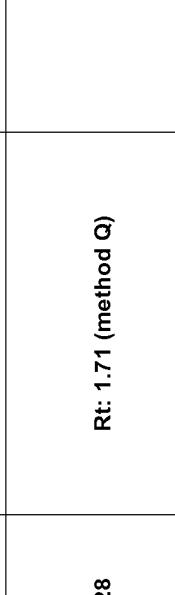
(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
154		C ₂₆ H ₂₆ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O ₂ 660.87	660	Rt: 1.68 (method Q)	23
155		C ₂₅ H ₂₅ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O 574.86	574	Rt: 1.64 (method Q)	23
156		C ₂₆ H ₂₇ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O 588.89	588	Rt: 1.68 (method Q)	23
157		C ₂₆ H ₂₄ Cl ₃ F ₆ N ₅ O 642.86	642	Rt: 1.70 (method Q)	23
158		C ₂₅ H ₂₅ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₅ O ₂ 590.86	590	Rt: 1.61 (method Q)	23
159		C ₂₅ H ₂₆ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O 589.87	589	Rt: 1.40 (method Q)	23

(continued)

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
165		C ₂₅ H ₂₆ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	589.87	Rt: 1.40 (method Q)	23
166		C ₂₅ H ₂₆ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	589.87	Rt: 1.40 (method Q)	23
167		C ₂₈ H ₂₄ Cl ₃ F ₄ N ₅ O	628.88	Rt: 1.67 (method Q)	23
168		C ₂₈ H ₂₃ Cl ₄ F ₄ N ₅ O	663.33	Rt: 1.67 (method Q)	23
169		C ₂₈ H ₂₄ Cl ₃ F ₄ N ₅ O	628.88	Rt: 1.71 (method Q)	23

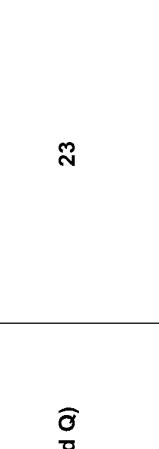
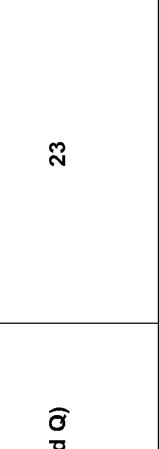
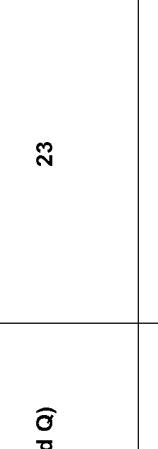
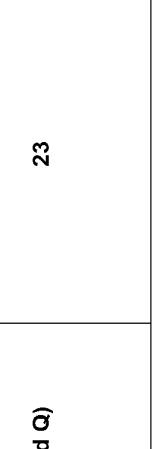
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
170		C ₂₈ H ₂₃ Cl ₃ F ₅ N ₅ O	646.87	646 Rt: 1.74 (method Q)	23
171		C ₂₈ H ₂₄ Cl ₃ F ₄ N ₅ O	628.88	628 Rt: 1.71 (method Q)	23
172		C ₂₇ H ₂₄ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	611.88	611 Rt: 1.60 (method Q)	23
173		C ₂₇ H ₂₃ Cl ₄ F ₃ N ₆ O	646.33	645 Rt: 1.63 (method Q)	23
174		C ₂₇ H ₂₃ Cl ₃ F ₄ N ₆ O	629.87	629 Rt: 1.62 (method Q)	23

(continued)

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC-method)	Prepared in analogy to example
175		C ₂₈ H ₂₆ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	625	Rt: 1.67 (method Q)	23
176		C ₂₇ H ₂₄ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	611	Rt: 1.65 (method Q)	23
177		C ₂₇ H ₂₃ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ O	629	Rt: 1.66 (method Q)	23
178		C ₂₅ H ₂₂ Cl ₃ F ₃ N ₆ OS	617	Rt: 1.64 (method Q)	23
179		C ₂₆ H ₂₃ Cl ₄ F ₃ N ₆ O	633	Rt: 1.69 (method Q)	23

(continued)

Ex.	Structure	Formula/ Mw.	MS* m/z [M+H] ⁺	Rf (TLC) or Rt [min] (HPLC- method)	Prepared in analogy to example
180		C ₂₅ H ₂₂ Cl ₄ F ₃ N ₇ O	634	Rt: 1.66 (method Q)	23

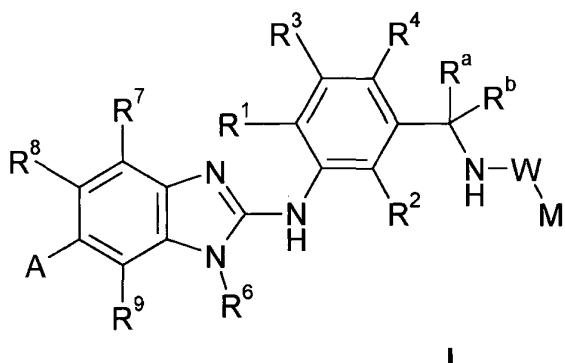
Claims

1. A compound of formula I

5

10

15



I

in which

20

R¹ represents halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₂₋₆ alkynyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, =O, -OH, -OCH₃, -OCF₃;

25

R², R³ and **R⁴** independently represent hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, =O, -OH, -OCH₃, -OCF₃;

30

R^a and **R^b** independently represent hydrogen, C₁₋₃ alkyl which is optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms, or both together with the carbon atom which they are bound to, form a C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl ring, or a 4-6 membered heterocycloalkyl ring which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms;

35

W represents -C(O)-, -S(O)-, -S(O)₂-, -C(O)O-, -C(O)NR^d- which groups are bound to the nitrogen of the -NH-moiety via carbon or sulfur atom;

40

R^d represents hydrogen, C₁₋₃ alkyl;

45

M represents C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₂₋₈ alkynyl, C₃₋₈ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₄ alkyl-, 4-10 membered heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₄ alkyl- which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, =O, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂, azetidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, [which latter seven alkyl groups can be substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -OH, -CN, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl (which latter alkyl group is optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)], aryl, heteroaryl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl (which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)],

or

aryl, heteroaryl which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, aryl, heteroaryl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl (which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)], C₁₋₇ alkyl, C₂₋₇ alkynyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, 4-7 membered heterocycloalkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, -O-C₀₋₂alkyl-aryl, -SC₁₋₃ alkyl, (which latter alkyl, alkynyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl or cycloalkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, =O, -NH₂, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂, -OH, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl);

R⁶ represents hydrogen, C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₆ alkynyl, 4-7 membered heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl or C₃₋₇cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, =O, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OH, -NH₂, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂);

R⁷, R⁸ and **R⁹** independently represent hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl-, C₁₋₅ alkyl-O-, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl-O- (in which latter four groups the alkyl and cycloalkyl fragments are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CN, -OH, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl or by one or more C₁₋₃ alkyl groups which are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms);

A represents -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹, or a 4-10-membered heterocycloalkyl group which is bound to the benzimidazole through a nitrogen atom, and which is optionally substituted by one or more substituents R¹²;

R¹⁰ and **R¹¹** independently represent C₁₋₇ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₄ alkyl- or C₄₋₇ heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₄ alkyl- [which latter three groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, NH₂, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₅ alkyl, -OC₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, -OC₄₋₆ heterocycloalkyl (which latter six groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CF₃, -CHF₂, -CH₂F,

-CH₃],

or

aryl-C₀₋₄ alkyl-, heteroaryl-C₀₋₄ alkyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, C₁₋₃ alkyl-O-, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-O- (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)];

each R¹² independently represents halo, -OH, -NH₂, =O, -CN, C₁₋₄ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl-, C₄₋₅ heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl-, C₁₋₄ alkyl-O-, C₁₋₃ alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂ [which latter six groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, oxo, -NH₂, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₃₋₅ cycloalkyl [which latter five groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, -CF₃, -CHF₂, -CH₂F]],

or

aryl-C₀₋₄ alkyl- " heteroaryl-C₀₋₄ alkyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, C₁₋₃ alkyl-O-, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-O- (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)];

15

or a salt thereof, particularly a physiologically acceptable salt thereof.

2. A compound according to claim 1, wherein

20 R¹ represents halo, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms.

3. A compound according to claim 1 or 2, wherein

25 R³ and R⁴ independently represent hydrogen, halo.

4. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein

30 M represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₂₋₆ alkynyl, C₃₋₈ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁ alkyl-, oxetanyl-, tetrahydrofuranyl-, azetidinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-, piperidinyl- or one of the following heterocyclic groups



35 all of which groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl [which latter four alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro],

40 phenyl, imidazolyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₂ alkyl, OC₁₋₂alkyl (which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)],

45 or phenyl, naphthyl, furanyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, quinolynyl which latter twelve groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, aryl, heteroaryl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃],

C₁₋₂alkyl, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms],

50 C₂₋₃ alkynyl, -O-C₀₋₂alkyl-phenyl [in which latter group the phenyl is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃].

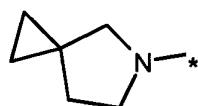
5. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein

55 R⁷ and R⁹ independently represent hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms.

6. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein

A represents -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹, or
azetidinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-, piperidinyl-, morpholinyl-, piperazinyl- or

5



all of which heterocyclic groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents R¹² and annulated to a phenyl or a 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, while the above mentioned groups are bonded to the benzimidazole core through a nitrogen atom;

R¹⁰ and R¹¹ independently represent C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁ alkyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, C₁₋₃ alkyl],
or

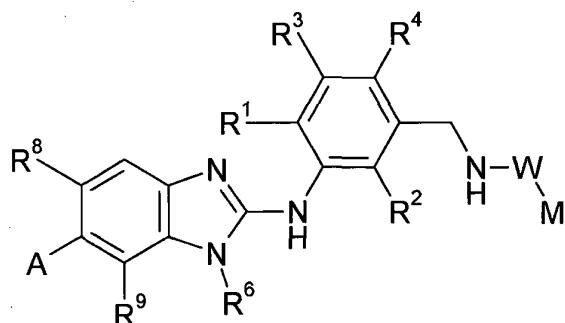
aryl-C₀₋₁ alkyl- optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₁₋₃ alkyl-O- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms];

each R¹² independently represents halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₄ alkyl, C₁₋₂ alkyl-O-, C₁₋₂ alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂ [which latter five groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, CF₃, CHF₂ or CH₂F)],
or

phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo or C₁₋₃ alkyl which is optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms.

25 7. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, namely a compound of formula Ia

30



Ia

40

in which

R¹ represents halo, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms;

45 R² represents hydrogen, halo, C₁₋₃ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms;

R³ and R⁴ independently represent hydrogen, halo;

W represents -C(O)-, -S(O)₂-, -C(O)O- which groups are bound to the nitrogen of the -NH- moiety via carbon or sulfur atom;

50 M represents C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₂₋₆ alkynyl, C₃₋₈ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁ alkyl-, oxetanyl-, tetrahydrofuranyl-, azetidinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-, piperidinyl- or one of the following heterocyclic groups

55



all of which groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from

fluoro, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl, [which latter four alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms], phenyl, imidazolyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₂ alkyl, OC₁₋₂alkyl (which latter two alkyl groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)],

5 or

phenyl, naphthyl, furanyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, quinolynyl which latter twelve groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, aryl, heteroaryl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃],

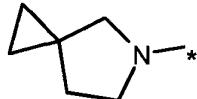
10 C₁₋₂alkyl, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms], C₂₋₃ alkynyl, -O-C₀₋₂alkyl-phenyl [in which latter group the phenyl is optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃];

R⁶ represents hydrogen, C₁₋₅ alkyl or C₃₋₇cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -OC₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃ alkyl)₂];

15 R⁸ represents hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₅ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂ alkyl- (in which latter two groups the alkyl and cycloalkyl fragments are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms, or by one or more C₁₋₃ alkyl groups which are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms)

R⁹ represents hydrogen, halo, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluorine atoms;

20 A represents -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹, or azetidinyl-, pyrrolidinyl-, piperidinyl-, morpholinyl-, piperazinyl- or



25 all of which heterocyclic groups can optionally be substituted by one or more substituents R¹² and optionally annulated to a phenyl or a 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, whereby the above mentioned groups are bonded to the benzimidazole core through a nitrogen atom;

30 R¹⁰ and R¹¹ independently represent C₁₋₅ alkyl or C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁ alkyl- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from: fluoro, -OH, C₁₋₃ alkyl],

or

aryl-C₀₋₁ alkyl- which can be substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₁₋₃ alkyl-O- [which latter two groups are optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms];

35 each R¹² independently represents halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₄ alkyl, C₁₋₂ alkyl-O-, C₁₋₂ alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂ [which latter five groups are optionally substituted by one or more groups selected from fluoro, -OH, C₁₋₃ alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂ alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂ alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂ alkyl, (which latter four groups are optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from fluoro, CF₃, CHF₂ or CH₂F)],

or

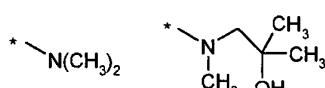
40 phenyl optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from halo or C₁₋₃ alkyl which is optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms.

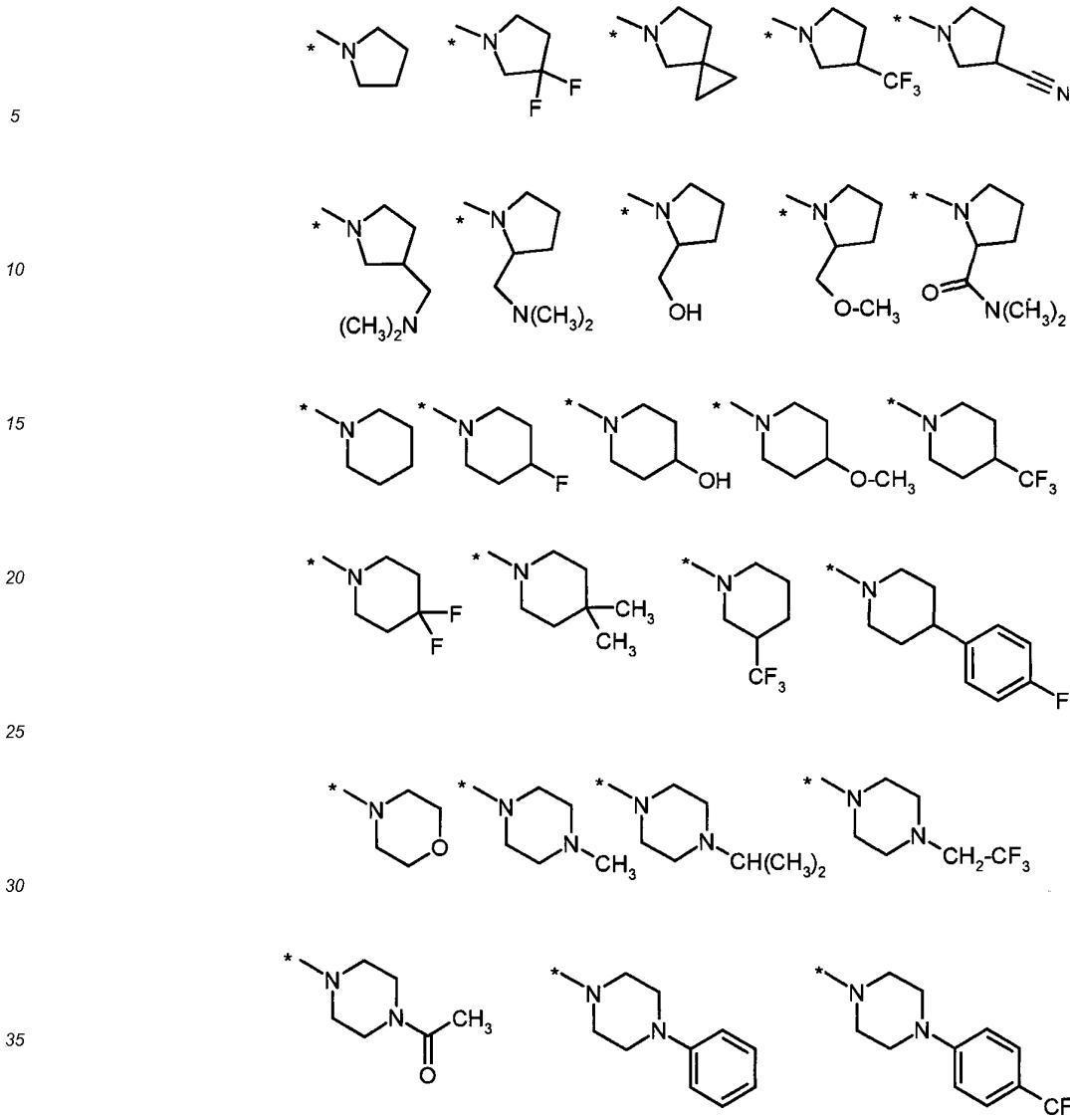
8. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein

45 R⁸ represents hydrogen, fluoro, chloro, CF₃, -CN.

9. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein

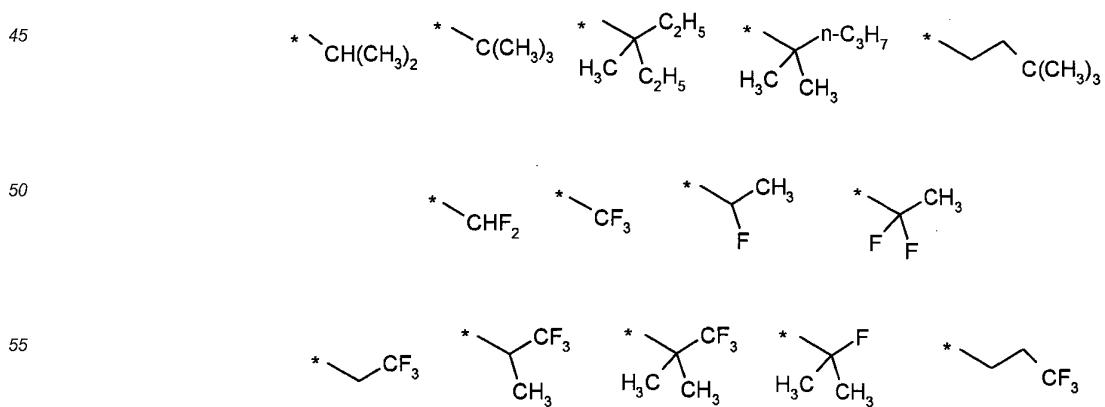
A represents a group selected from

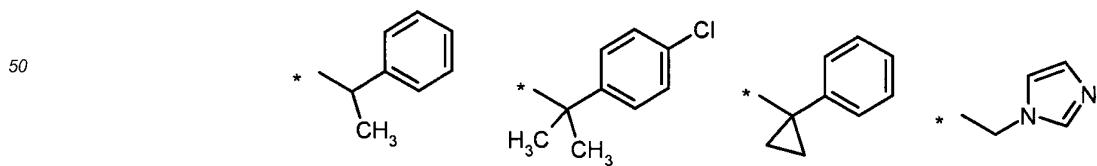
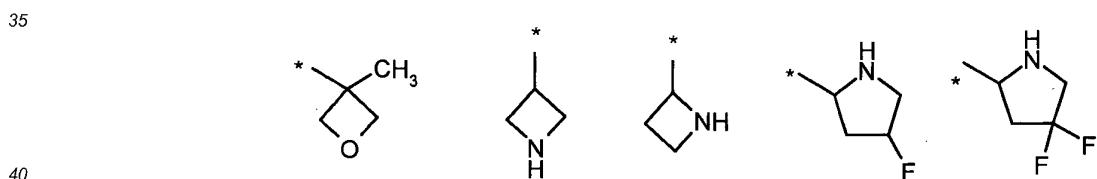
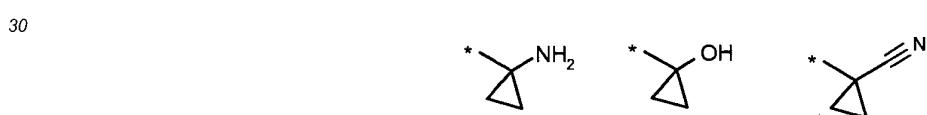
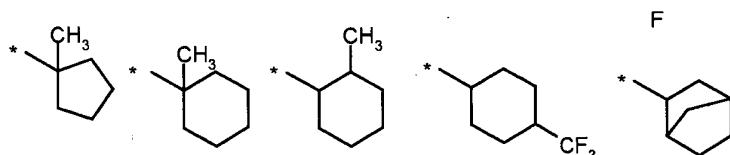
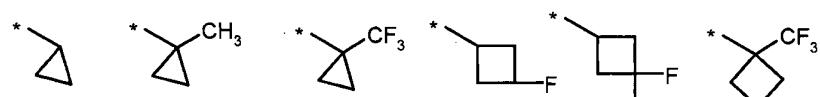
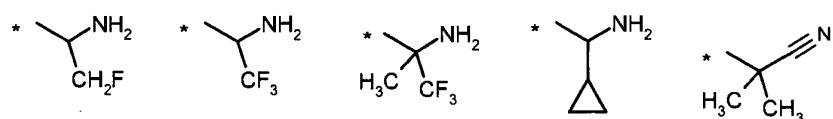
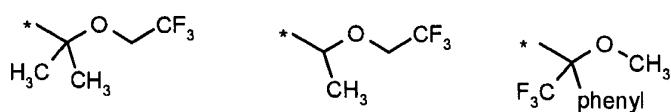
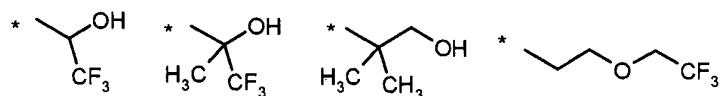




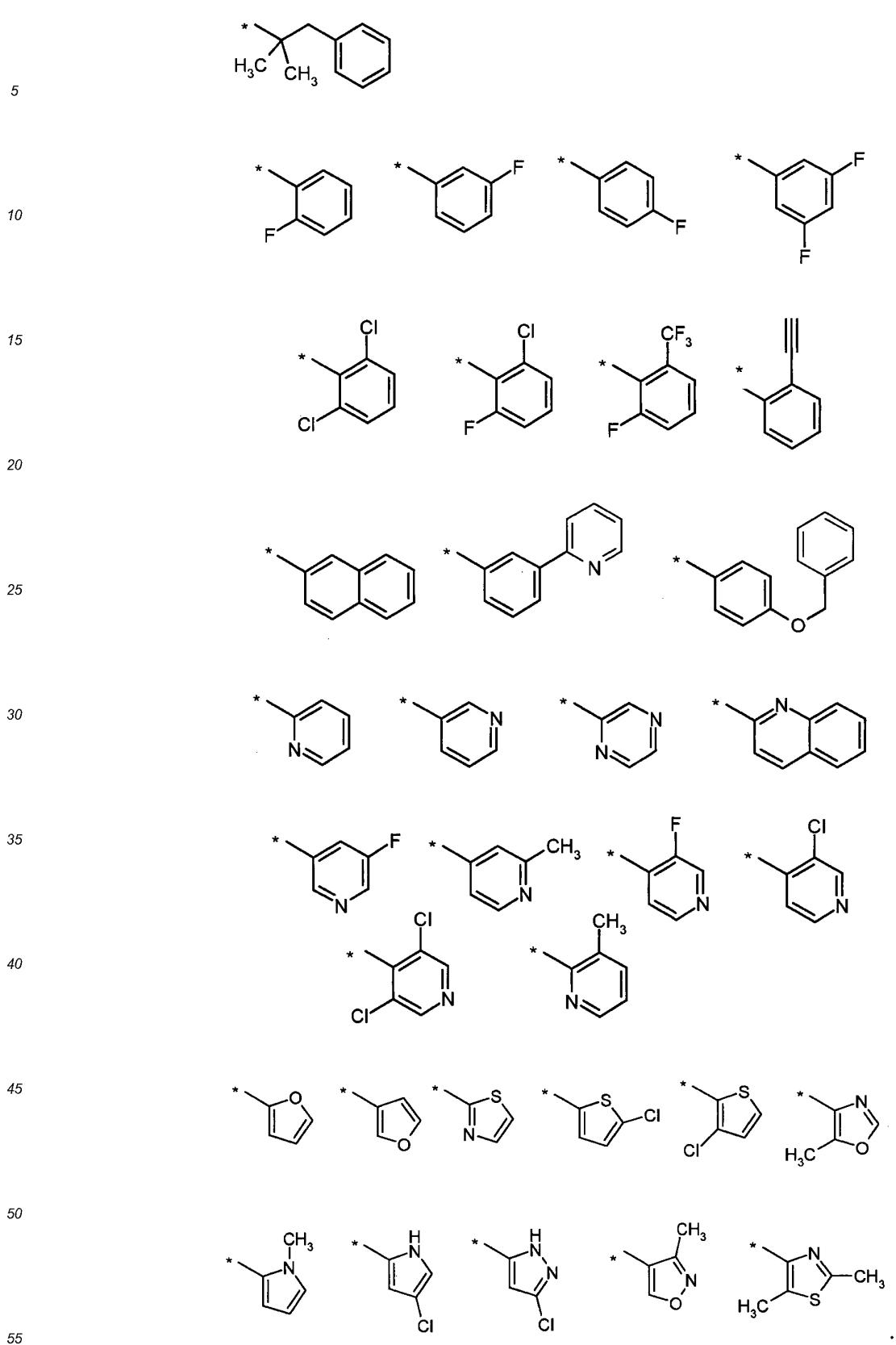
40 10. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein

M represents a group selected from

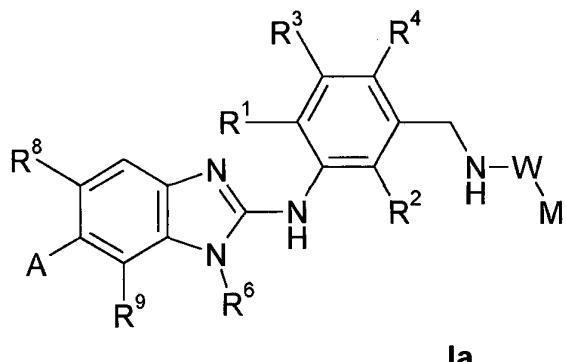




55



11. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, namely a compound of formula Ia



15 in which

R¹ represents fluoro, chloro, CH₃, CHF₂, CH₂F, CF₃ or -OCF₃;

R² represents hydrogen, fluoro or chloro;

R³ and R⁴ independently represent hydrogen, fluoro;

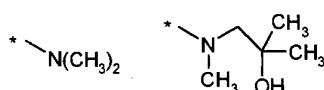
R⁶ represents hydrogen, -CH₃, -CH₂CF₃, cyclopropylmethyl-, -CH₂CH₂-O-CH₃, -CH₂CH₂-N(CH₃)₂;

R⁸ represents hydrogen, fluoro, chloro, CF₃, -CN;

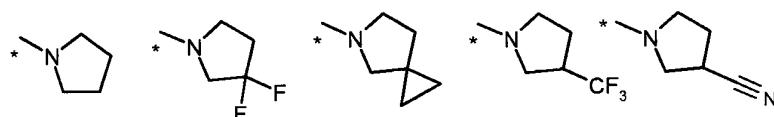
R⁹ represents hydrogen, fluoro;

A represents a group selected from

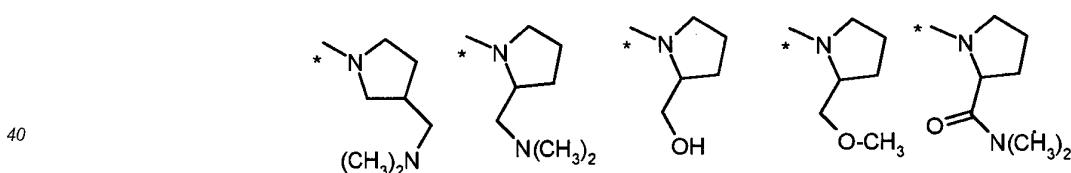
25



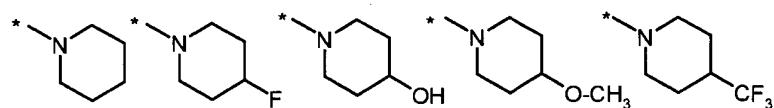
30



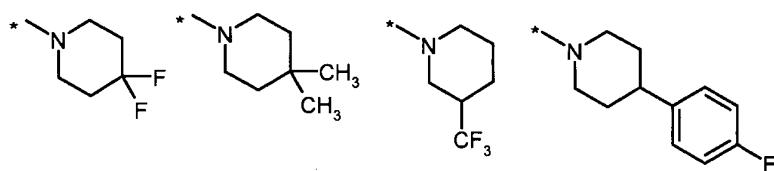
35



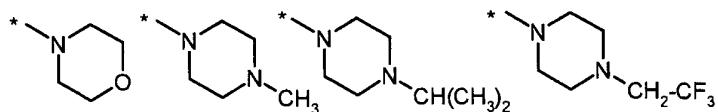
45



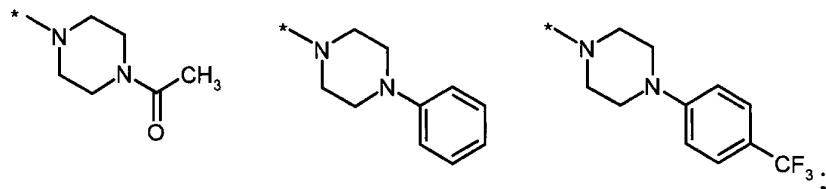
50



55

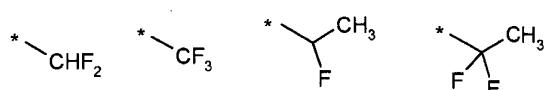
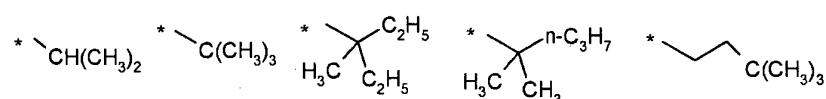


5

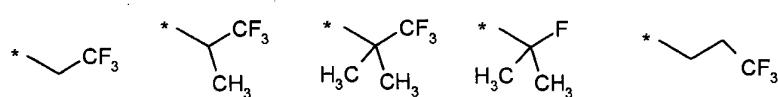


15

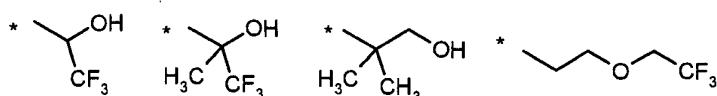
W represents -C(O)-, -S(O)₂- which groups are bound to the nitrogen of the -NH- moiety via carbon or sulfur atom;
M represents a group selected from



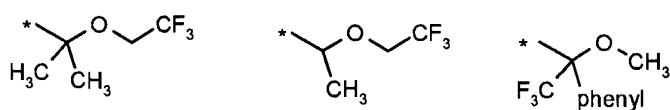
30



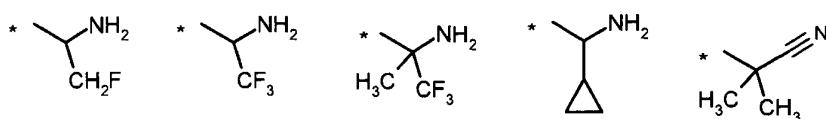
35



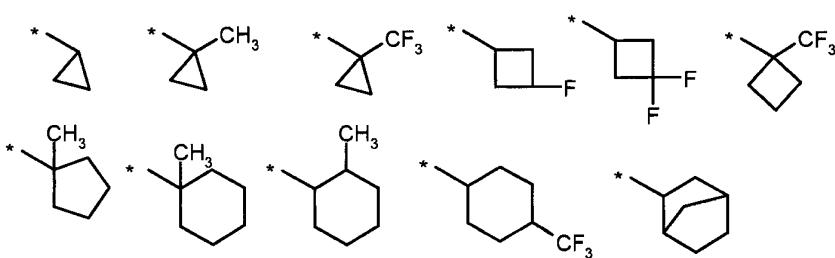
40

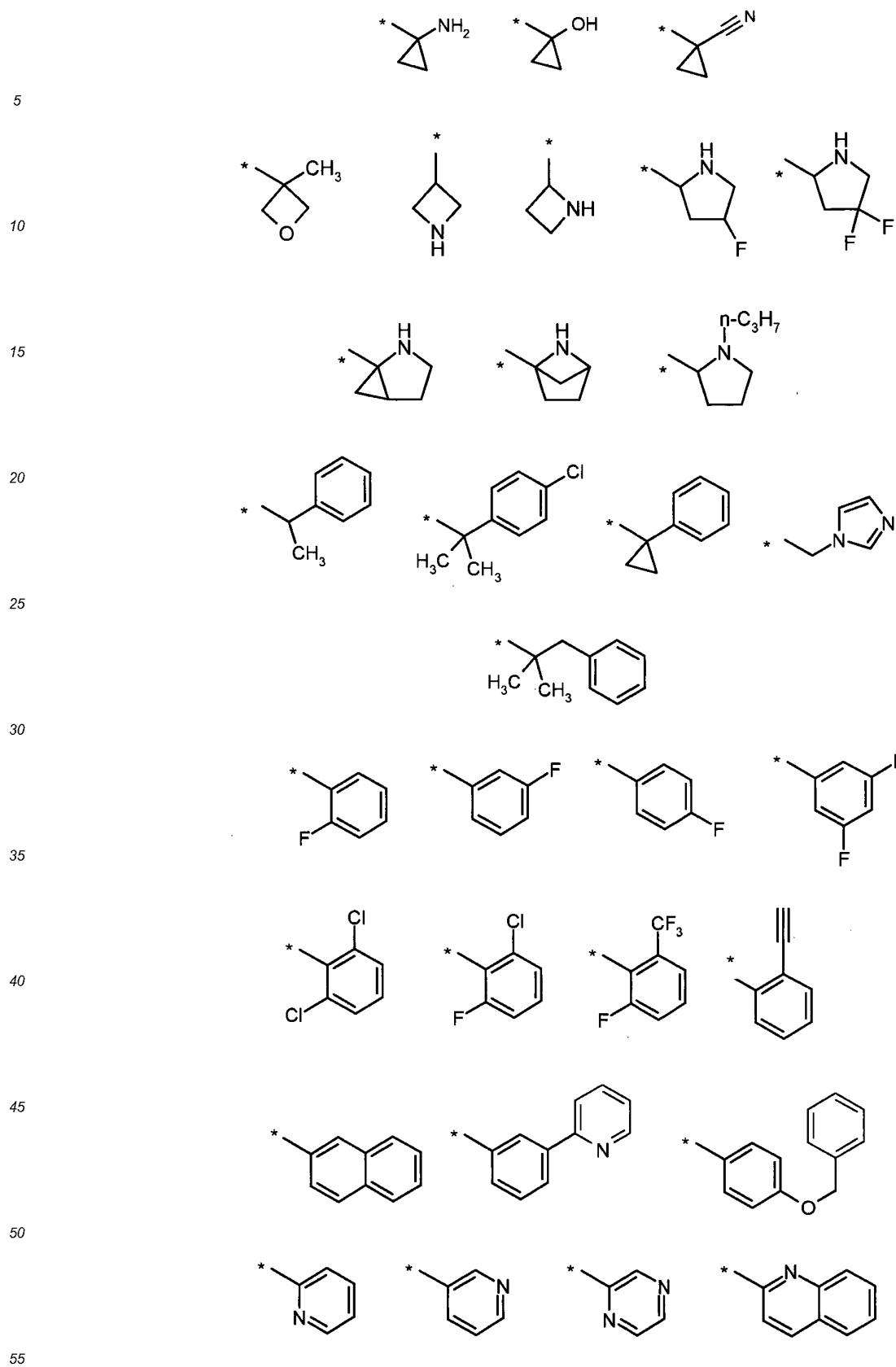


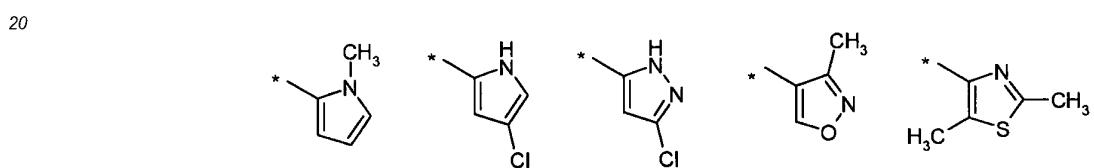
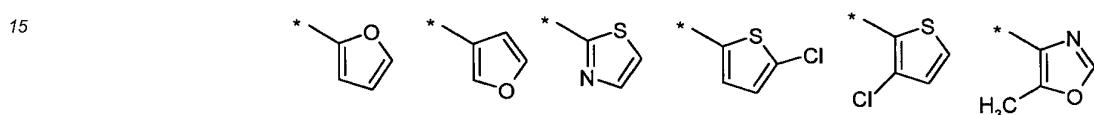
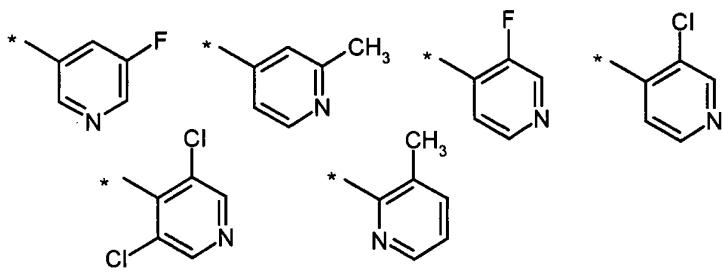
45



50







12. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims selected from the group consisting of

30

35

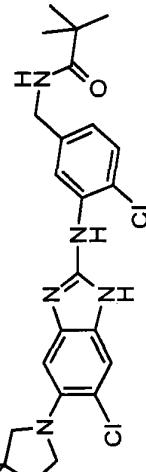
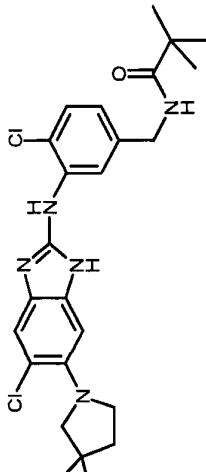
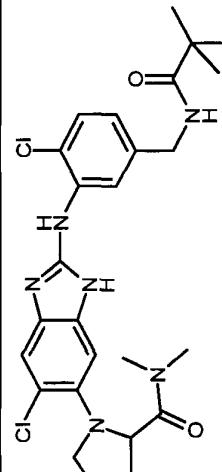
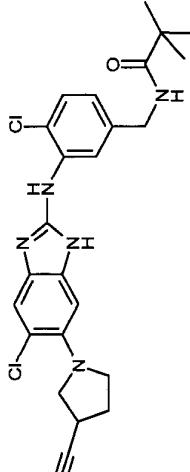
40

45

50

55

5

				
Structure	2	4	6	8
Structure	1	3	5	7

55

5

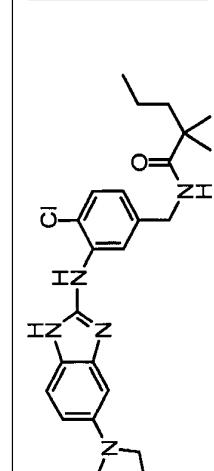
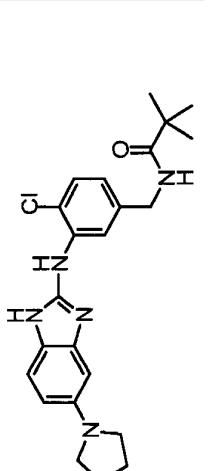
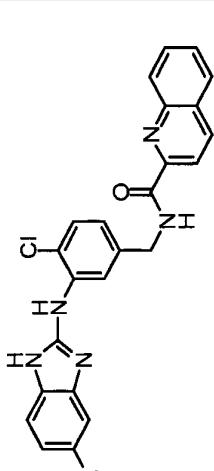
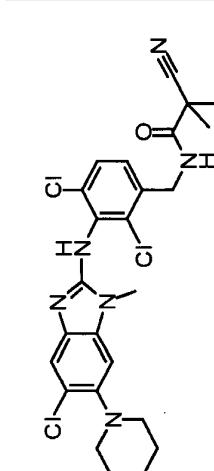
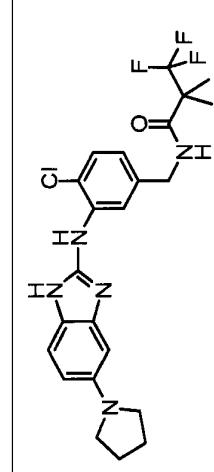
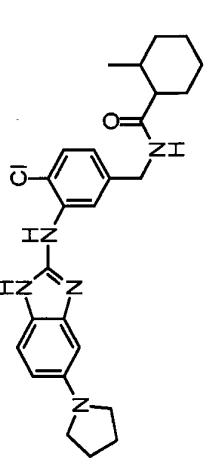
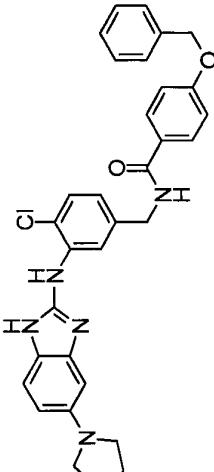
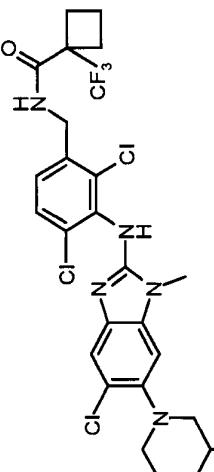
(continued)

10		12	14	16
9		11	13	15
50				

55

5

(continued)

	Structure			
10				
15				
20				
25				
30				
35	Structure			
40				
45				
50				
				
	17	19	21	23
	18	20	22	24

55

5

(continued)

	Structure 	Structure 	Structure 	Structure
10	26			
15				
20				
25				
30		28	30	32
35				
40	25	27	29	31
45				
50				

55

5

(continued)

	Structure				
10					
15					
20					
25					
30					
35					
40					
45					
50					
		34			
		36			
		38			
		40			
		42			

55

5

(continued)

	Structure				
10					
15		44			
20					
25		46			
30			48		
35					
40		43			
45					
50		45			
55					
		47			
			49		
		50			
			51		
		52			

55

5

(continued)

	Structure		
10			
15			
20			
25			
30			
35			
40			
45			
50			

55

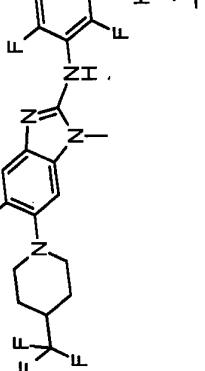
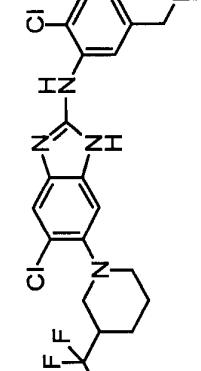
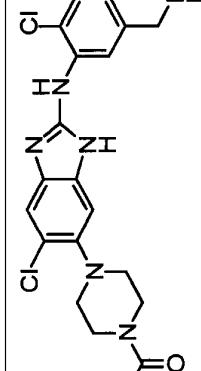
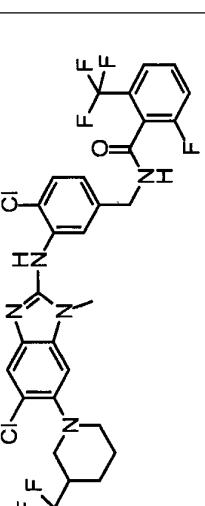
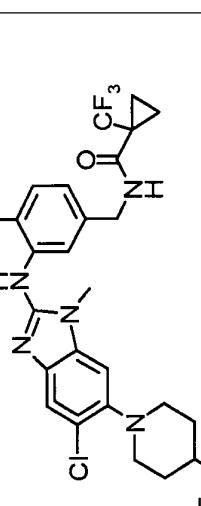
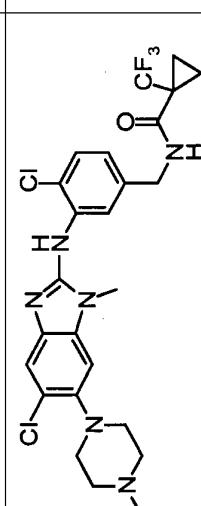
5

(continued)

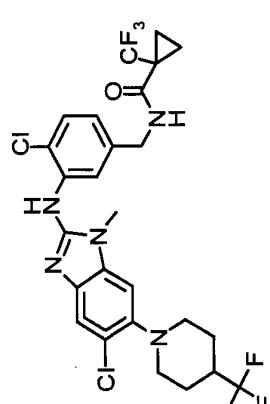
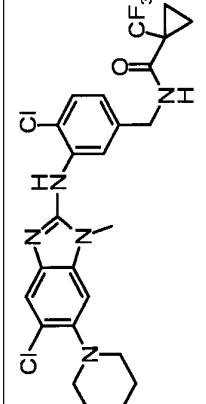
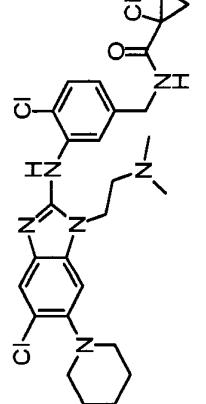
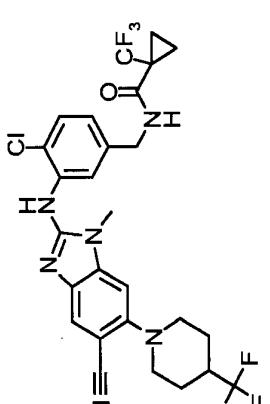
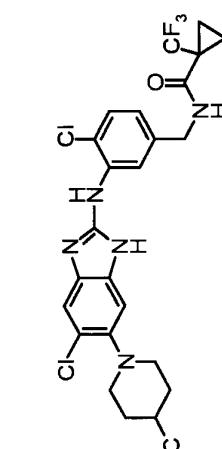
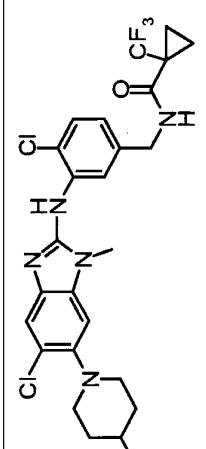
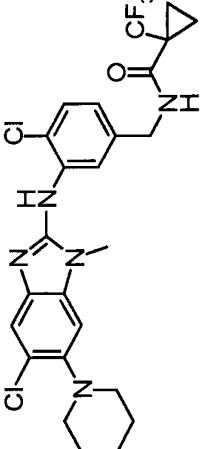
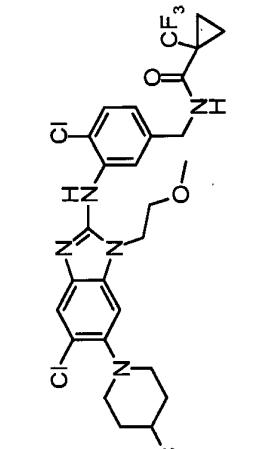
Structure	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68
Structure	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68

5

(continued)

Structure	70	72	74
			
			

(continued)

Structure			
	76		78
	80		82
	75		77
	79		81

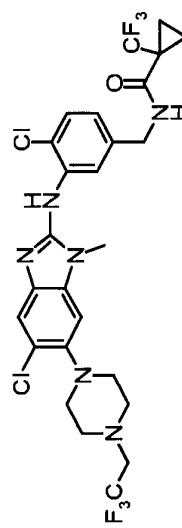
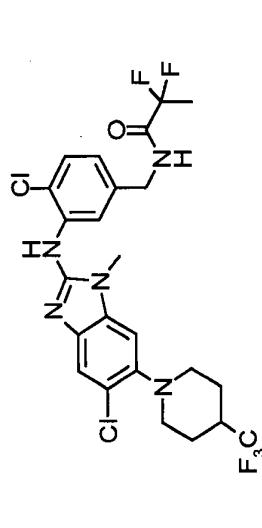
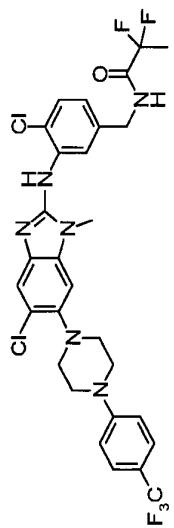
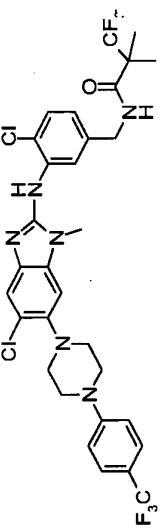
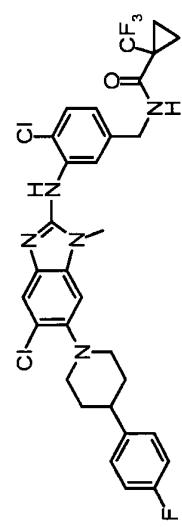
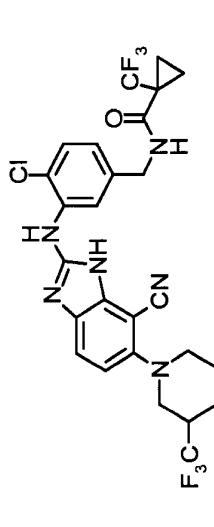
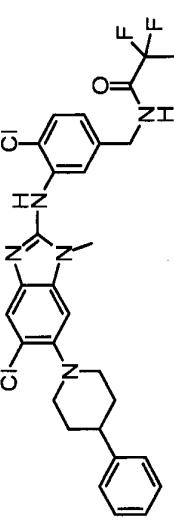
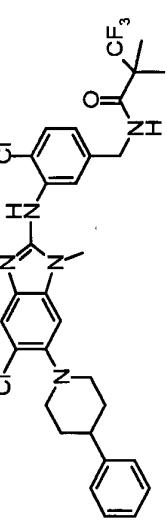
5

(continued)

Structure	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90

5

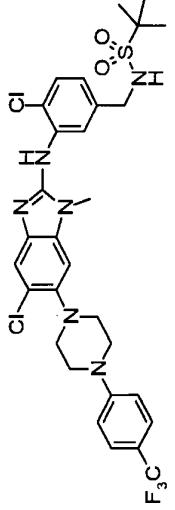
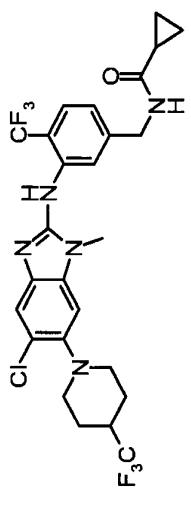
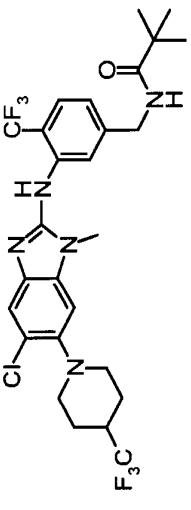
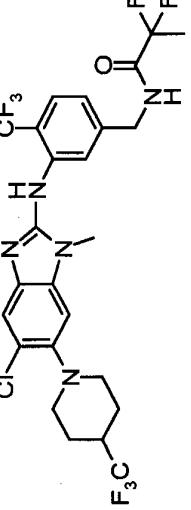
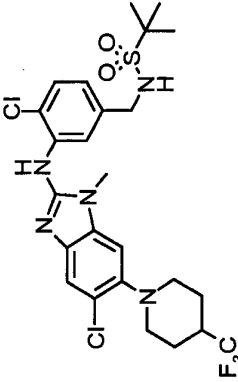
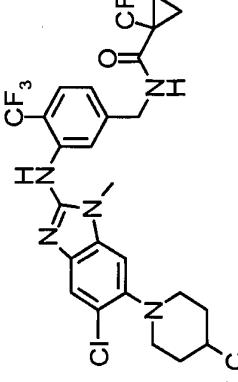
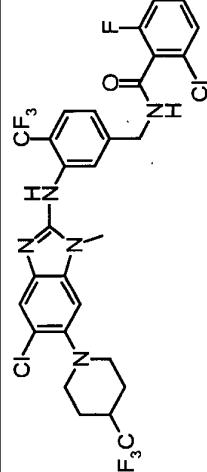
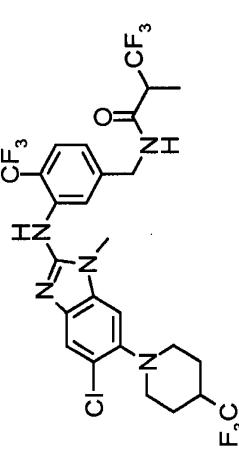
(continued)

	Structure				
10		92		94	
15					
20				96	
25					98
30					
35		91		93	
40					
45				95	
50					97

55

5

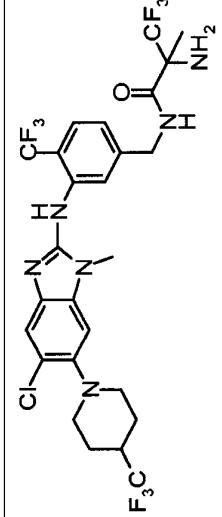
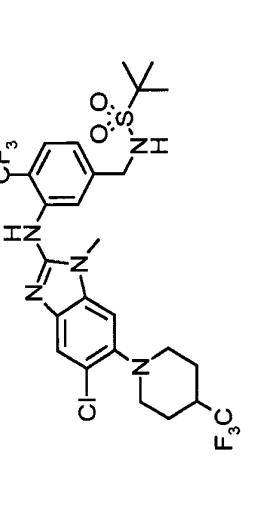
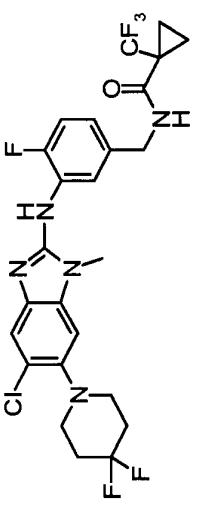
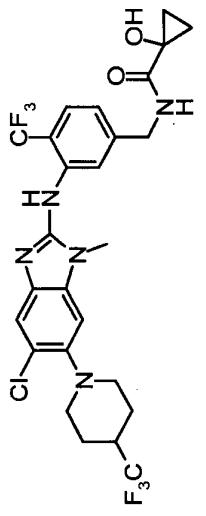
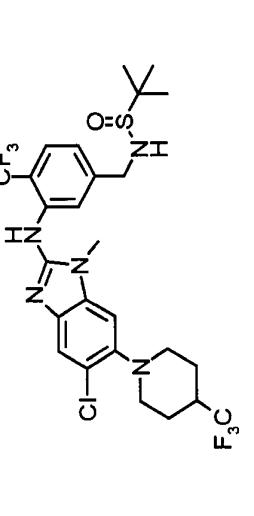
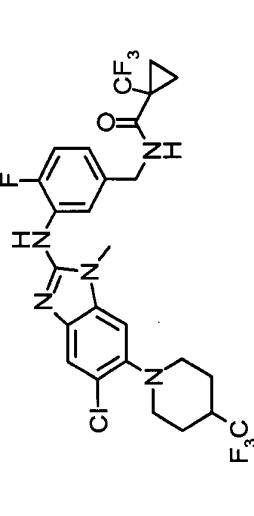
(continued)

	Structure		
10		100	
15		102	
20		104	
25		106	
30			
35		99	
40		101	
45		103	
50		105	

55

5

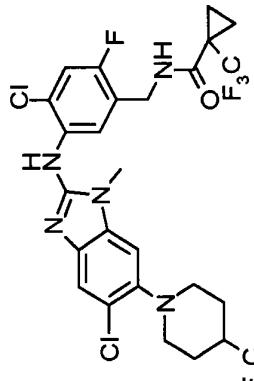
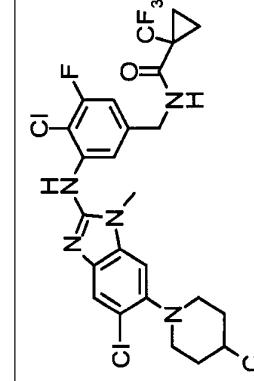
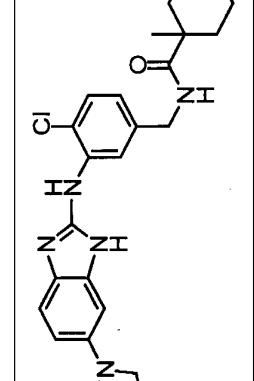
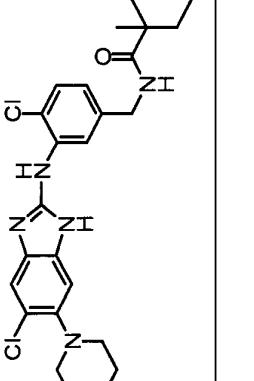
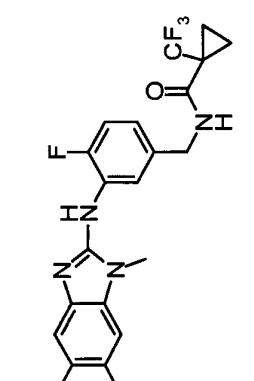
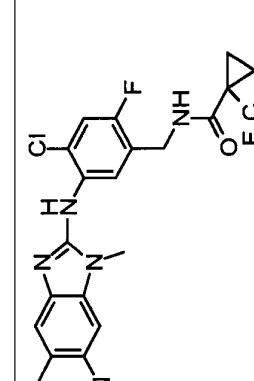
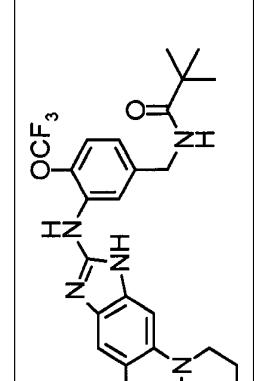
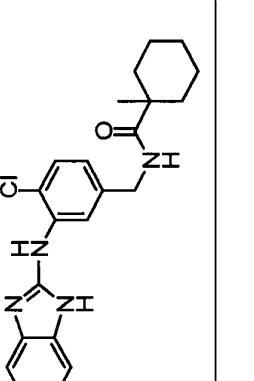
(continued)

10			
15			
20			
25			
30			
35			
40			
45			
50			
	Structure	Structure	Structure
	108	110	112
			
	107	109	111
			

55

5

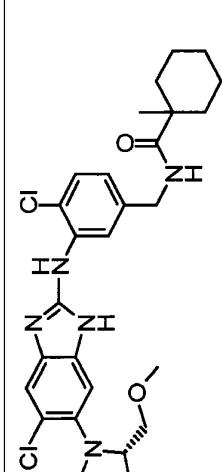
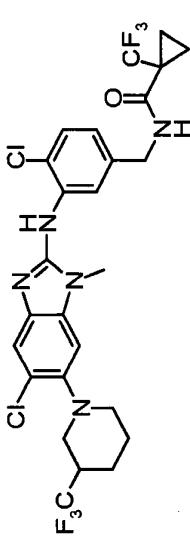
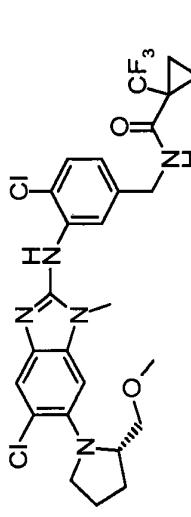
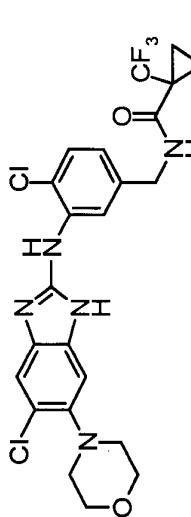
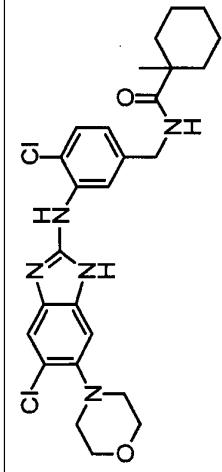
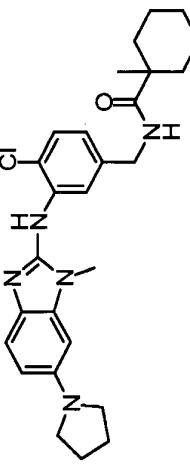
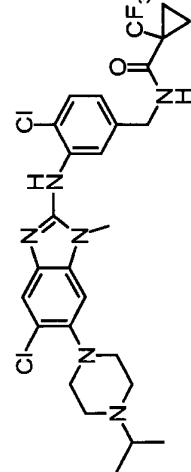
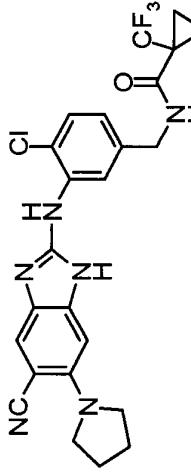
(continued)

Structure			
	114		116
	118		120
	113		115
	117		119

55

5

(continued)

	Structure			
10				
15				
20				
25				
30				
35	Structure			
40				
45				
50				
				
	121	123	125	127

55

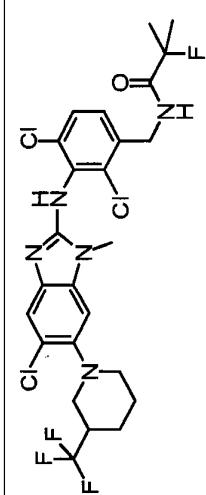
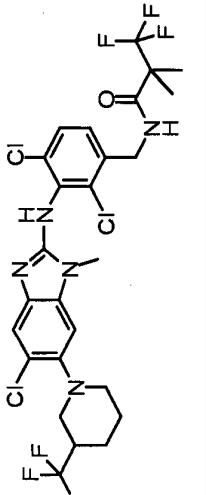
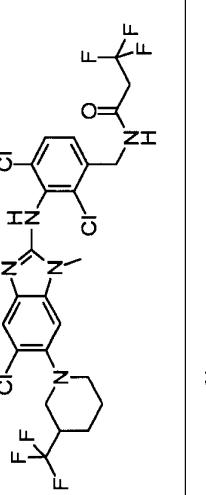
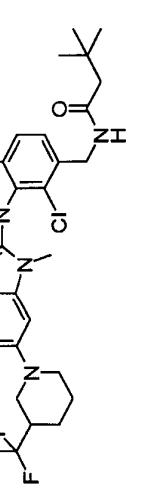
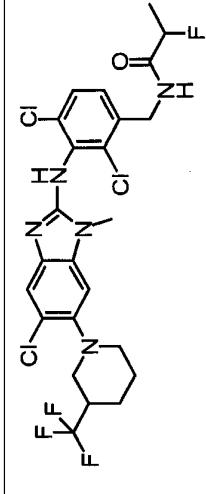
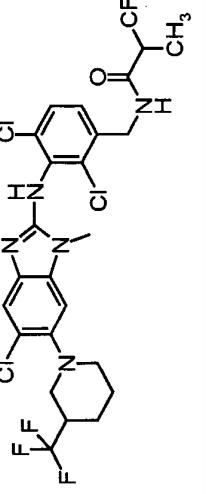
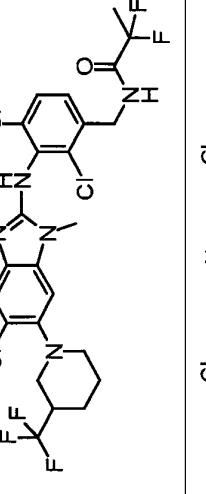
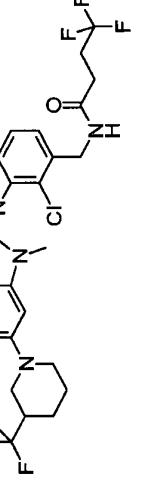
5

(continued)

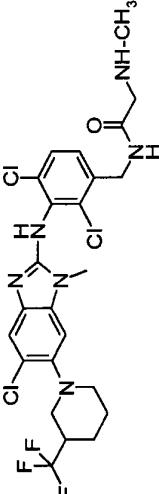
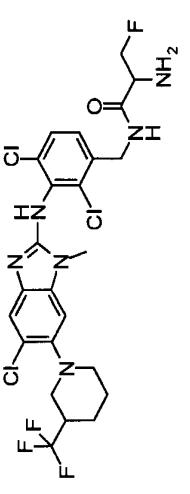
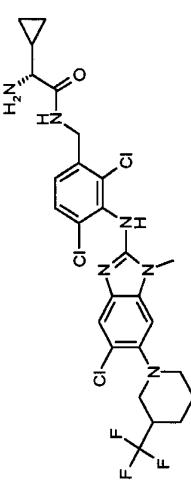
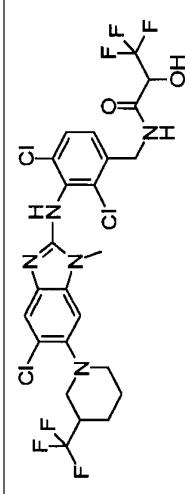
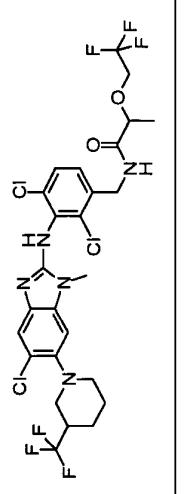
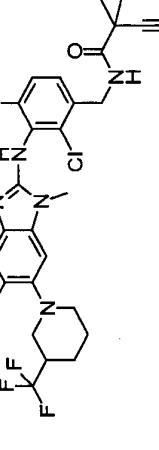
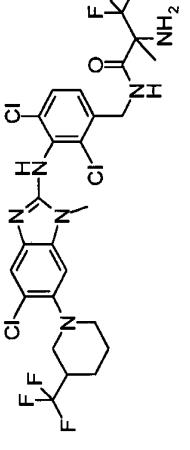
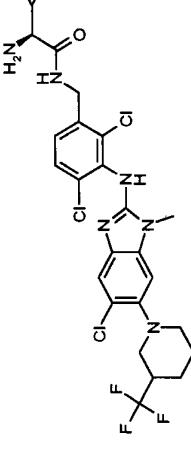
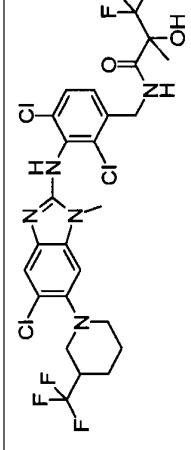
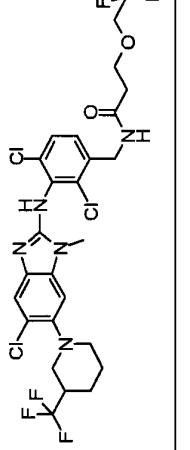
	Structure		Structure		Structure		Structure	
10		130		132		134		136
15		129		131		133		135
20								
25								
30								
35								
40								
45								
50								

55

(continued)

	Structure			
10				
15				
20				
25				
30				
35				
40				
45				
50	137	139	141	143

(continued)

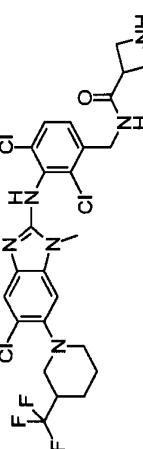
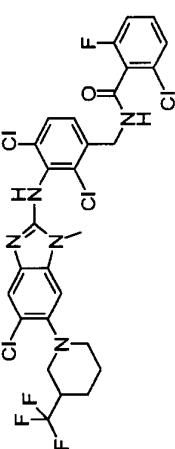
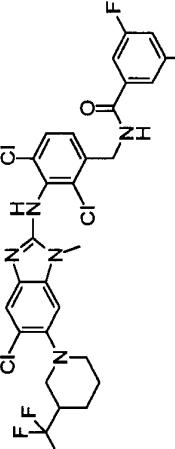
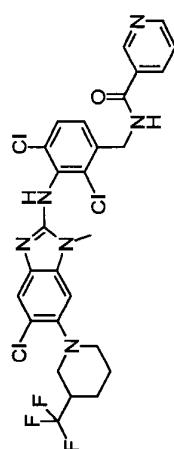
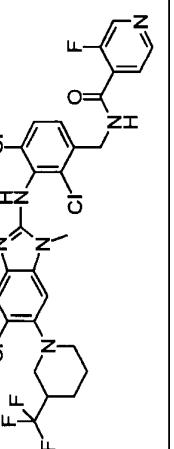
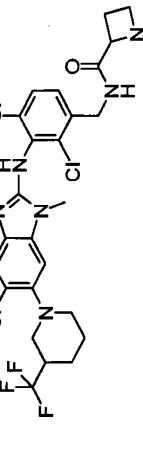
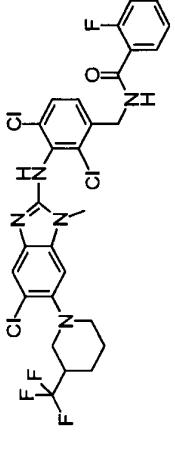
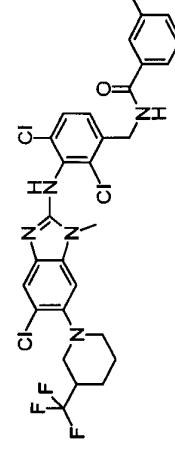
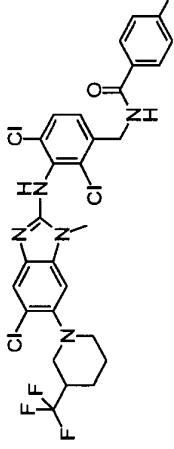
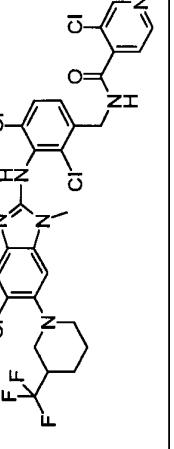
	Structure				
10		146			
15		148			
20		150			
25		152			
30		154			
35		145			
40		147			
45		149			
50		151			
		153			

(continued)

	Structure		Structure		Structure	
10		156		158		160
15		155		157		161
20		162		163		164
25						
30						
35						
40						
45						
50						

5

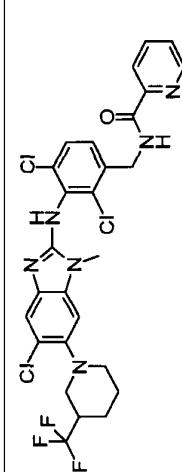
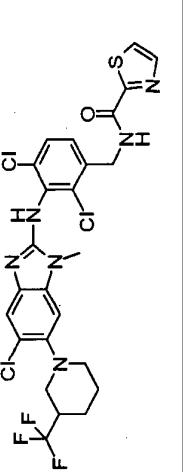
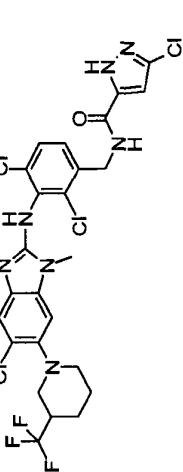
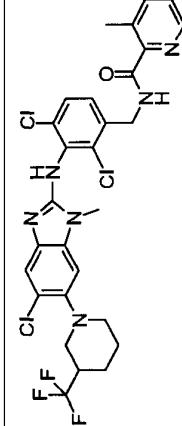
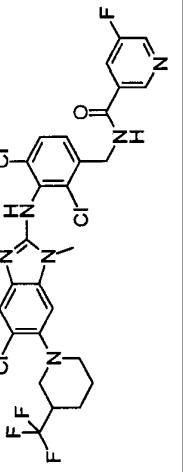
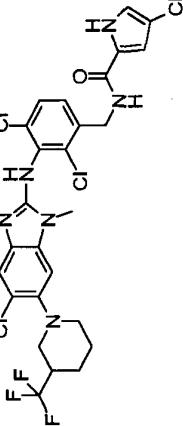
(continued)

	Structure				
10					
15					
20					
25					
30					
35					
40					
45					
50					
					

55

5

(continued)

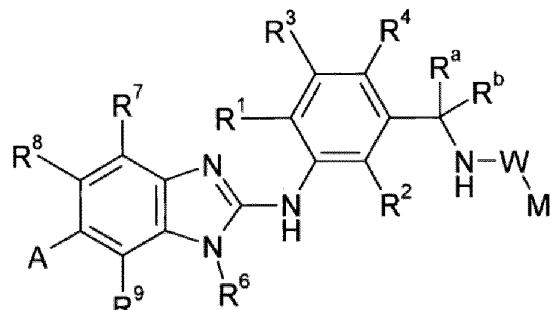
	Structure		
10			
15			
20			
25			
30			
35	Structure		
40			
45			
50	175	177	179

55

13. A compound according to any of the preceding claims for use as a medicament.
14. A pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one compound according to any of claims 1 to 12 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable adjuvant, diluent and/or carrier.
- 5 15. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 12 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for use in the treatment and/or prevention of inflammatory diseases and/or associated conditions, in particular pain.

10 **Patentansprüche**

11 1. Verbindung der Formel I



25 I

worin

30 **R¹** Halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, C₂₋₆-Alkinyl, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl darstellt, wobei die letzteren drei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -CN, =O, -OH, -OCH₃, -OCF₃;

20 **R², R³ und R⁴** stellen unabhängig Wasserstoff, Halo, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl dar, wobei die letzteren zwei Alkylgruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -CN, =O, -OH, -OCH₃, -OCF₃;

35 **R^a und R^b** stellen unabhängig Wasserstoff, C₁₋₃-Alkyl dar, welches gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert ist, oder beide bilden zusammen mit dem Kohlenstoffatom, an das sie gebunden sind, einen C₃₋₇-Cycloalkyrling oder einen 4-6-gliedrigen Heterocycloalkyrling wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind;

40 **W** stellt -C(O)-, -S(O)-, -S(O)₂-, -C(O)O-, -C(O)NR^d- dar, wobei die Gruppen über ein Kohlenstoff- oder Schwefelatom an den Stickstoff des -NH-Rests gebunden sind;

45 **R^d** stellt Wasserstoff, C₁₋₃-Alkyl dar;

50 **M** stellt C₁₋₈-Alkyl, C₂₋₈-Alkinyl, C₃₋₈-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₄-alkyl-, 4-10-gliedriges Heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₄-alkyl- dar, wobei die letzteren vier Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, =O, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃-Alkyl)₂, Azetidinyl, Pyrrolidinyl, Piperidinyl, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl, [wobei die letzteren sieben Alkylgruppen mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sein können, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, -CN, -OC₁₋₂-Alkyl (wobei die letztere Alkylgruppe gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert ist)].

55 Aryl, Heteroaryl [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl (wobei die letzteren zwei Alkylgruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind)],

60 oder

65 Aryl, Heteroaryl, wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus

70 Halo, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, Aryl, Heteroaryl [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl (wobei die letzteren zwei Alkylgruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind)],

75 C₁₋₇-Alkyl, C₂₋₇-Alkinyl, C₃₋₇-Cycloalkyl, 4-7-gliedriges Heterocycloalkyl, -NH₂, -NH(C₁₋₃-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃-Alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl, -O-C₀₋₂-Alkyl-aryl, -SC₁₋₃-Alkyl, (wobei die letzteren Alkyl-, Alkinyl-, Heterocycloalkyl-, Aryl- oder Cycloalkylgruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor,

-CN, =O,
-NH₂, -NH(C₁₋₃-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃-Alkyl)₂, -OH, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl];
R⁶ stellt Wasserstoff, C₁₋₅-Alkyl, C₃₋₆-Alkinyl, 4-7-gliedriges Heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₂-alkyl oder C₃₋₇-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂-alkyl dar (wobei die letzteren vier Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -CN, =O, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -OH, -NH₂, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃-Alkyl)₂);
R⁷, R⁸ und R⁹ stellen unabhängig Wasserstoff, Halo, -CN, C₁₋₅-Alkyl, C₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂-alkyl-, C₁₋₅-Alkyl-O-, C₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂-alkyl-O- dar (wobei die letzteren vier Gruppen, die Alkyl- und Cycloalkylreste, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -CN, -OH, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl, oder mit ein oder mehr C₁₋₃-Alkylgruppen, die gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind);
A stellt -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹ dar oder eine 4-10-gliedrige Heterocycloalkylgruppe, die über ein Stickstoffatom an das Benzimidazol gebunden ist, und die gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten R¹² substituiert ist; **R¹⁰** und **R¹¹** stellen unabhängig C₁₋₇-Alkyl, C₃₋₇-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₄-alkyl- oder C₄₋₇-Heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₄-alkyl-dar [wobei die letzteren drei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, NH₂, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃-Alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₅-Alkyl, -OC₃₋₆-Cycloalkyl, -OC₄₋₆-Heterocycloalkyl (wobei die letzteren sechs Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -CF₃, -CHF₂, -CH₂F, -CH₃)],
oder
Aryl-C₀₋₄-alkyl-, Heteroaryl-C₀₋₄-alkyl- [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, C₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl, C₁₋₃-Alkyl-O-, C₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl-O- (wobei die letzteren vier Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind)];
jedes **R¹²** stellt unabhängig Halo, -OH, -NH₂, =O, -CN, C₁₋₄-Alkyl, C₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂-alkyl-, C₄₋₅-Heterocycloalkyl-C₀₋₂-alkyl-, C₁₋₄-Alkyl-O-, C₁₋₃-Alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C₁₋₃-Alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C₁₋₃-Alkyl)₂ dar [wobei die letzteren sechs Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, Oxo, -NH₂, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃-Alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl, -OC₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl [wobei die letzteren fünf Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -CF₃, -CHF₂, -CH₂F],
oder
Aryl-C₀₋₄-alkyl-, Heteroaryl-C₀₋₄-alkyl- [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, C₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl, C₁₋₃-Alkyl-O-, C₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl-O- (wobei die letzteren vier Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind)];

oder ein Salz hiervon, insbesondere ein physiologisch akzeptables bzw. annehmbares Salz hiervon.

- 35 2. Verbindung nach Anspruch 1, wobei
R¹ Halo, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl darstellt, wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind.
40 3. Verbindung nach Anspruch 1 oder 2, wobei
R³ und **R⁴** unabhängig Wasserstoff, Halo darstellen.

- 45 4. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, wobei

M C₁₋₆-Alkyl, C₂₋₆-Alkinyl, C₃₋₈-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁-alkyl-, Oxetanyl-, Tetrahydro-furanyl-, Azetidinyl-, Pyrrolidinyl-, Piperidinyl- oder eine der folgenden heterocyclischen Gruppen darstellt



- 55 wobei all diese Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂-Alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂-Alkyl [wobei die letzteren vier Alkylgruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor], Phenyl, Imidazolyl [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert

sind, ausgewählt aus Halo, C₁₋₂-Alkyl, OC₁₋₂-Alkyl (wobei die letzteren zwei Alkylgruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind)], oder

5 Phenyl, Naphthyl, Furanyl, Thienyl, Oxazolyl, Isoxazolyl, Thiazolyl, Pyrrolyl, Pyrazolyl, Pyridinyl, Pyrazinyl, Chinolinyl, wobei die letzteren zwölf Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus

Halo, Aryl, Heteroaryl [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃],

10 C₁₋₂-Alkyl, -OC₁₋₂-Alkyl [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind],

C₂₋₃-Alkinyl, -O-C₀₋₂-Alkyl-phenyl [wobei die letztere Gruppe, das Phenyl, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert ist, ausgewählt aus Halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃].

5. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, wobei

15 R⁷ und R⁹ unabhängig Wasserstoff, Halo, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl darstellen, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert.

6. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, wobei

20 A -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹ darstellt, oder
Azetidinyl-, Pyrrolidinyl-, Piperidinyl-, Morpholinyl-, Piperazinyl- oder



wobei alle heterocyclischen Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten R¹² substituiert sind und zu einem Phenyl- oder einem 5- oder 6-gliedrigen Heteroaryling anneliert sind, wobei die oben erwähnten Gruppen über ein Stickstoffatom an den Benzimidazolkern gebunden sind;

30 R¹⁰ und R¹¹ stellen unabhängig C₁₋₅-Alkyl, C₃₋₆-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁-alkyl- dar [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, C₁₋₃-Alkyl], oder Aryl-C₀₋₁-alkyl-, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert, ausgewählt aus Halo, -OH, -CN, 35 C₁₋₃-Alkyl, C₁₋₃-Alkyl-O- [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind];

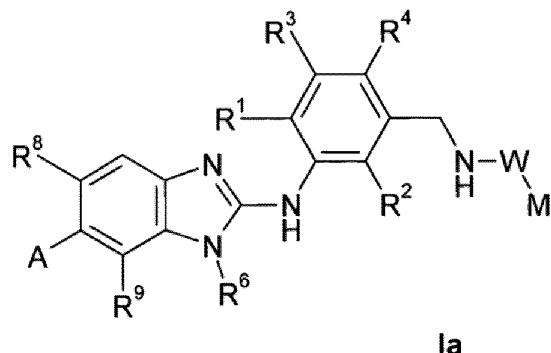
jedes R¹² stellt unabhängig Halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₄-Alkyl, C₁₋₂-Alkyl-O-, C₁₋₂-Alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C₁₋₂-Alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C₁₋₂-Alkyl)₂ dar [wobei die letzteren fünf Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂-Alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂-Alkyl (wobei die letzteren vier Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, 40 CF₃, CHF₂ oder CH₂F)], oder

45 Phenyl, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert, ausgewählt aus Halo oder C₁₋₃-Alkyl, das gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert ist.

7. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, insbesondere eine Verbindung der Formel Ia

50

55



worin

15

R¹ Halo, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl darstellt, wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind;

R² stellt Wasserstoff, Halo, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, gegebenenfalls substituiert mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen, dar;

R³ und **R⁴** stellen unabhängig Wasserstoff, Halo dar;

20

W stellt -C(O)-, -S(O)₂-, -C(O)O- dar, wobei die Gruppen über ein Kohlenstoff- oder Schwefelatom an den Stickstoff des -NH-Rests gebunden sind;

M stellt C₁₋₆-Alkyl, C₂₋₆-Alkinyl, C₃₋₈-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁-alkyl-, Oxetanyl-, Tetrahydrofuran-, Azetidinyl-, Pyrrolidinyl-, Piperidinyl- oder eine der folgenden heterocyclischen Gruppen dar

25



30

wobei all diese Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂-Alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂-Alkyl [wobei die letzteren vier Alkylgruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind],

35

Phenyl, Imidazolyl [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Halo, C₁₋₂-Alkyl, OC₁₋₂-Alkyl (wobei die letzteren zwei Alkylgruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind)],

oder

Phenyl, Naphthyl, Furanyl, Thienyl, Oxazolyl, Isoxazolyl, Thiazolyl, Pyrrolyl, Pyrazolyl, Pyridinyl, Pyrazinyl, Chinolinyl, wobei die letzteren zwölf Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus

40

Halo, Aryl, Heteroaryl [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃],

C₁₋₂-Alkyl, -OC₁₋₂-Alkyl [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind],

45

C₂₋₃-Alkinyl, -O-C₀₋₂-Alkyl-phenyl [wobei die letztere Gruppe, das Phenyl, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert ist, ausgewählt aus Halo, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃];

R⁶ stellt Wasserstoff, C₁₋₅-Alkyl oder C₃₋₇-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂-alkyl dar [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -OC₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₃-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₃-Alkyl)₂];

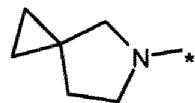
50

R⁸ stellt Wasserstoff, Halo, -CN, C₁₋₅-Alkyl, C₃₋₅-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₂-alkyl- dar (wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen, die Alkyl- und Cycloalkylreste, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind, oder mit ein oder mehr C₁₋₃-Alkylgruppen, die gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind);

R⁹ stellt Wasserstoff, Halo, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl dar, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert, ausgewählt aus Fluoratomen;

A stellt -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹ dar, oder Azetidinyl-, Pyrrolidinyl-, Piperidinyl-, Morpholinyl-, Piperazinyl- oder

55



5

wobei alle heterocyclischen Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten R¹² substituiert sein können und gegebenenfalls zu einem Phenyl- oder einem 5- oder 6-gliedrigen Heteroarylring anneliert sein können, wobei die oben erwähnten Gruppen über ein Stickstoffatom an den Benzimidazolkern gebunden sind; R¹⁰ und R¹¹ stellen unabhängig C₁₋₅-Alkyl oder C₃₋₆-Cycloalkyl-C₀₋₁-alkyl-dar [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, C₁₋₃-Alkyl], oder
 Aryl-C₀₋₁-alkyl-, das gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sein kann, ausgewählt aus Halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, C₃₋₅-Alkyl-O- [wobei die letzteren zwei Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert sind];
 jedes R¹² stellt unabhängig Halo, -OH, -CN, C₁₋₄-Alkyl, C₁₋₂-Alkyl-O-, C₁₋₂-Alkyl-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(C₁₋₂-Alkyl), -C(=O)-N(C₁₋₂-Alkyl)₂ dar [wobei die letzteren fünf Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Gruppen substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, -OH, C₁₋₃-Alkyl, -NH(C₁₋₂-Alkyl), -N(C₁₋₂-Alkyl)₂, -OC₁₋₂-Alkyl (wobei die letzteren vier Gruppen gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert sind, ausgewählt aus Fluor, CF₃, CHF₂ oder CH₂F)],
 oder
 Phenyl, gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Substituenten substituiert, ausgewählt aus Halo oder C₁₋₃-Alkyl, das gegebenenfalls mit ein oder mehr Fluoratomen substituiert ist.

8. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, wobei

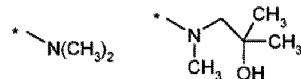
25

R⁸ Wasserstoff, Fluor, Chlor, CF₃, -CN darstellt.

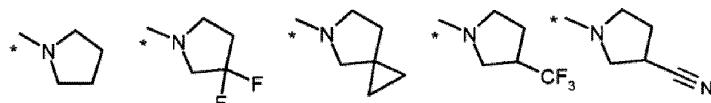
9. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, wobei

30

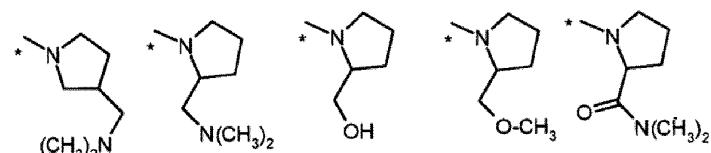
A eine Gruppe darstellt, ausgewählt aus



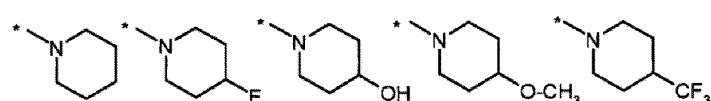
35



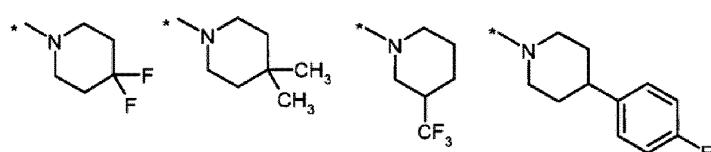
40



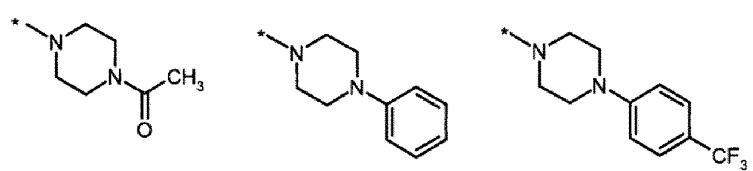
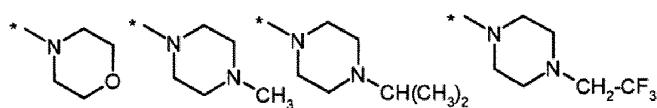
45



50

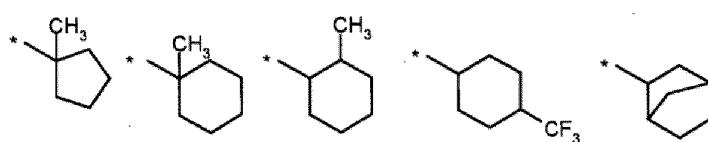
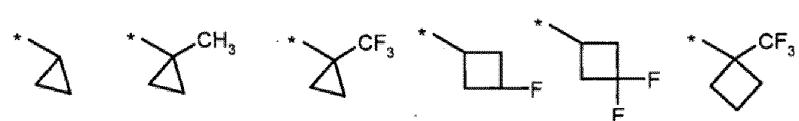
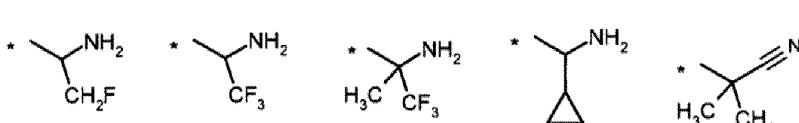
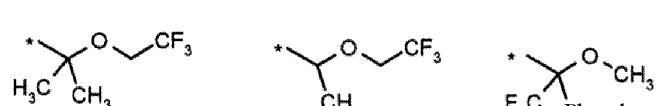
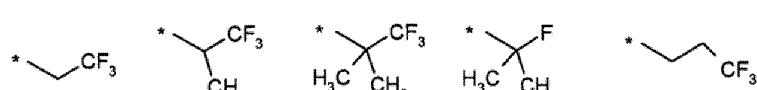
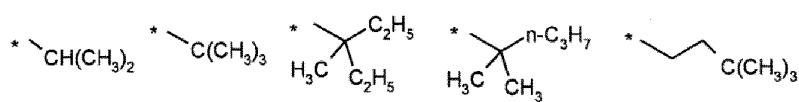


55

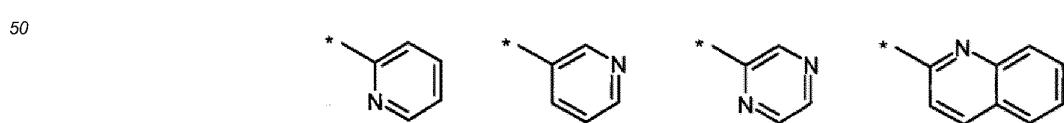
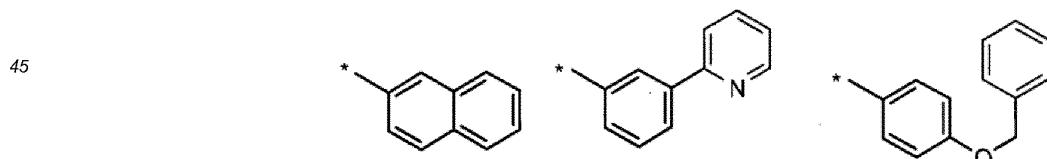
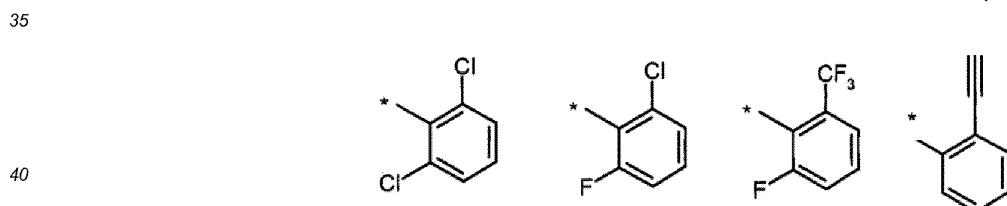
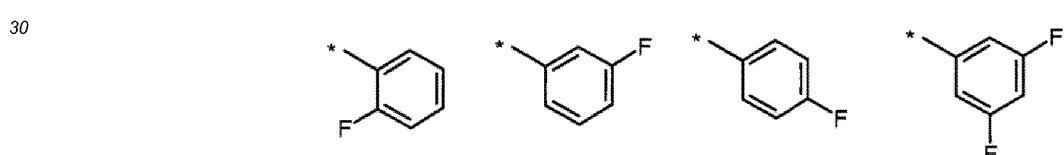
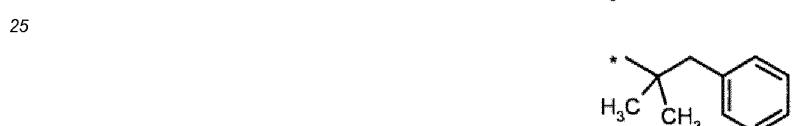
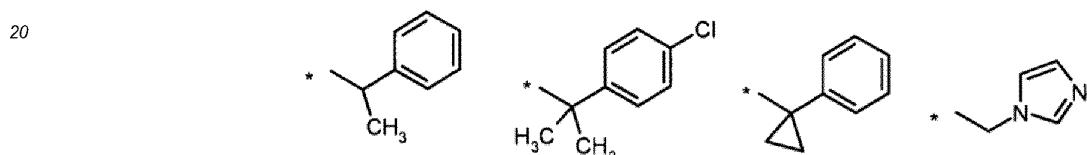
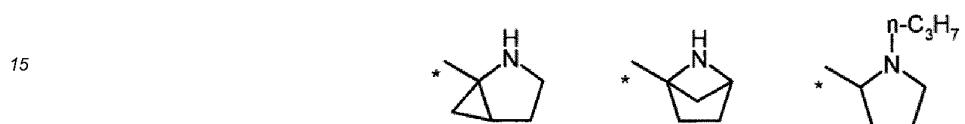
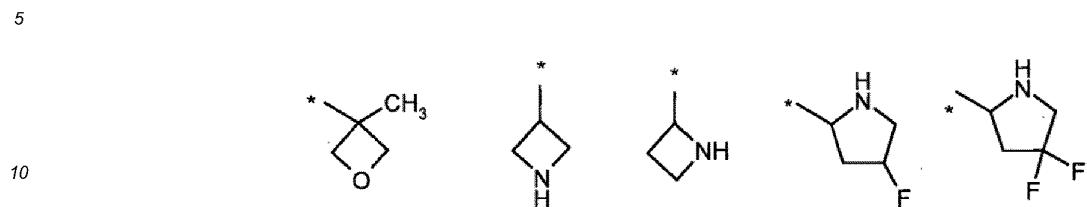
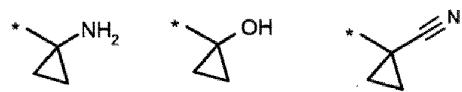


10. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, wobei

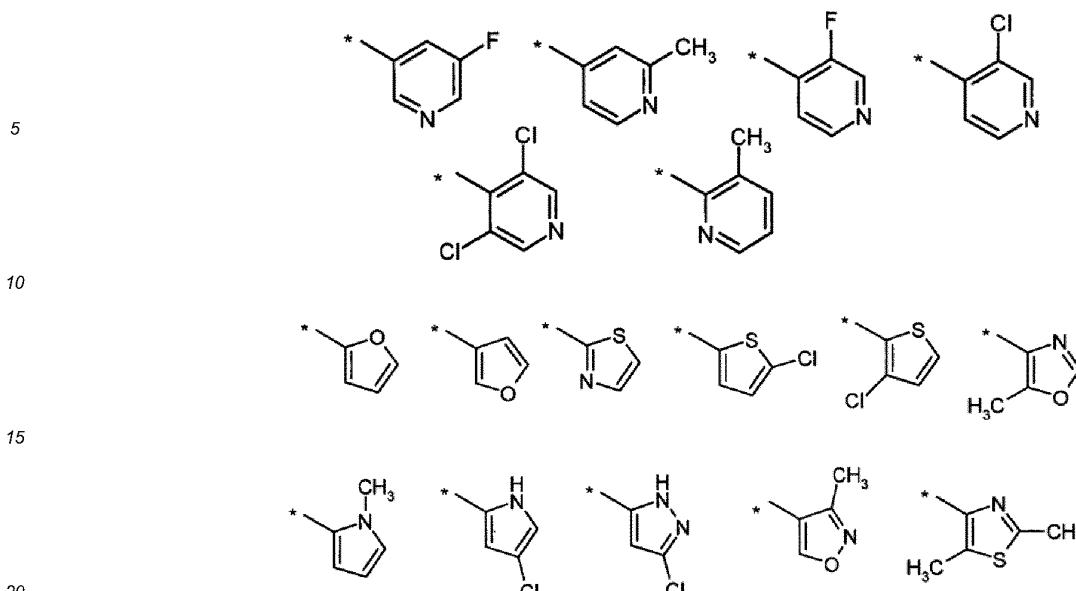
15 M eine Gruppe darstellt, ausgewählt aus



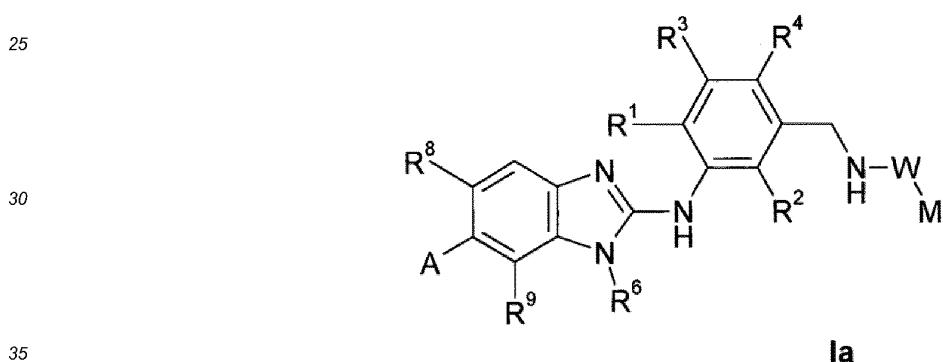
55



55



11. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, nämlich eine Verbindung der Formel Ia



worin

40 R^1 Fluor, Chlor, CH_3 , CH_2F , CF_3 oder $-OCF_3$ darstellt;

R^2 stellt Wasserstoff, Fluor oder Chlor dar;

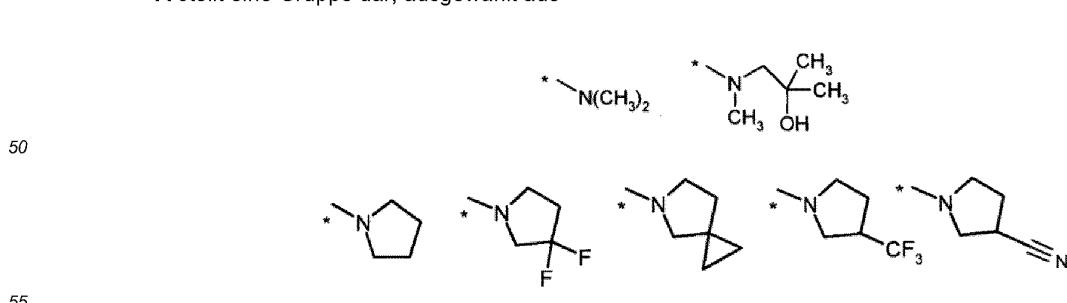
R^3 und R^4 stellen unabhängig Wasserstoff, Fluor dar;

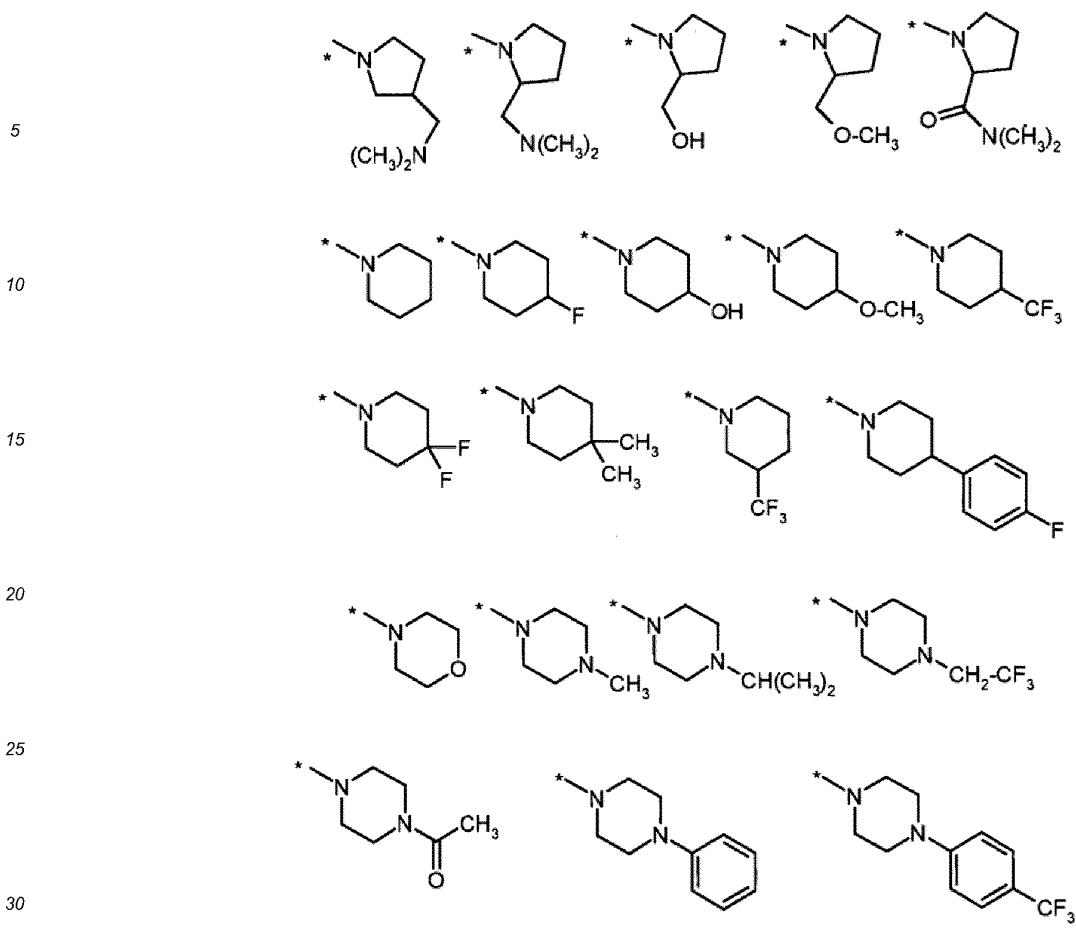
R^6 stellt Wasserstoff, $-CH_3$, $-CH_2CF_3$, Cyclopropylmethyl-, $-CH_2CH_2-O-CH_3$, $-CH_2CH_2-N(CH_3)_2$ dar;

R^8 stellt Wasserstoff, Fluor, Chlor, CF_3 , $-CN$ dar;

R^9 stellt Wasserstoff, Fluor dar;

A stellt eine Gruppe dar, ausgewählt aus

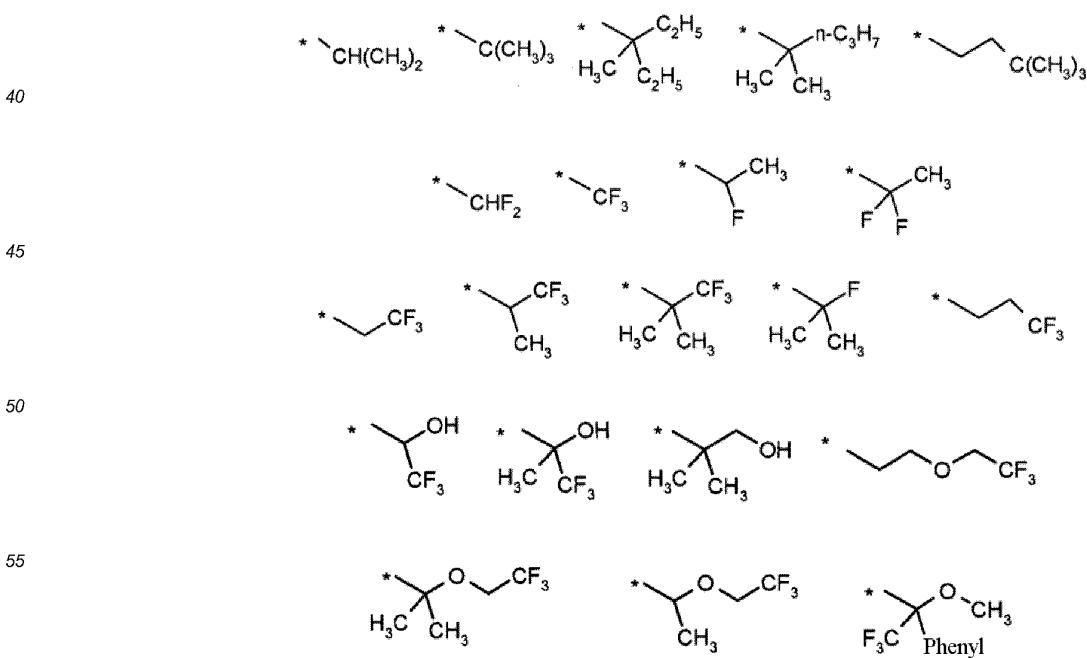


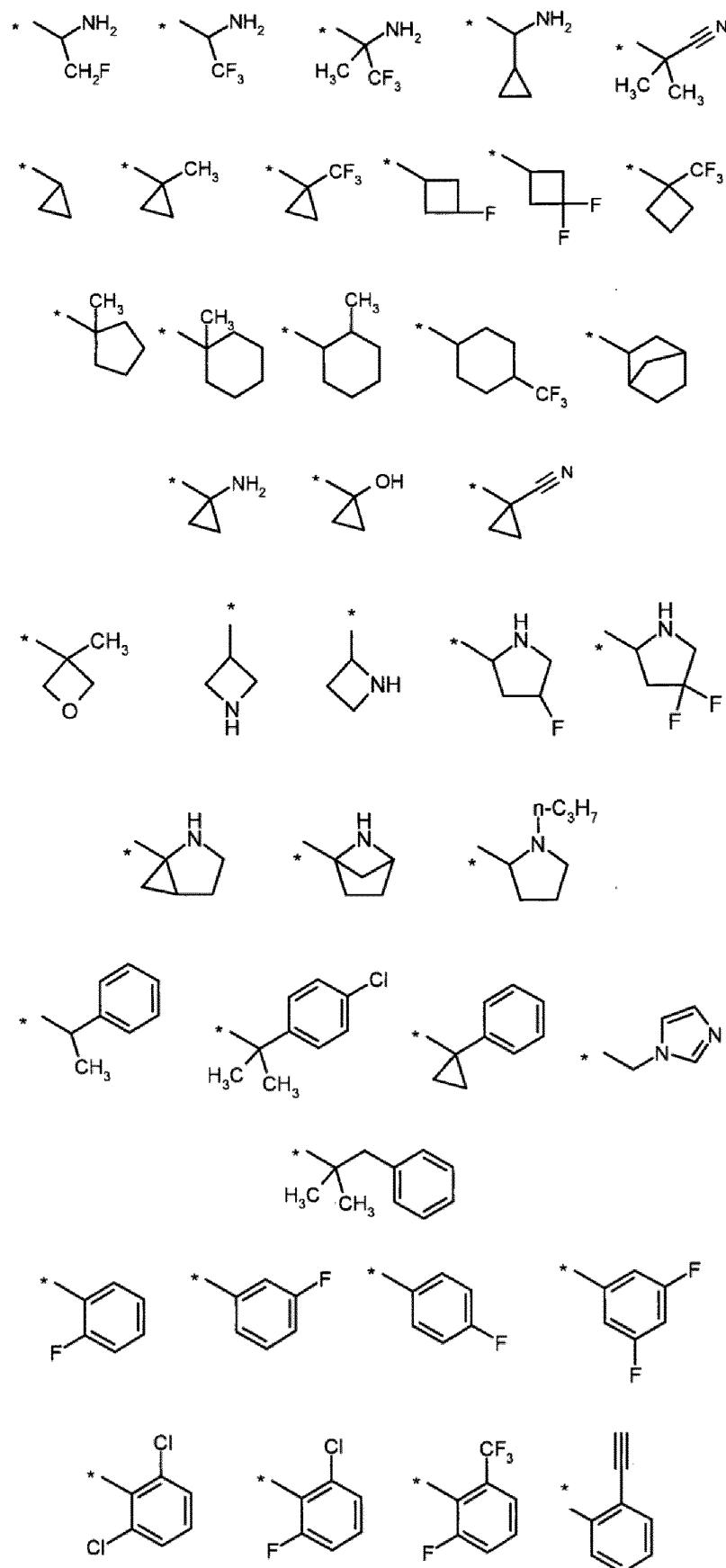


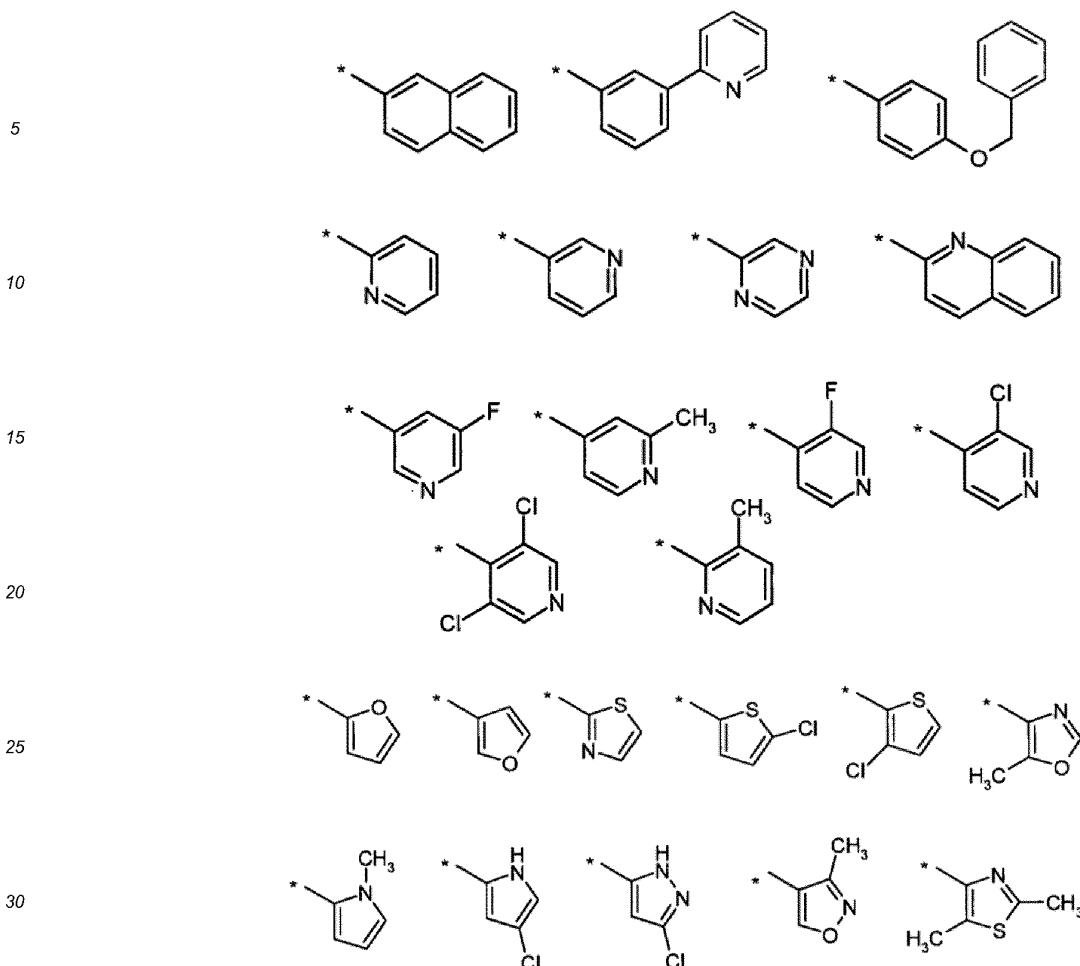
W stellt -C(O)-, -S(O)₂- dar, wobei die Gruppen über ein Kohlenstoff- oder Schwefelatom an den Stickstoff des -NH-Rests gebunden sind;

35

M stellt eine Gruppe dar, ausgewählt aus







12. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche, ausgewählt aus der Gruppe, bestehend aus

35

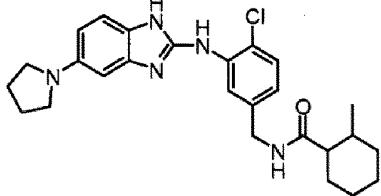
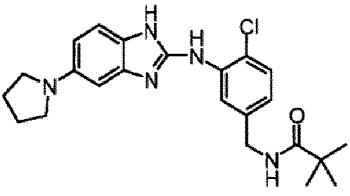
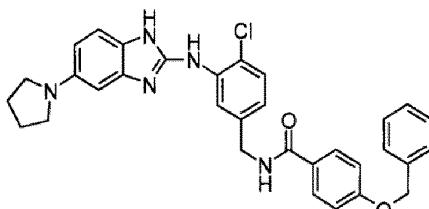
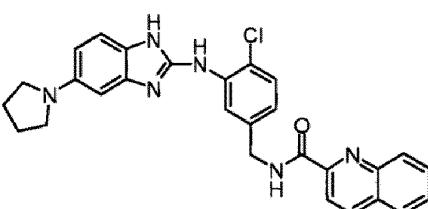
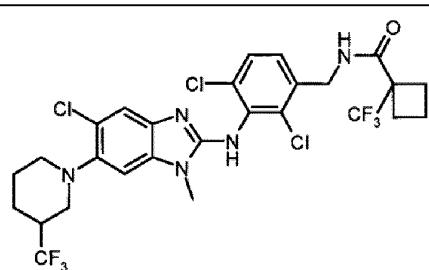
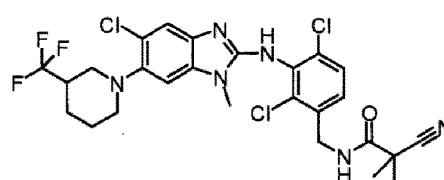
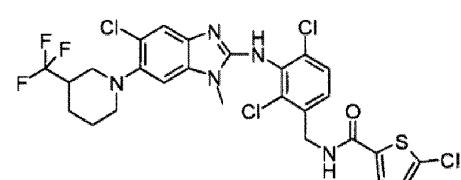
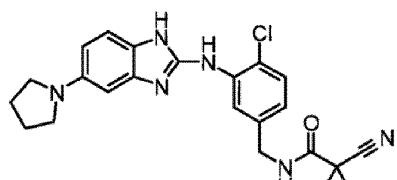
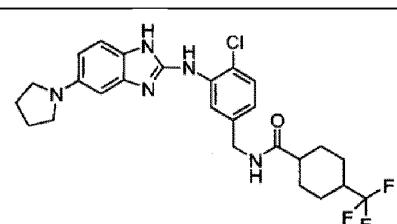
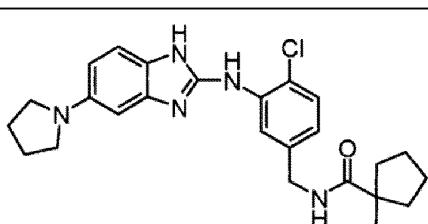
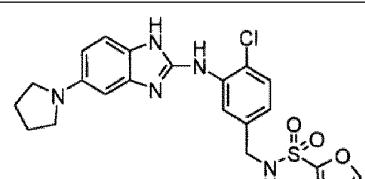
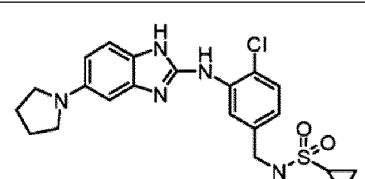
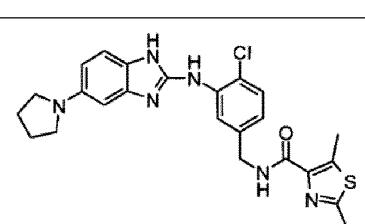
	Struktur		Struktur
40		45	
50		55	

55

(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5		6	
7		8	
9		10	
11		12	
13		14	
15		16	
17		18	

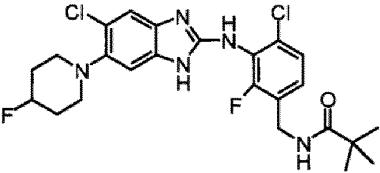
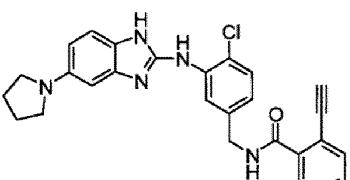
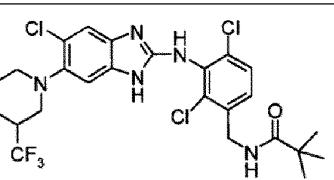
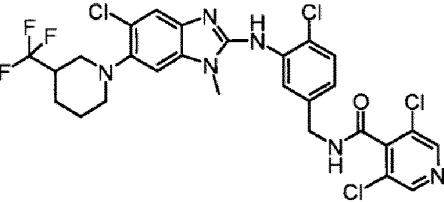
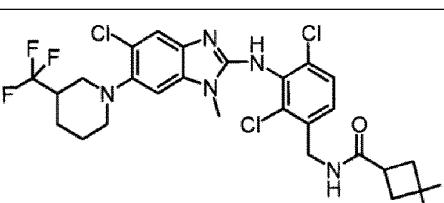
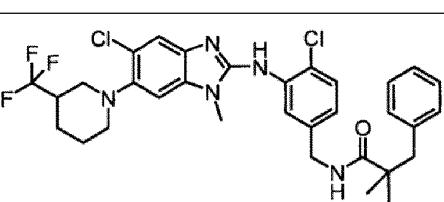
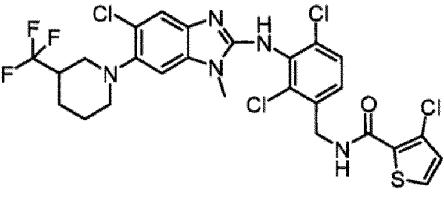
(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5 19		20	
10 15 21		22	
20 25 23		24	
30 35 25		26	
40 45 27		28	
50 55 31		30	
		32	

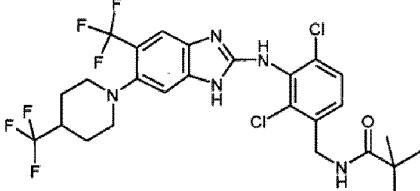
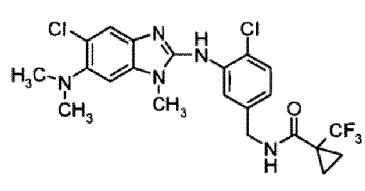
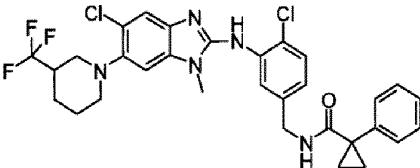
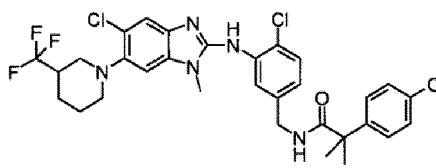
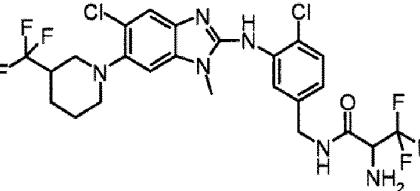
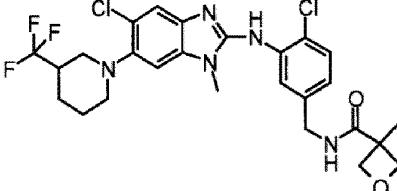
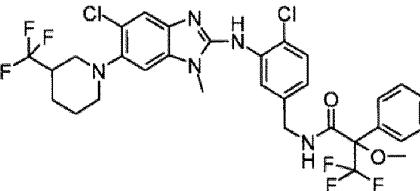
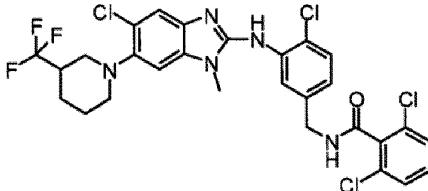
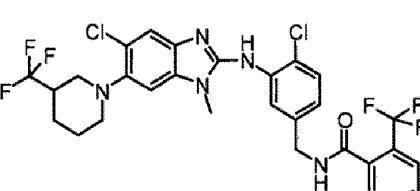
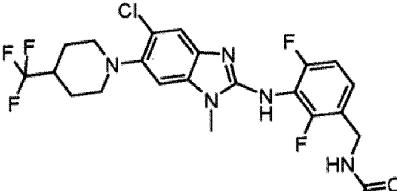
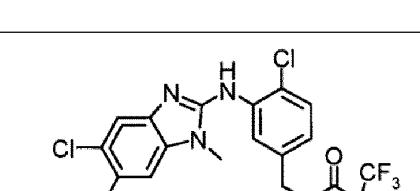
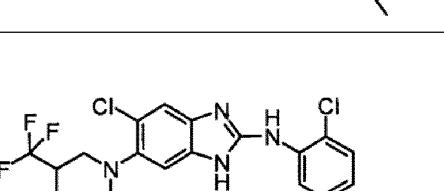
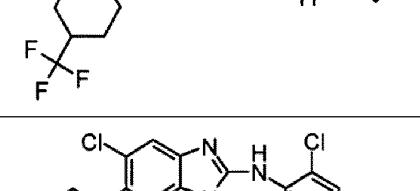
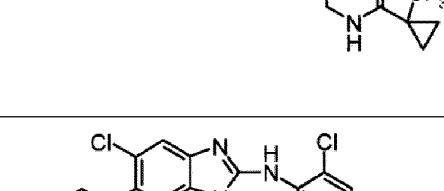
(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5		34	
10			
15		36	
20			
25		38	
30			
35		40	
40			
45		42	
50			
		44	
		46	

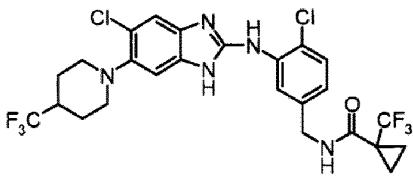
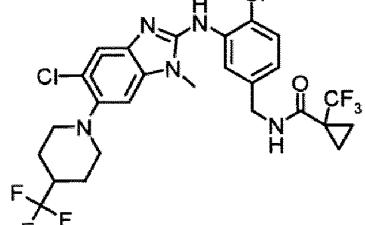
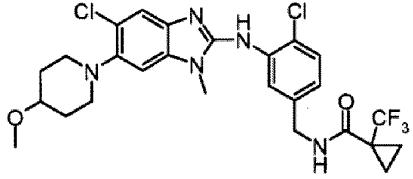
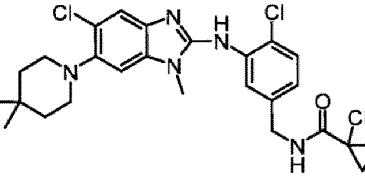
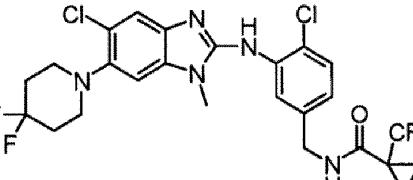
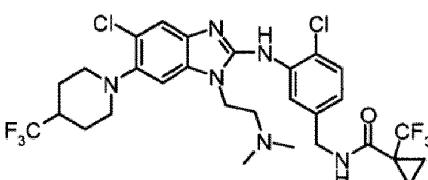
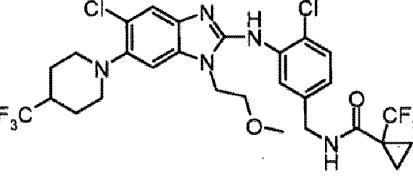
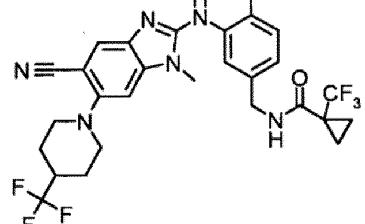
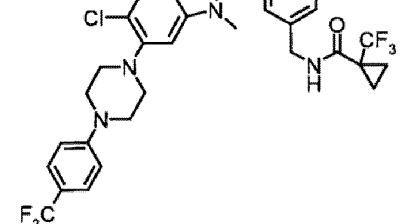
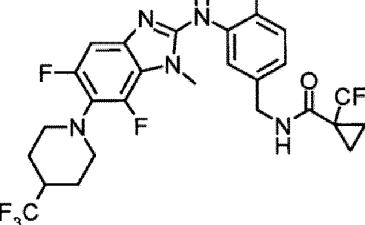
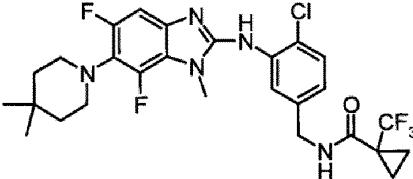
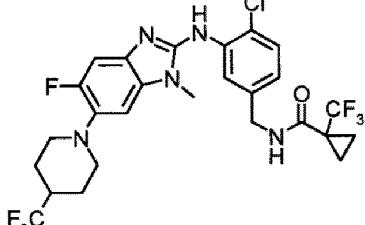
(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5	47	10	
15	49	20	
25	51	30	
35	53	40	
45	55	50	
55	57	58	
59	59	60	

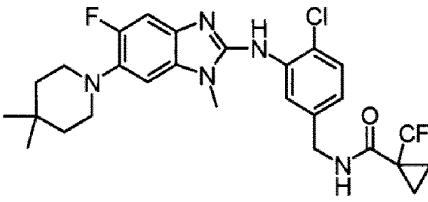
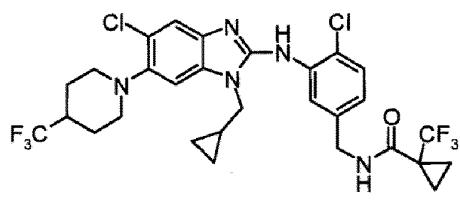
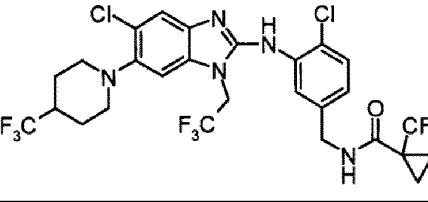
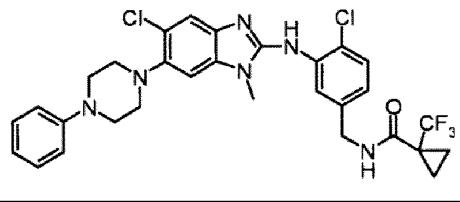
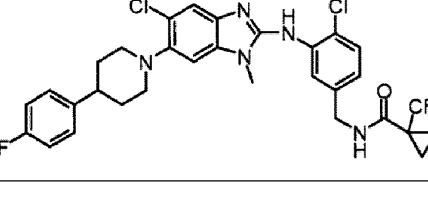
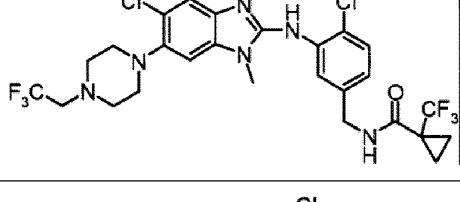
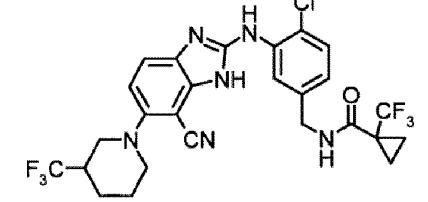
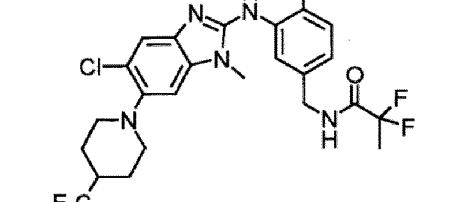
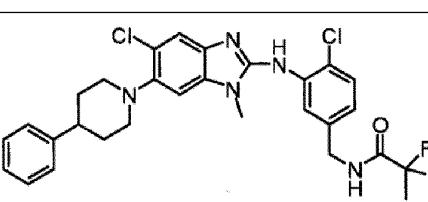
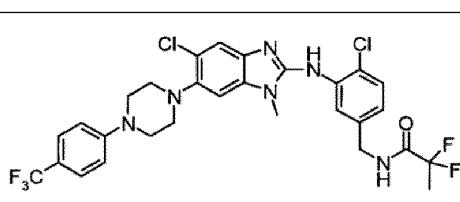
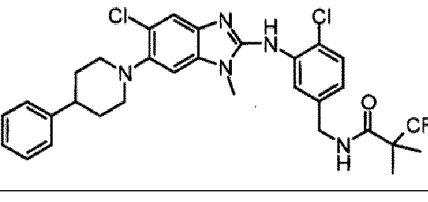
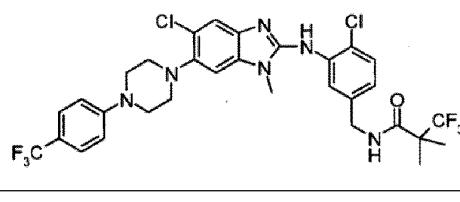
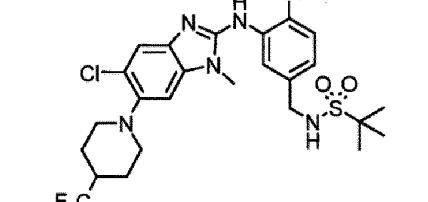
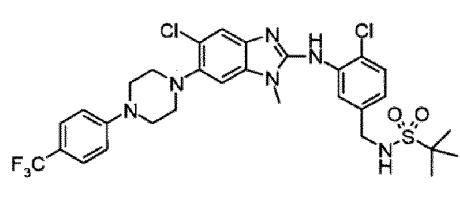
(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5		62	
10			
15		64	
20			
25		66	
30			
35		68	
40			
45		70	
50			
55		72	
60			
65		74	
70			

(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5	75 	76	
10			
15	77 	78	
20			
25	79 	80	
30			
35	81 	82	
40			
45	83 	84	
50			
55	85 	86	

(fortgesetzt)

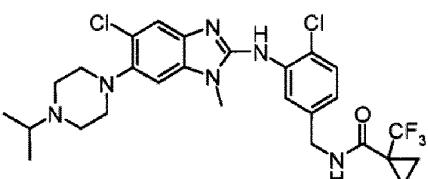
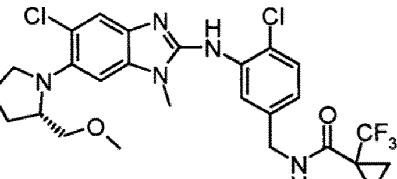
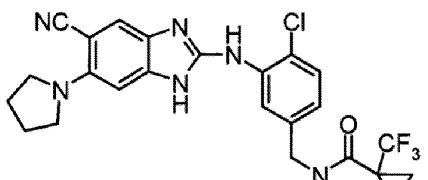
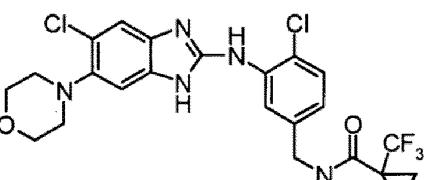
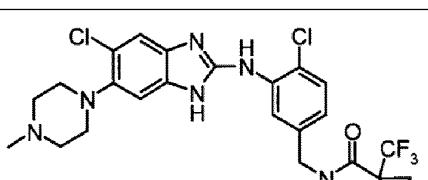
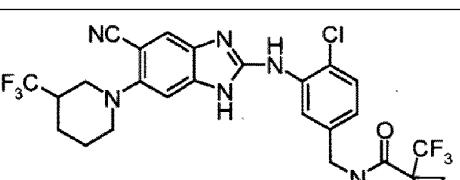
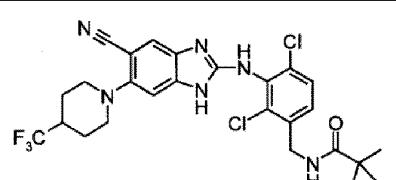
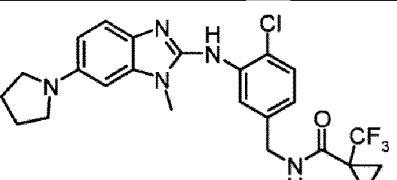
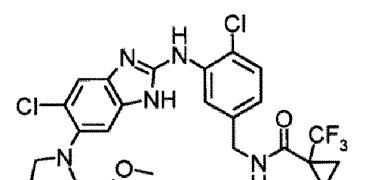
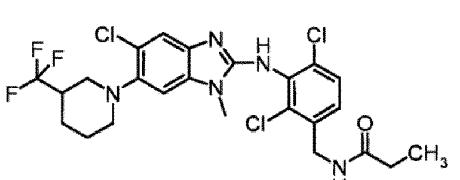
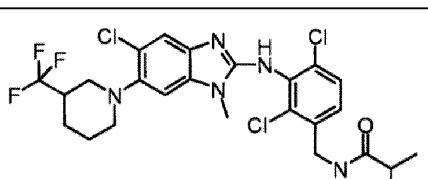
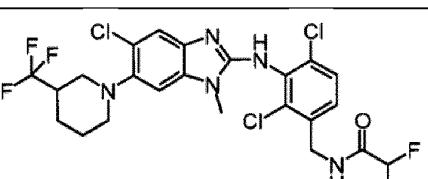
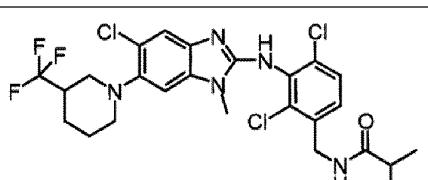
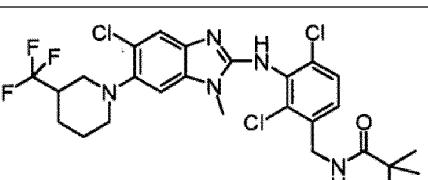
	Struktur		Struktur
5		88	
10			
15		90	
20			
25		92	
30			
35		94	
40			
45		96	
50			
55		98	
55			
		100	

(fortgesetzt)

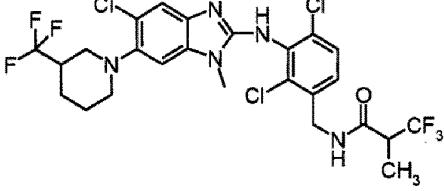
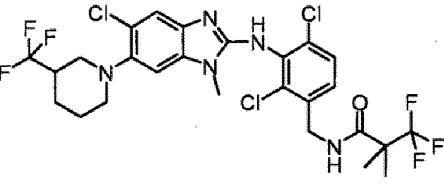
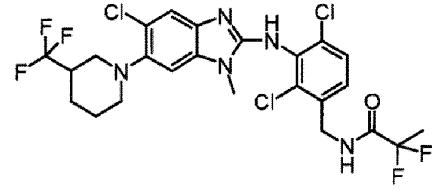
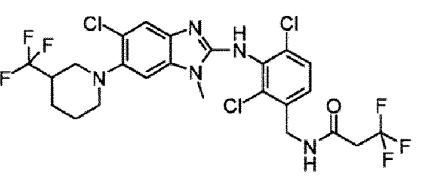
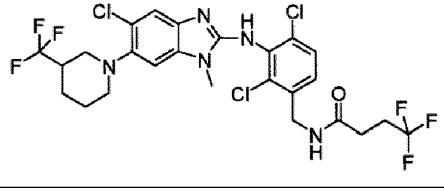
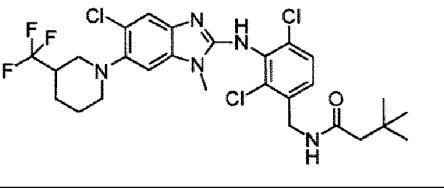
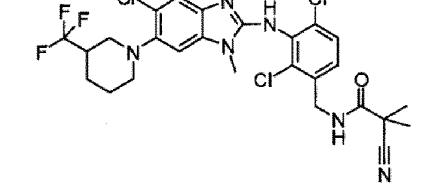
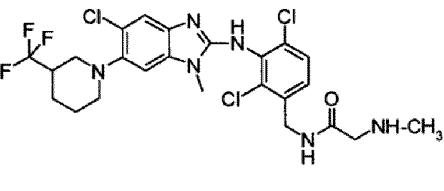
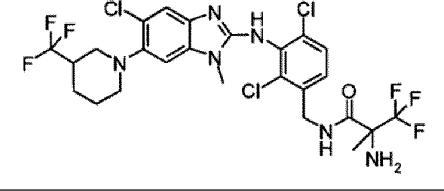
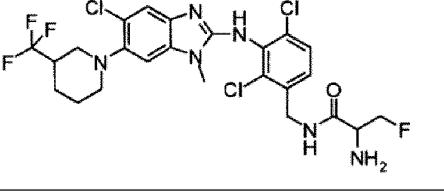
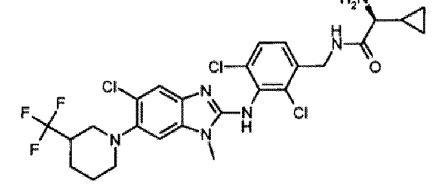
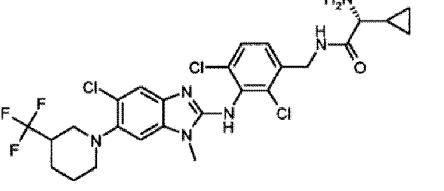
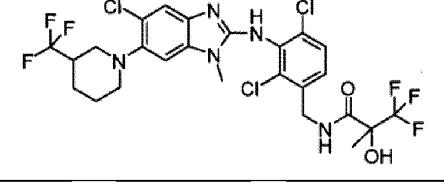
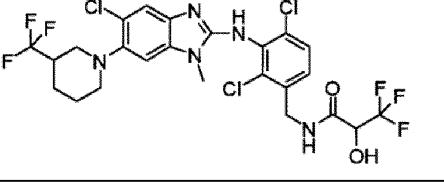
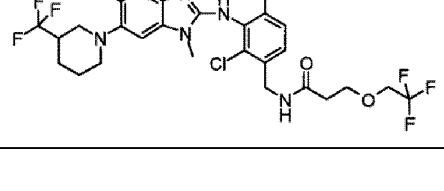
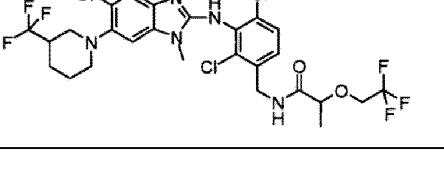
	Struktur		Struktur
5 101		102	
10 15 103		104	
20 25 105		106	
30 35 107		108	
40 45 109		110	
50 111		112	

(fortgesetzt)

(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5	125 	126 	
10			
15	127 	128 	
20	129 	130 	
25			
30	131 	132 	
35	133 	134 	
40	135 	136 	
45			
50	137 	138 	
55			

(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5		140	
10			
15		142	
20			
25		144	
30			
35		146	
40			
45		148	
50			
55		150	
60			
65		152	
70			
75		154	
80			

(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5	155 	156 	
10	157 	158 	
15	159 	160 	
20	161 	162 	
25	163 	164 	
30	165 	166 	
35	167 	168 	
40	169 	170 	
45			
50			

(fortgesetzt)

	Struktur		Struktur
5	171 	172 	
10	173 	174 	
15	175 	176 	
20	177 	178 	
25	179 	180 	
30			
35			

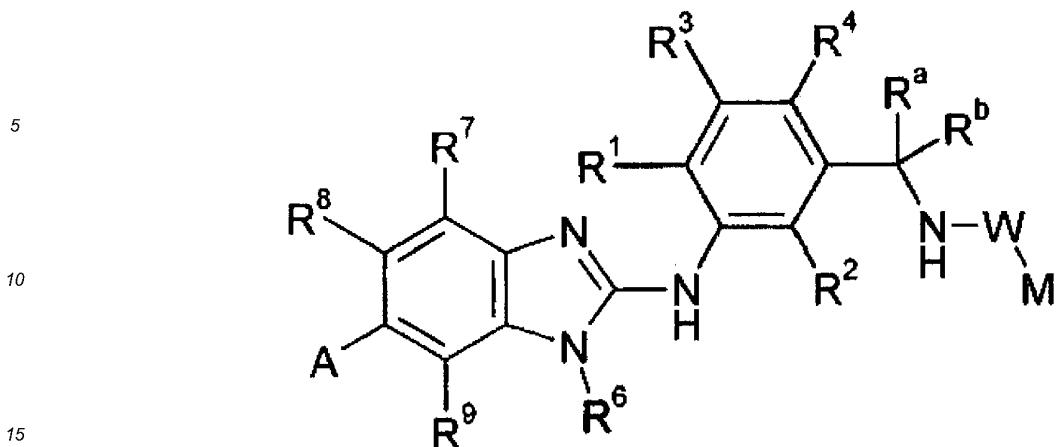
13. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der vorangehenden Ansprüche zur Verwendung als Arzneimittel.

40 14. Pharmazeutische Zusammensetzung, umfassend mindestens eine Verbindung nach irgendeinem der Ansprüche 1 bis 12 oder ein pharmazeutisch akzeptables bzw. annehmbares Salz hiervon in Mischung mit einem pharmazeutisch akzeptablen bzw. annehmbaren Hilfsmittel, Verdünnungsmittel und/oder Träger.

45 15. Verbindung nach irgendeinem der Ansprüche 1 bis 12 oder ein pharmazeutisch akzeptables bzw. annehmbares Salz hiervon zur Verwendung in der Behandlung und/oder Vorbeugung von inflammatorischen Erkrankungen und/oder damit verbundenen Zuständen, insbesondere Schmerz.

Revendications

50 1. Composé de formule I



dans lequel

20

R¹ représente un groupe halogéno, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, alcynyle en C₂ à C₆, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, lesquels trois derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -CN, =O, -OH, -OCH₃, -OCF₃;

25

R², R³ et R⁴ représentent indépendamment un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe halogéno, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, lesquels deux derniers groupes alkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -CN, =O, -OH, -OCH₃, -OCF₃;

30

R^a et R^b représentent indépendamment un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₃ qui est éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor, ou conjointement avec l'atome de carbone auquel ils sont liés, forment un cycle cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₇, ou un cycle hétérocycloalkyle de 4 à 6 chaînons, lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor;

35

W représente -C(O)-, -S(O)-, -S(O)₂, -C(O)O-, -C(O)NR^d, lesquels groupes sont liés à l'atome d'azote du motif -NH- via un atome de carbone ou de soufre;

R^d représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₃;

40

M représente un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₈, alcynyle en C₂ à C₈, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₈-alkyle en C₀ à C₄, hétérocycloalkyle de 4 à 10 chaînons-alkyle en C₀ à C₄, lesquels quatre derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi

les groupes fluoro, -OH, =O, -CN, -NH₂, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₃), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₃)₂, azétidinyle, pyrrolidinyle, pipéridinyle,

45

-O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, [lesquels sept derniers groupes alkyle peuvent être substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -OH, -CN, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂ (lequel dernier groupe alkyle est éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor)],

aryle, hétéroaryl [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃ (lesquels deux derniers groupes alkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor)],

ou

aryle, hétéroaryl, lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi

50

les groupes halogéno, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, aryle, hétéroaryl [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéne, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃ (lesquels deux derniers groupes alkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor)],

alkyle en C₁ à C₇, alcynyle en C₂ à C₇, cycloalkyl en C₃ à C₇, hétérocycloalkyle de 4 à 7 chaînons, -NH₂, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₃), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₃)₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₀ à C₂-aryle, -S-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, (lesquels derniers groupes alkyle, alcynyle, hétérocycloalkyle, aryle ou cycloalkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -CN, =O, -NH₂, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₃), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₃)₂, -OH, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃];

55

R⁶ représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₅, alcynyle en C₃ à C₆, hétérocycloalkyle de 4 à 7 chaînons-alkyle en C₀ à C₂ ou cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₇-alkyle en C₀ à C₂ (lesquels quatre derniers groupes

sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -CN, =O, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -OH, -NH₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₃), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₃)₂ ; R⁷, R⁸ et R⁹ représentent indépendamment un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe halogéno, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₅, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅-alkyle en C₀ à C₂, alkyle en C₁ à C₅-O-, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅-alkyle en C₀ à C₂-O- (dans lesquels quatre derniers groupes, les fragments alkyle et cycloalkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -CN, -OH, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃ ou par un ou plusieurs groupes alkyle en C₁ à C₃ qui sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor) ; A représente -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹, ou un groupe hétérocycloalkyle de 4 à 10 chaînons qui est lié au groupe benzimidazole par un atome d'azote et qui est éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants R¹²; R¹⁰ et R¹¹ représentent indépendamment un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₇, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₇-alkyle en C₀ à C₄- ou hétérocycloalkyle en C₄ à C₇-alkyle en C₀ à C₄- [lesquels trois derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -OH, NH₂, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₃), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₃)₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₅, -O-cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₆, -O-hétérocycloalkyle en C₄ à C₆, (lesquels six derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -CF₃, -CHF₂, -CH₂F, -CH₃)] ; ou aryl-alkyle en C₀ à C₄-, hétéroaryl-alkyle en C₀ à C₄- [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅, alkyle en C₁ à C₃-O-, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅-O- (lesquels quatre derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor)] ; chaque R¹² représente indépendamment un groupe halogéno, -OH, -NH₂, =O, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₄, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅-alkyle en C₀ à C₂, hétérocycloalkyle en C₁ à C₅-alkyle en C₀ à C₂, alkyle en C₁ à C₄-O-, alkyle en C₁ à C₃-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₃), -C(=O)-N(alkyle en C₁ à C₃)₂ [lesquels six derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -OH, oxo, -NH₂, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₃), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₃)₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -O-cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅ [lesquels cinq derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -CF₃, -CHF₂, -CH₂F] ; ou aryl-alkyle en C₀ à C₄-, hétéroaryl-alkyle en C₀ à C₄- [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅, alkyle en C₁ à C₃-O-, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅-O- (lesquels quatre derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor)] ;

ou un sel de celui-ci, en particulier, un sel physiologiquement acceptable de celui-ci.

2. Composé selon la revendication 1, dans lequel

R¹ représente un groupe halogéno, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor.

3. Composé selon la revendication 1 ou 2, dans lequel

R³ et R⁴ représentent indépendamment un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe halogéno.

4. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes, dans lequel

M représente un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₆, alcynyle en C₂ à C₆, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₈-alkyle en C₀ à C₁-, oxétanyle, tétrahydrofuranyl, azétidinyle, pyrrolidinyle, pipéridinyle ou l'un des groupes hétérocycliques suivants



l'ensemble de ces groupes étant éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi

les groupes fluoro, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₂), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₂)₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂ [lesquels quatre derniers groupes alkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro], phényle, imidazolyde [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, alkyle en C₁ à C₂, O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂ (lesquels deux derniers groupes alkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluoro)],

ou

phényle, naphtyle, furanyle, thiényle, oxazolyde, isoxazolyde, thiazolyde, pyrrolyde, pyrazolyde, pyridinyle, pyrazinyle, quinolynyle, lesquels douze derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi

les groupes halogéno, aryle, hétéroaryle [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃],

alkyle en C₁ à C₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂ [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor],

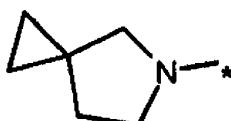
alcyne en C₂ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₀ à C₂-phényle [dans lequel dernier groupe, le groupe phényle est éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃].

5. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes, dans lequel

R⁷ et R⁹ représentent indépendamment un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe halogéno, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃ éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor.

6. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes, dans lequel

A représente -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹, ou
un groupe azétidinyle, pyrrolidinyle, pipéridinyle, morpholinyle, pipérazinyle ou



l'ensemble de ces groupes hétérocycliques étant éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants R¹² et annelés à un groupe phényle ou un cycle hétéroaryle de 5 ou 6 chaînons, tandis que les groupes mentionnés ci-dessus sont liés au noyau benzimidazole par un atome d'azote;

R¹⁰ et R¹¹ représentent indépendamment un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₅, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₆-alkyle en C₀ à C₁- [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -OH, alkyle en C₁ à C₃],

ou

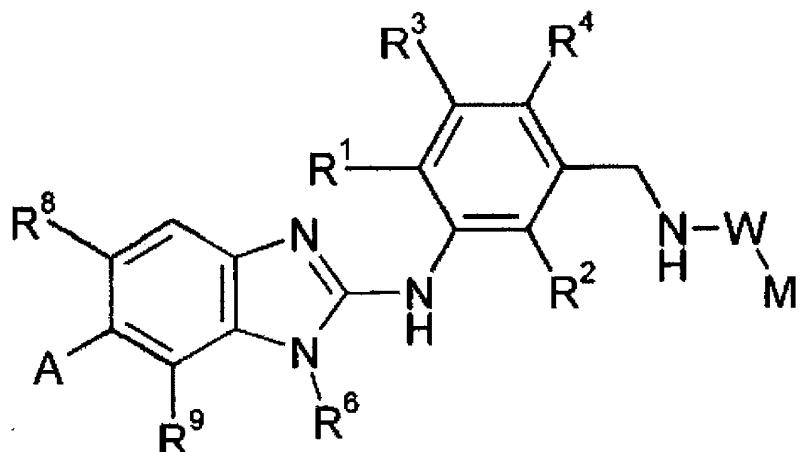
aryl-alkyle en C₀ à C₁- éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, alkyle en C₁ à C₃-O-[lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor] ;

chaque R¹² représente indépendamment un groupe halogéno, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₄, alkyle en C₁ à C₂-O-, alkyle en C₁ à C₂-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₂), -C(=O)-N(alkyle en C₁ à C₂)₂ [lesquels cinq derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -OH, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₂), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₂)₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂, (lesquels quatre derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -CF₃, -CHF₂, -CH₂F)],

ou

un groupe phényle éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno ou alkyle en C₁ à C₃ qui est éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor.

55 7. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes, à savoir un composé de formule la



20 dans laquelle

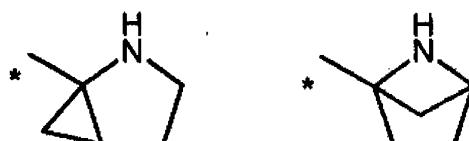
R¹ représente un groupe halogéno, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor ;

R² représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe halogéno, alkyle en C₁ à C₃ éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor ;

25 R³ et R⁴ représentent indépendamment un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe halogéno ;

W représente -C(O)-, -S(O)₂-, -C(O)O-, lesquels groupes sont liés à l'atome d'azote du motif -NH- via un atome de carbone ou de soufre ;

M représente un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₆, alcyne en C₂ à C₆, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₈-alkyle en C₀ à C₁-, oxétanyle, tétrahydrofuranyle, azétidinyle, pyrrolidinyle, pipéridinyle ou l'un des groupes hétérocycliques suivants



l'ensemble de ces groupes étant éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -OH, -CN, -NH₂, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₂), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₂)₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂, [lesquels quatre derniers groupes alkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor], phényle, imidazolyle [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, alkyle en C₁ à C₂, O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂ (lesquels deux derniers groupes alkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor)],

ou

ou

40 un groupe phényle, naphtyle, furanyle, thiényle, oxazolyle, isoxazolyle, thiazolyle, pyrrolyle, pyrazolyle, pyridinyle, pyrazinyle, quinolynyle, lesquels douze derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi

les groupes halogéno, aryle, hétéroaryle [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃],

50 alkyle en C₁ à C₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂ [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor],

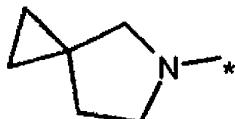
alcyne en C₂ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₀ à C₂-phényle [dans lequel dernier groupe, le groupe phényle est éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -CH₃, -CH₂F, -CHF₂, -CF₃] ;

55 R⁶ représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₅ ou cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₇-alkyle en C₀ à C₁ [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH (alkyle en C₁ à C₃), -N(alkyle en C₁ à C₃)₂] ;

R⁸ représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe halogéno, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₅, cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₅-alkyle en C₀ à C₂ (dans lesquels deux derniers groupes, les fragments alkyle et cycloalkyle sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor, ou par un ou plusieurs groupes alkyle en C₁ à C₃ qui sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor)

5 R⁹ représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe halogéno, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃ éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les atomes de fluor ;
A représente -NHR¹⁰, -NR¹⁰R¹¹, ou un groupe azétidinyle, pyrrolidinyle, pipéridinyle, morpholinyle, pipérazinyle ou

10



15

l'ensemble de ces groupes hétérocycliques pouvant éventuellement être substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants R¹² et éventuellement annelés à un groupe phényle ou un cycle hétéroaryle de 5 ou 6 chaînons, les groupes mentionnés ci-dessus étant ainsi liés au noyau benzimidazole par un atome d'azote ;

20 R¹⁰ et R¹¹ représentent indépendamment un groupe alkyle en C₁ à C₅ ou cycloalkyle en C₃ à C₆-alkyle en C₀ à C₁ [lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi : les groupes fluoro, -OH, alkyle en C₁ à C₃],

ou

25 aryl-alkyle en C₀ à C₁, qui peut être substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, alkyle en C₁ à C₃-O-[lesquels deux derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor] ;

30 chaque R¹² représente indépendamment un groupe halogéno, -OH, -CN, alkyle en C₁ à C₄, alkyle en C₁ à C₂-O-, alkyle en C₁ à C₂-C(=O)-, -C(=O)-NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₂), -C(=O)-N(alkyle en C₁ à C₂)₂ [lesquels cinq derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs groupes sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, -OH, alkyle en C₁ à C₃, -NH(alkyle en C₁ à C₂), N(alkyle en C₁ à C₂)₂, -O-alkyle en C₁ à C₂, (lesquels quatre derniers groupes sont éventuellement substitués par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes fluoro, CF₃, CHF₂ ou CH₂F)],

ou

35 phényle éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs substituants sélectionnés parmi les groupes halogéno ou alkyle en C₁ à C₃ qui est éventuellement substitué par un ou plusieurs atomes de fluor.

35

8. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes, dans lequel

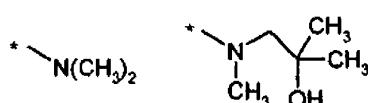
R⁸ représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe fluoro, chloro, CF₃, -CN.

40

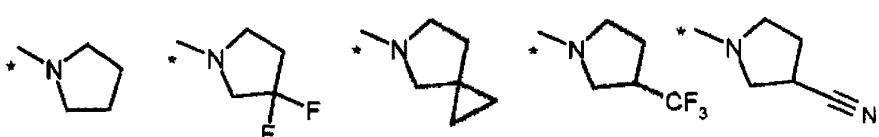
9. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes, dans lequel

A représente un groupe sélectionné parmi

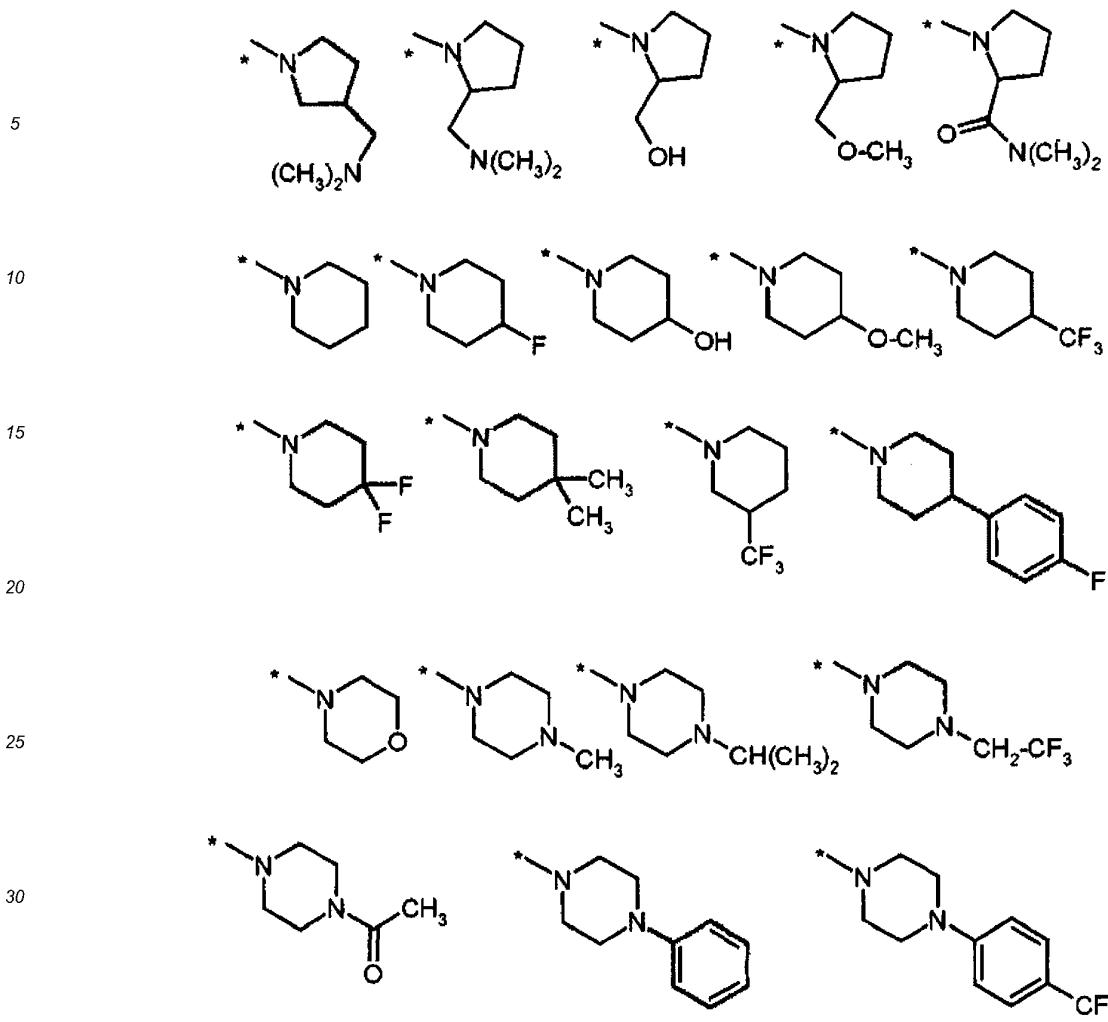
45



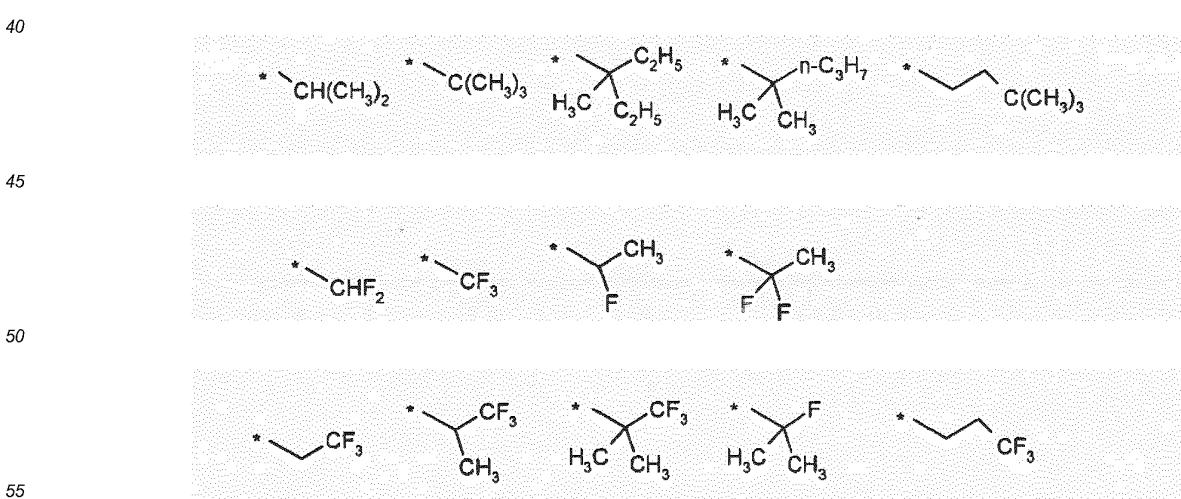
50



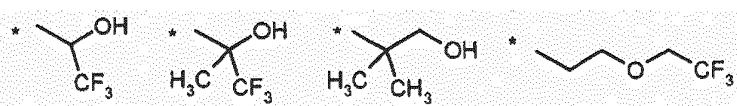
55



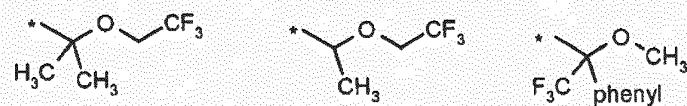
M représente un groupe sélectionné parmi



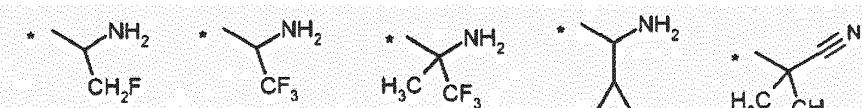
5



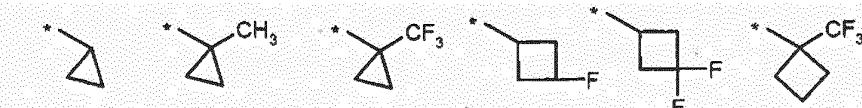
10



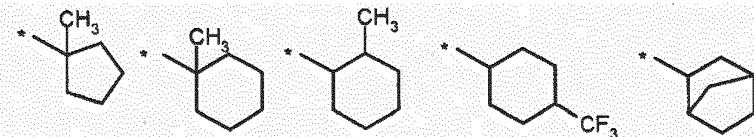
15



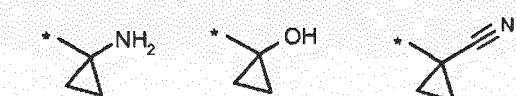
20



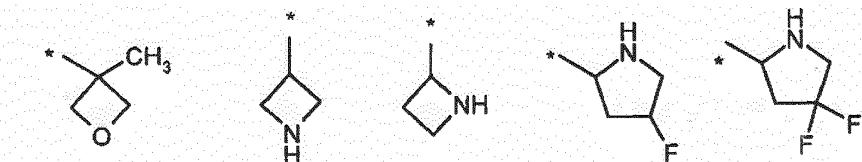
25



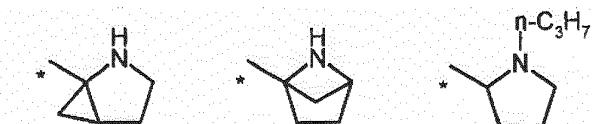
30



35



40



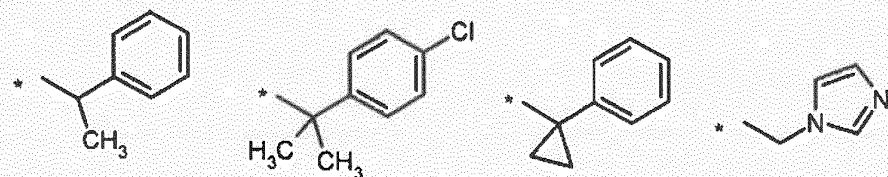
45



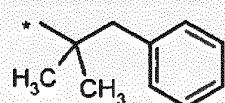
50

55

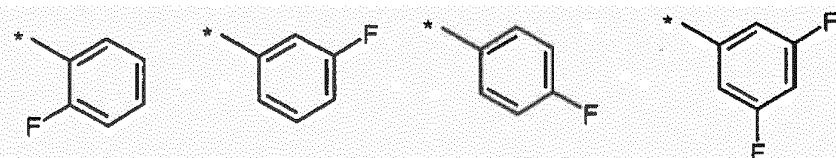
5



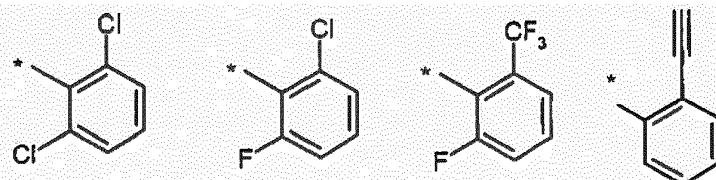
10



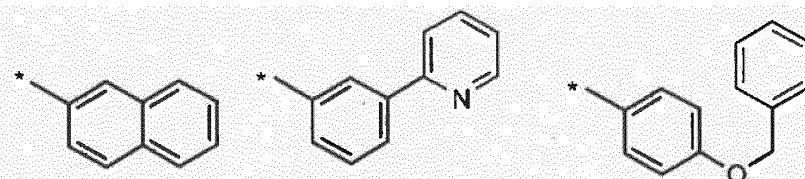
15



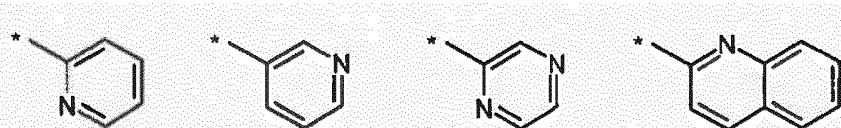
20



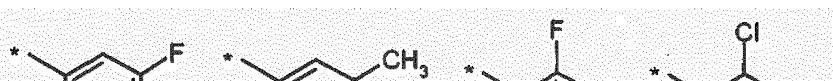
25



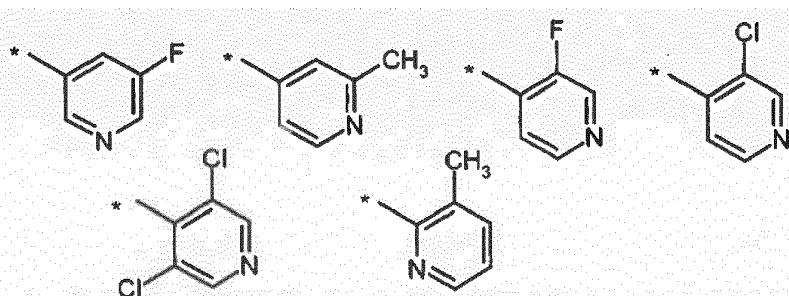
30



40

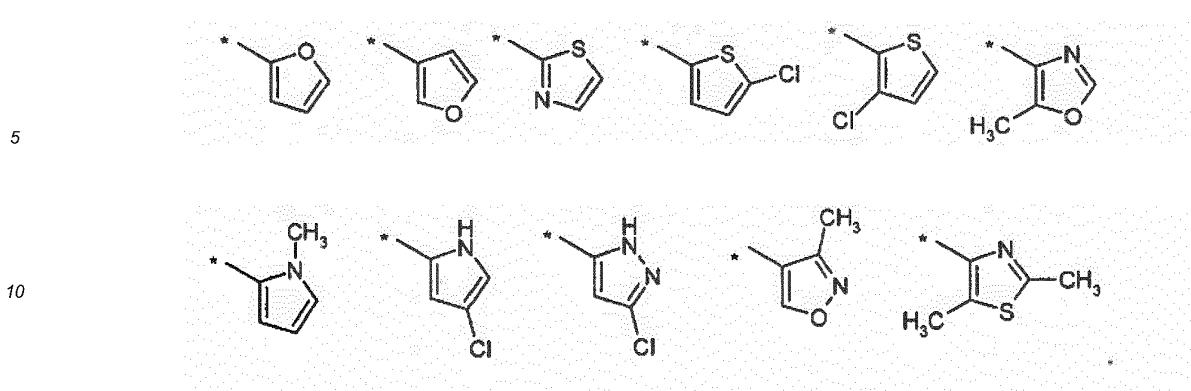


45

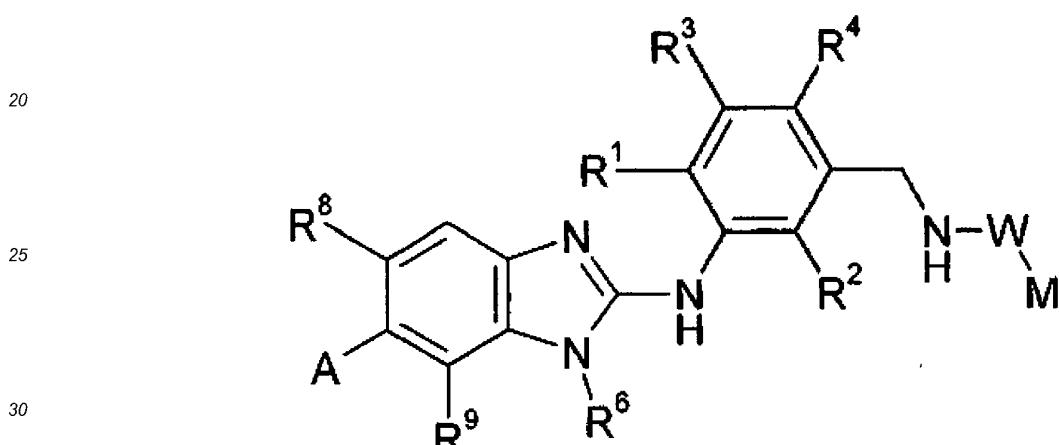


50

55



15 11. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes, à savoir un composé de formule la



35 dans laquelle

R¹ représente un groupe fluoro, chloro, CH₃, CHF₂, CH₂F, CF₃ ou -OCF₃ ;

R² représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe fluoro ou chloro ;

R³ et R⁴ représentent indépendamment un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe fluoro ;

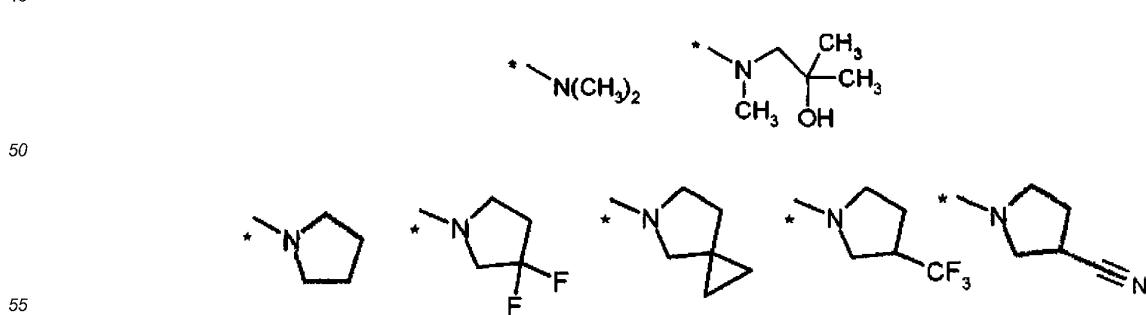
40 R⁶ représente un atome d'hydrogène, -CH₃, -CH₂CF₃, un groupe cyclopropylméthyle, -CH₂CH₂-O-CH₃, -CH₂CH₂-N(CH₃)₂ ;

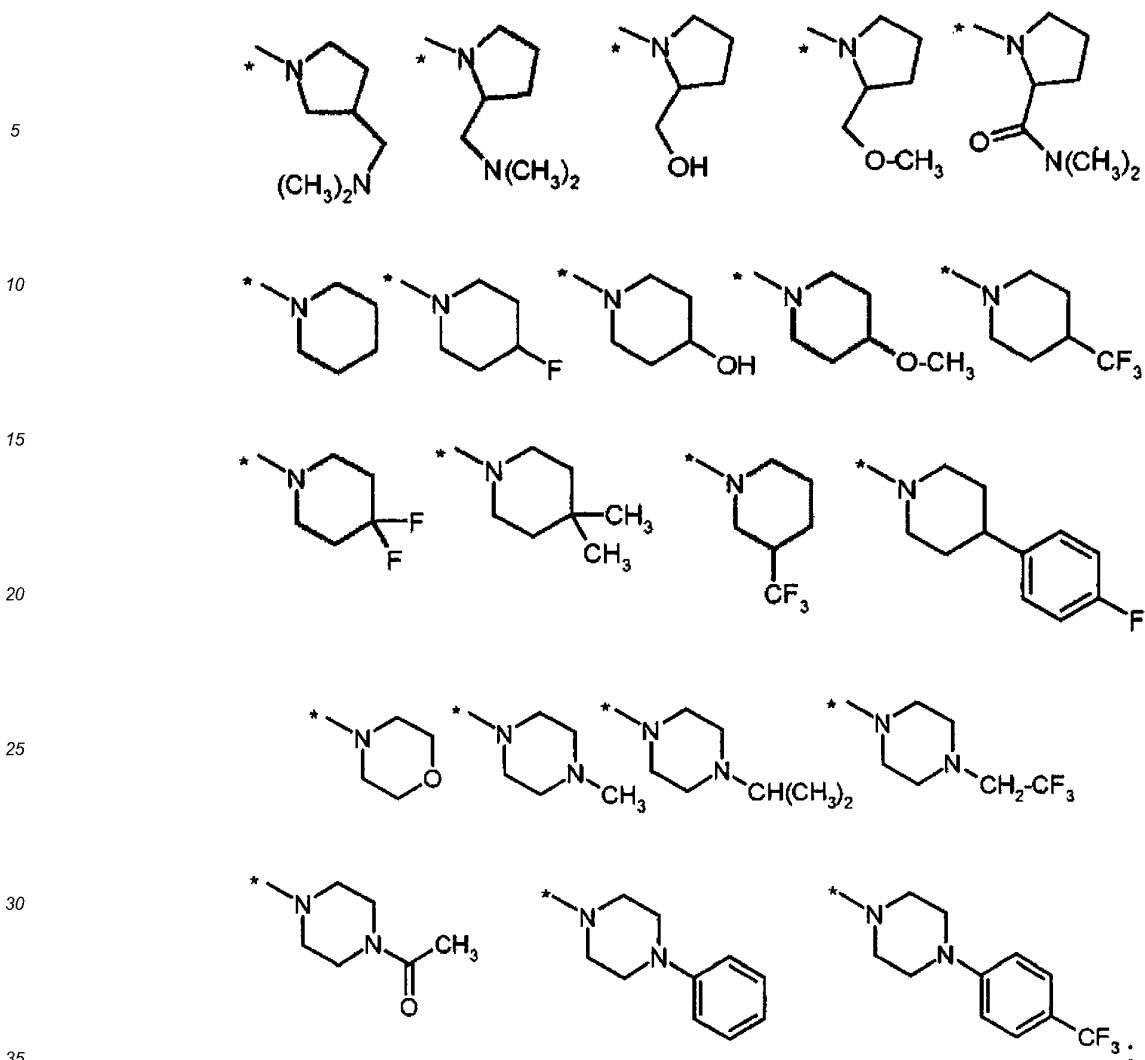
R⁸ représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe fluoro, chloro, CF₃, -CN ;

R⁹ représente un atome d'hydrogène, un groupe fluoro ;

A représente un groupe sélectionné parmi

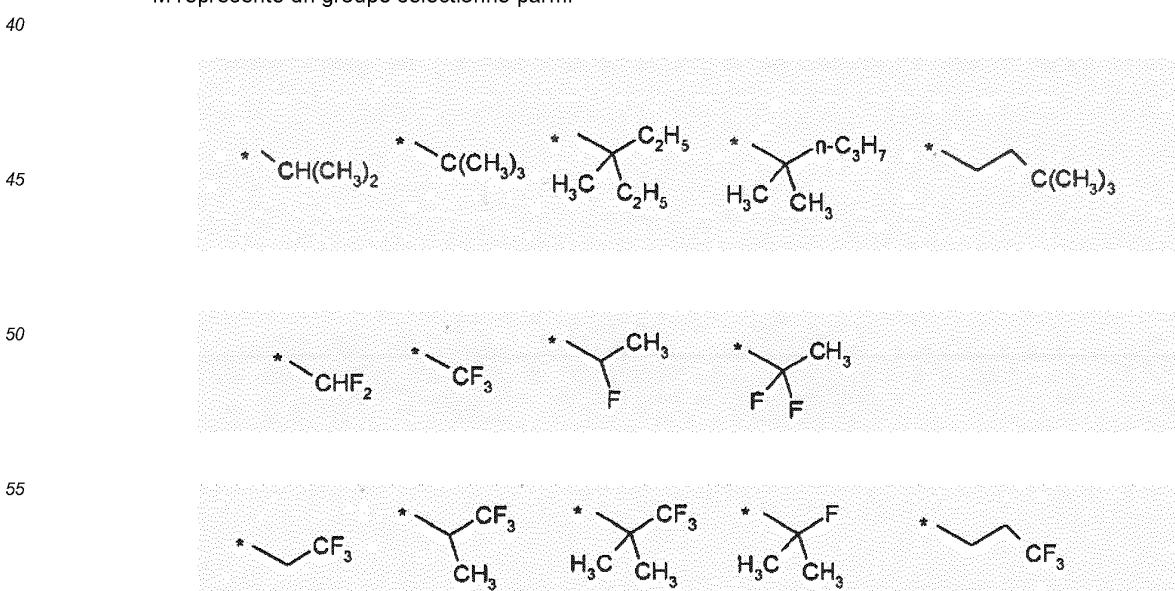
45



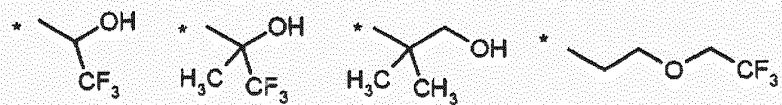


W représente $-C(O)-$, $-S(O)_2-$, lesquels groupes sont liés à l'atome d'azote du motif $-NH-$ via un atome de carbone ou de soufre ;

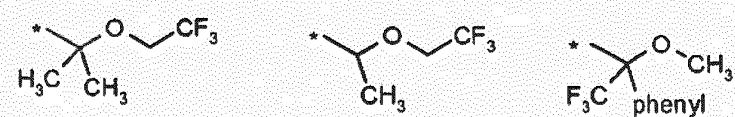
M représente un groupe sélectionné parmi



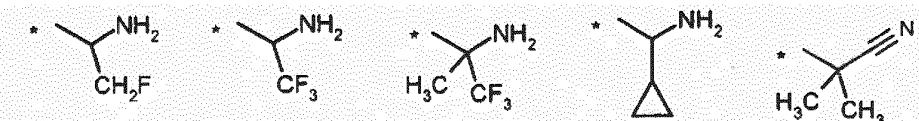
5



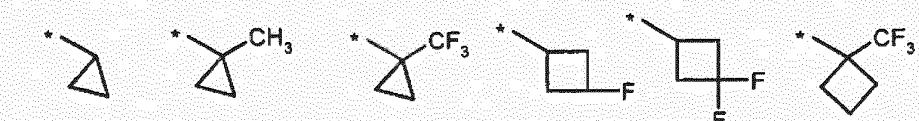
10



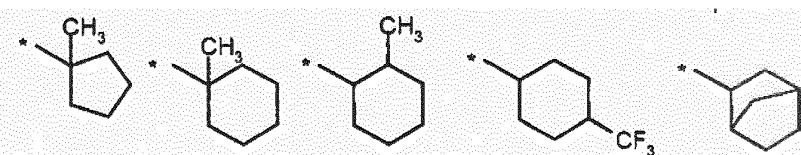
15



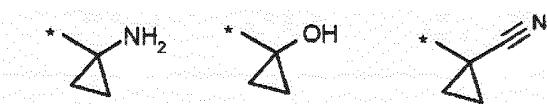
20



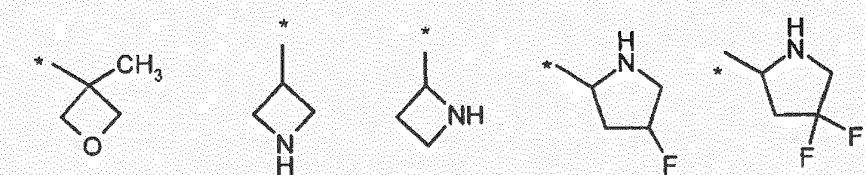
25



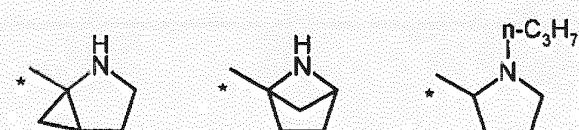
30



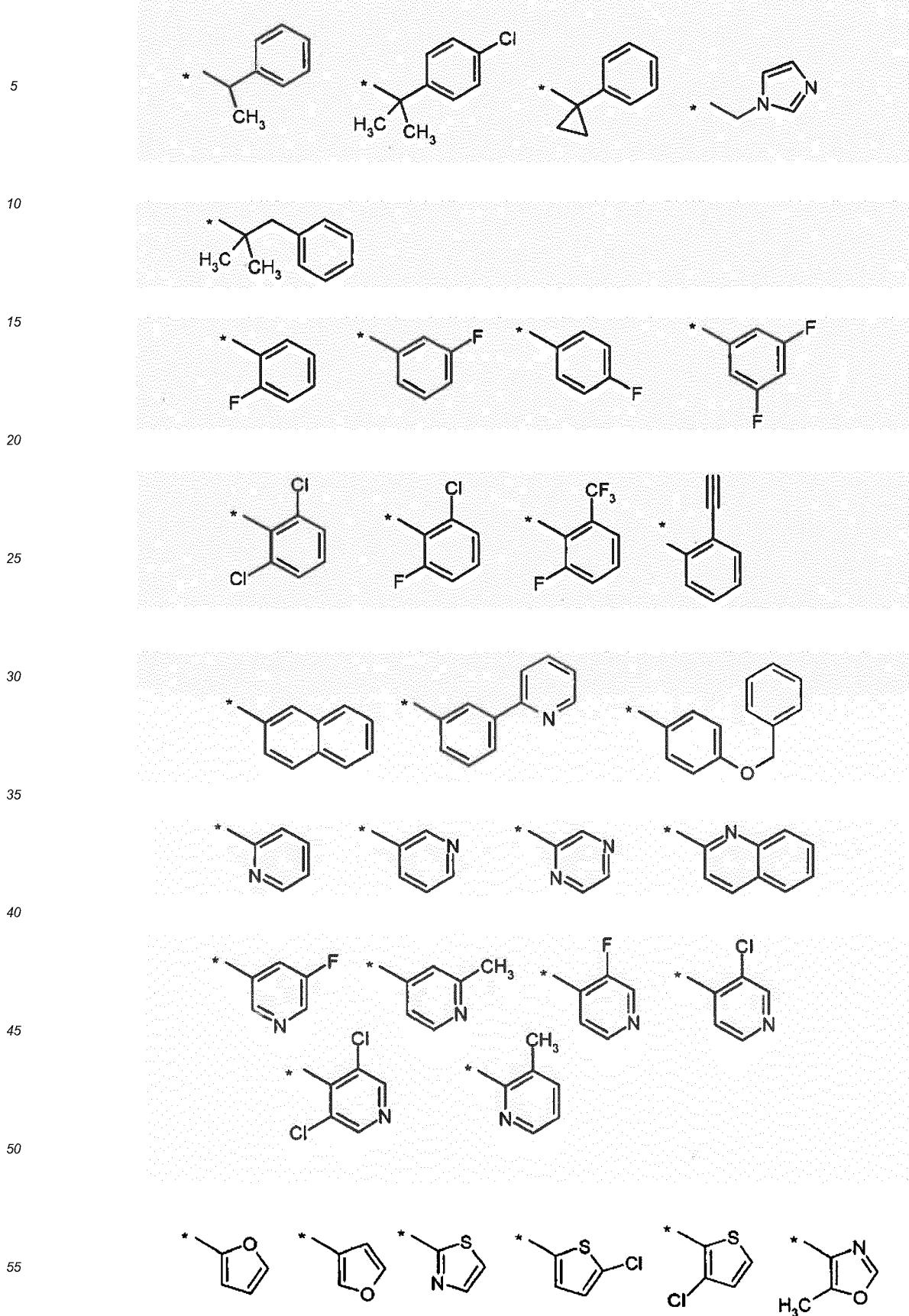
40



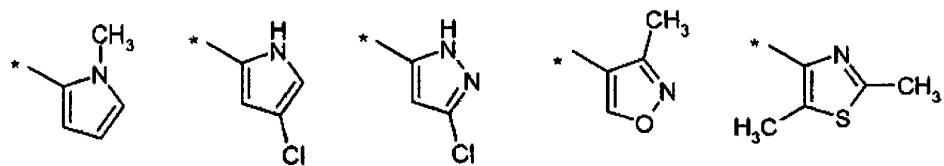
45



55



5



12. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes sélectionné dans le groupe constitué par

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

	Structure		Structure
1		2	
3		4	
5		6	
7		8	
9		10	
11		12	

(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	13 	14 	
10	15 	16 	
15	17 	18 	
20	19 	20 	
25	21 	22 	
30	23 	24 	
35	25 	26 	
40	27 	28 	
45			
50			
55			

(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5		30	
10		32	
15		34	
20		36	
25		38	
30		40	
35		42	
40		44	
45			
50			

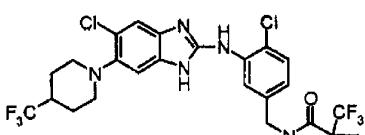
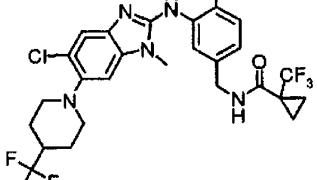
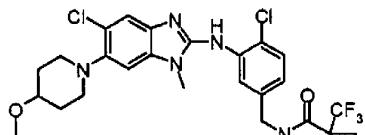
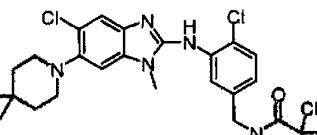
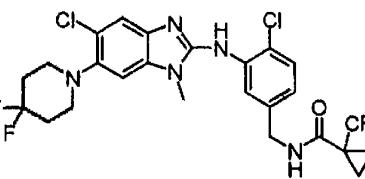
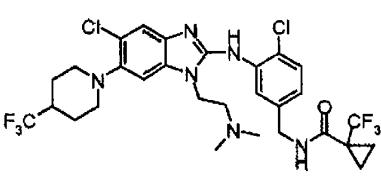
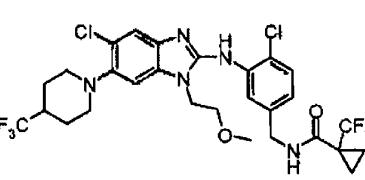
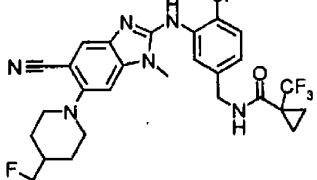
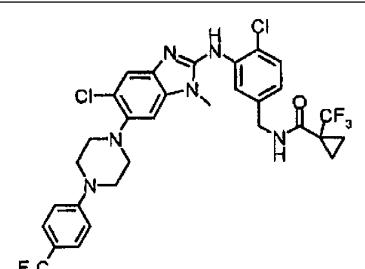
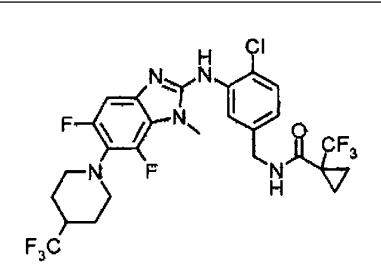
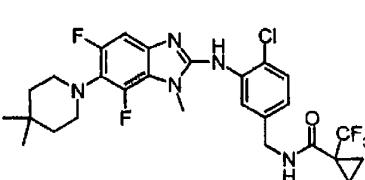
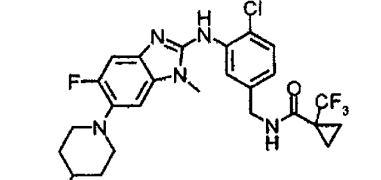
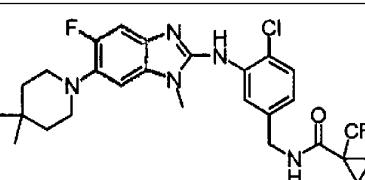
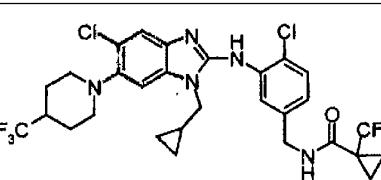
(suite)

	Structure		Structure	
5	45		46	
10	47		48	
15	49		50	
20	51		52	
25	53		54	
30	55		56	
35	57		58	
40	59		60	
45				
50				

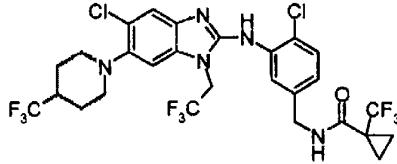
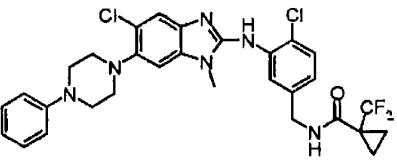
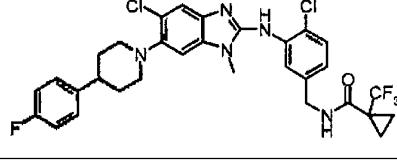
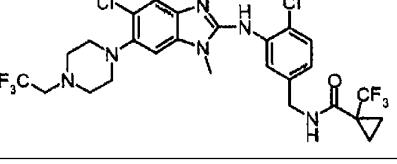
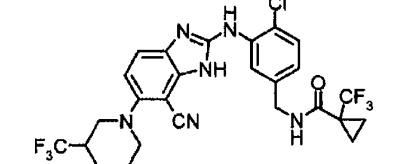
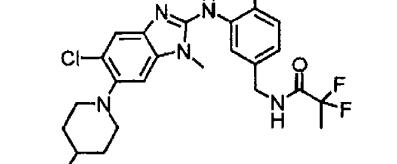
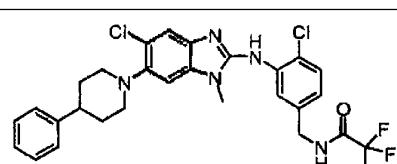
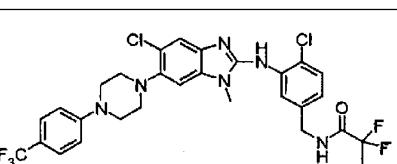
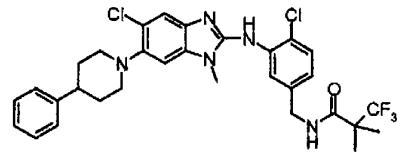
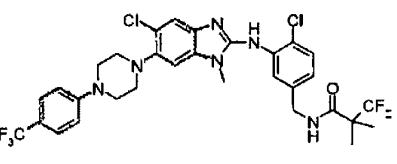
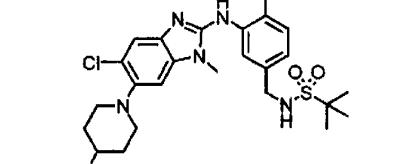
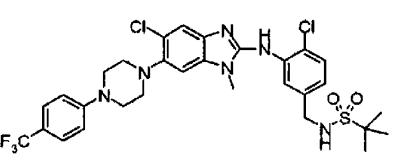
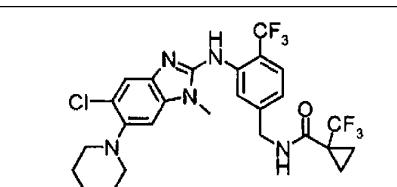
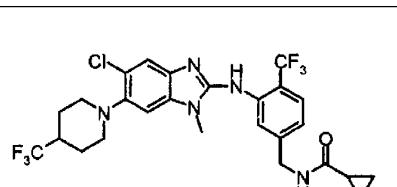
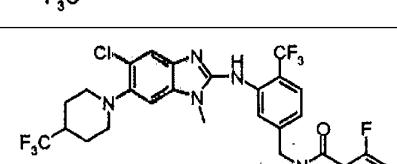
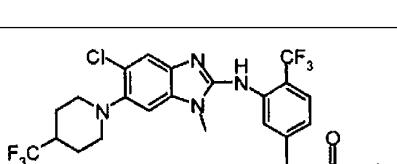
(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	61	62	
10	63	64	
15	65	66	
20	67	68	
25	69	70	
30	71	72	
35	73	74	
40			
45			
50			

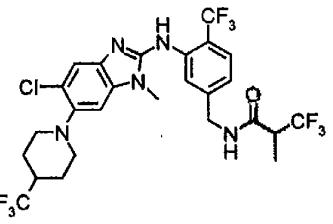
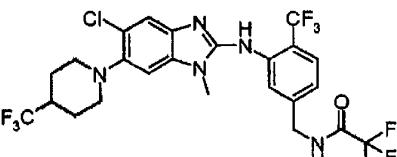
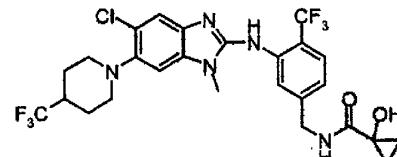
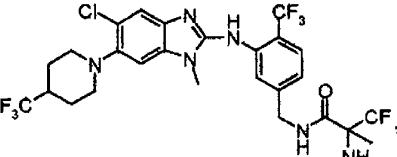
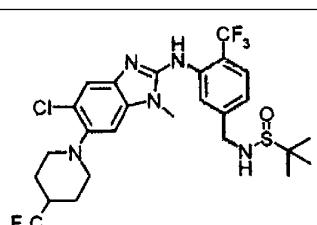
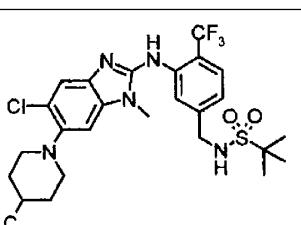
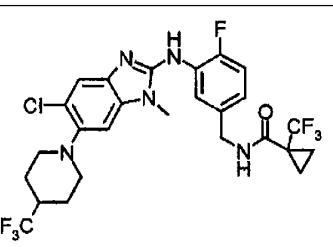
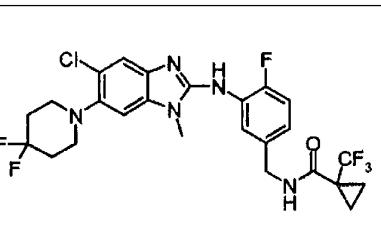
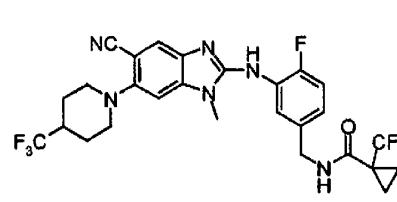
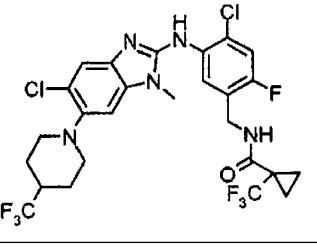
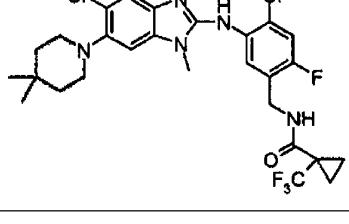
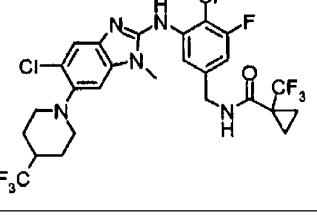
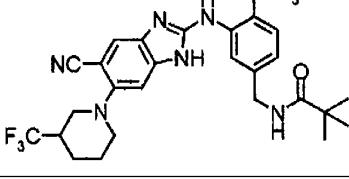
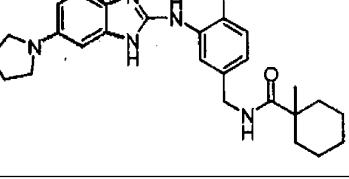
(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	75 	76 	
10			
15	77 	78 	
20	79 	80 	
25			
30	81 	82 	
35	83 	84 	
40			
45	85 	86 	
50			
55	87 	88 	

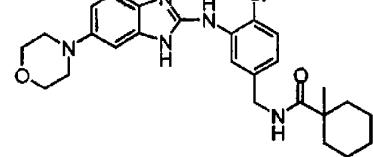
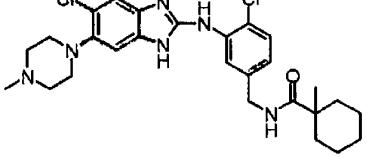
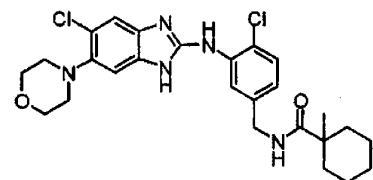
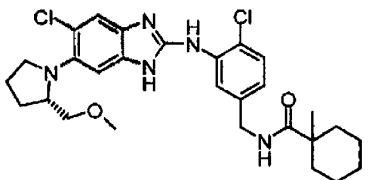
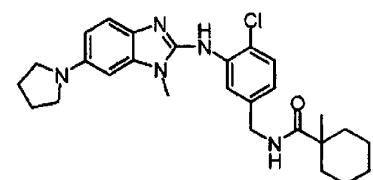
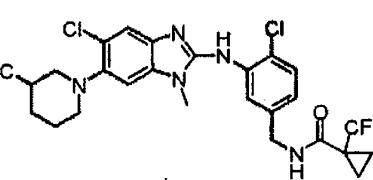
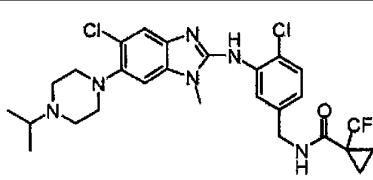
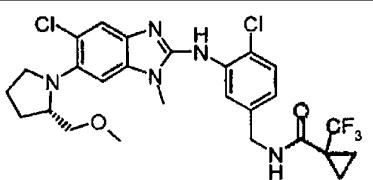
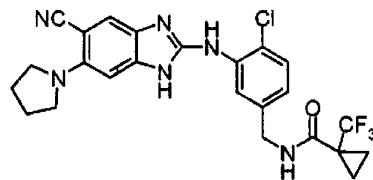
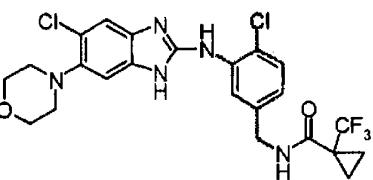
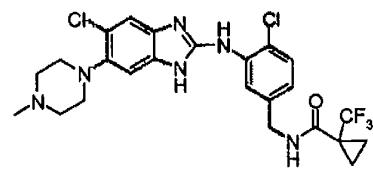
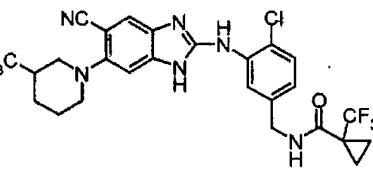
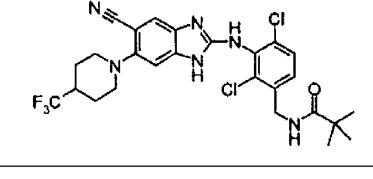
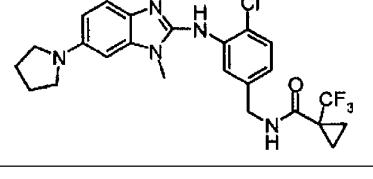
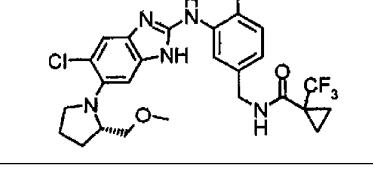
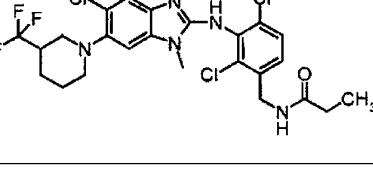
(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	89 	90 	
10	91 	92 	
15	93 	94 	
20	95 	96 	
25	97 	98 	
30	99 	100 	
35	101 	102 	
40	103 	104 	

(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	105 	106 	
10			
15	107 	108 	
20			
25	109 	110 	
30			
35	111 	112 	
40			
45	113 	114 	
50			
55	115 	116 	
60			
65	117 	118 	
70			

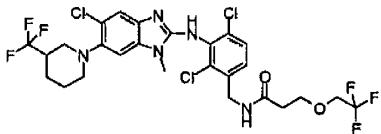
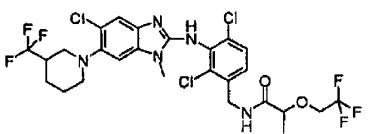
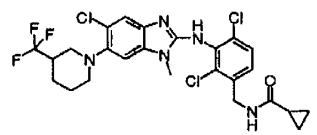
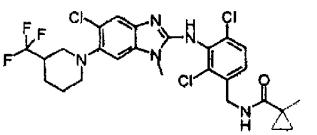
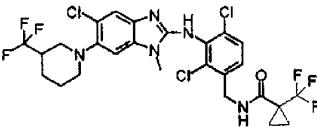
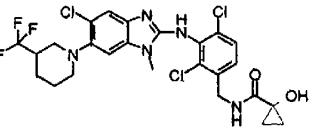
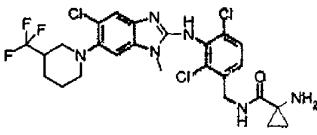
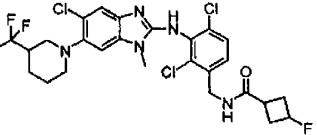
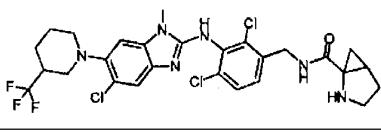
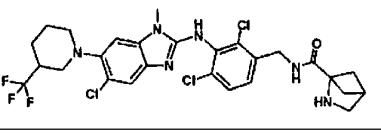
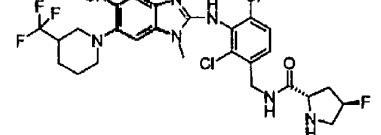
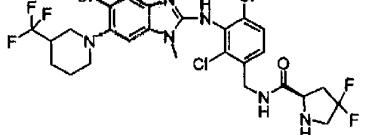
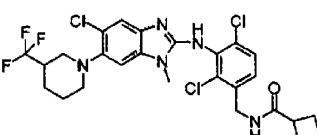
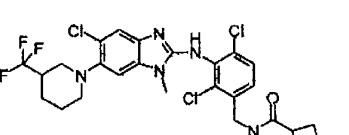
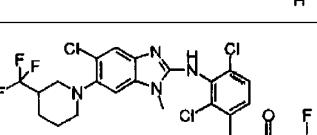
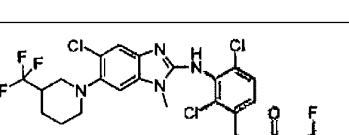
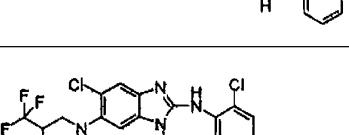
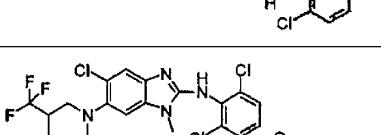
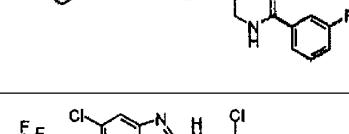
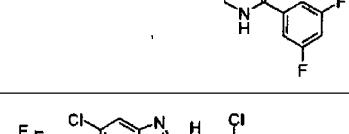
(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	119 	120 	
10			
15	121 	122 	
20			
25	123 	124 	
30			
35	125 	126 	
40			
45	127 	128 	
50			
55	129 	130 	
	131 	132 	
	133 	134 	

(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	135 	136 	
10	137 	138 	
15	139 	140 	
20	141 	142 	
25	143 	144 	
30	145 	146 	
35	147 	148 	
40	149 	150 	
45	151 	152 	
50			
55			

(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	153 	154 	
10	155 	156 	
15	157 	158 	
20	159 	160 	
25	161 	162 	
30	163 	164 	
35	165 	166 	
40	167 	168 	
45	169 	170 	
50	171 	172 	

(suite)

	Structure		Structure
5	173 	174 	
10	175 	176 	
15	177 	178 	
20	179 	180 	

13. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications précédentes, pour son utilisation comme médicament.

30

14. Composition pharmaceutique comprenant au moins un composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 1 à 12, ou un sel pharmaceutiquement acceptable de celui-ci en mélange avec un adjuvant, diluant et/ou véhicule pharmaceutiquement acceptable.

35

15. Composé selon l'une quelconque des revendications 1 à 12 ou sel pharmaceutiquement acceptable de celui-ci pour son utilisation dans le traitement et/ou la prévention de maladies inflammatoires et/ou affections associées, en particulier, la douleur.

40

45

50

55

REFERENCES CITED IN THE DESCRIPTION

This list of references cited by the applicant is for the reader's convenience only. It does not form part of the European patent document. Even though great care has been taken in compiling the references, errors or omissions cannot be excluded and the EPO disclaims all liability in this regard.

Patent documents cited in the description

- WO 2010034796 A [0009] [0046] [0047]
- WO 2010034797 A [0009]
- WO 2010034798 A [0009]
- WO 2010034799 A [0009]
- WO 2010100249 A [0009] [0046] [0047] [0057] [0066] [0072]

Non-patent literature cited in the description

- BERGE, S.M. et al. *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 1977, vol. 66, 1-19 [0032]
- T.W. GREENE ; P.G.M. WUTZ. Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis. Wiley-Interscience, 1999 [0049] [0051] [0060]
- R. LAROCK. Comprehensive Organic Transformations. VCH, 1989 [0056]
- R. LAROCK. Comprehensive Organic Transformations. VCH Verlagsgemeinschaft, 1989 [0061] [0071] [0072]
- R.C.LAROCK. Comprehensive Organic Transformations. VCH, 1989, 432-433 [0065]
- RIENDEAU, D. ; R. ASPIOTIS ; D. ETHIER ; Y. GAREAU ; E. GRIMM ; J. GUAY ; S. GUIRAL ; H. JUTEAU ; J. MANCINI ; N. METHOT. Inhibitors of the inducible microsomal prostaglandin E2 synthase (mPGES-1) derived from MK-886. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett*, 2005, vol. 15 (14), 3352-3355 [0075]
- COTE, B. ; L. BOULET ; C. BRIDEAU ; D. CLAVEAU ; D. ETHIER ; R. FRENETTE ; M. GAGNON ; A. GIROUX ; J. GUAY ; S. GUIRAL. Substituted phenanthrene imidazoles as potent, selective, and orally active mPGES-1 inhibitors. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett*, 2007, vol. 17 (24), 6816-6820 [0075]
- GOEDKEN et al. *J Biomol Screen*, 2008, vol. 13 (7), 619-625 [0086]
- CHOU ; TALALAY. *Adv. Enzyme Regul.*, 1984, vol. 22, 27-55 [0107]